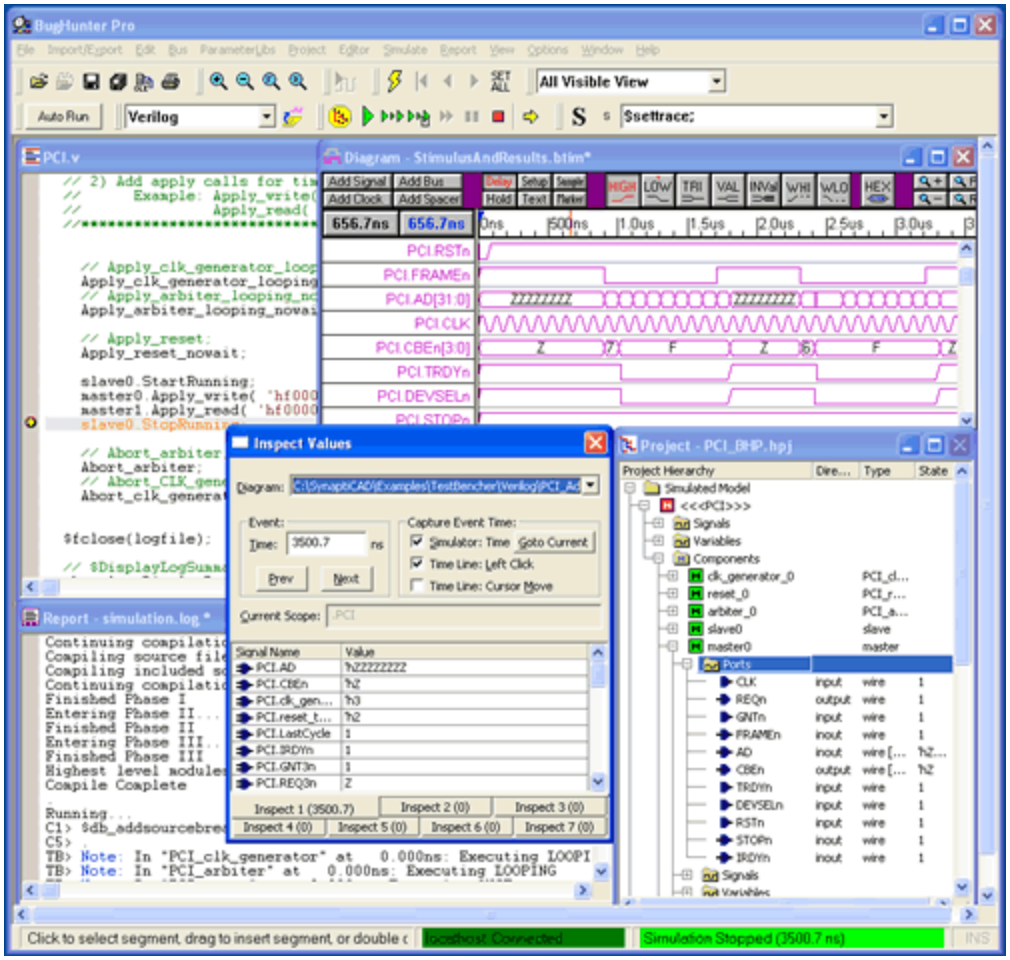
BugHunter Pro and the VeriLogger Simulators

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



BugHunter Pro and the VeriLogger Simulators

Copyright Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc., version 14

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Printed: September 2014 in (whereever you are located)

BugHunter Pro and Verilog Simulators

BugHunter Pro, VeriLogger Extreme, VeriLogger Pro

Welcome to the BugHunter Pro, VeriLogger Extreme, and VeriLogger Pro manual. This manual covers using the BugHunter Pro graphical simulation and debugging interface. This is the interface for both VeriLogger Extreme and VeriLogger Pro and can also be used with most commercial simulators.

BugHunter uses the SynaptiCAD graphical environment and supports all major HDL simulators. It has the ability to launch the simulator, provide single step debugging, unit-level test bench generation, streaming of waveform data, project management, and a hierarchy tree. The unit-level test bench generation is unique in that it lets the user draw stimulus waveforms and then generates the stimulus model and wrapper code and launches the code. It is one of the fastest ways to test a model and make sure that everything is working correctly. The debugger also has exceptional support for VCD waveform files.

With an integrated debugging environment you can graphically build a project, launch a simulation, and view the results in just a few minutes. The interface also manages the test bench interface so that it is easy to create a set of regression tests to run the design through

Table of Contents

Foreword 0

Chapter 1: Getting Started with BugHunter 8

Step 1: Configuring BugHunter for your Simulator(s) ... 8
Step 2: Setup the Project Simulation Options ... 10
Step 3: Create a Project ... 13
Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project ... 14
Step 5: Draw a Test Bench (optional) ... 16
Step 6: Build the Project and Set the top ... 18
Step 7: Simulate and Debug - General Overview ... 19
Step 8: Save the Project, Code and Waveform Files ... 21

Chapter 2: Simulation and Debugging Functions 22

2.1 Project Simulation Properties ... 23
2.2 Build and Simulate ... 29
2.3 Watching Signal and Component Waveforms ... 32
2.4 Breakpoints ... 34
2.5 Inspect And Edit Values ... 36
2.6 Find Drivers ... 39
2.7 Report Window Error and Log file tabs ... 40
2.8 Command Console for Interactive Debugging ... 40
2.9 Source Code Libraries ... 46
2.10 Compiled Libraries (Symbolic Libaries) ... 47
2.11 Using VPI applications to interface to the simulator ... 50
2.12 Compiling Command-Line Based Designs with BugHunter ... 52
2.13 Project Window Overview ... 54

Chapter 3: Waveforms and Test Bench Generation 56

3.1 Stimulus and Results Diagram ... 56
3.2 Drawing Waveforms for Stimulus Generation ... 59
3.3 Zooming, Scrolling, Measuring, and Searching ... 61
3.4 Bit-Slicing a Watched Signal ... 63
3.5 Waveform Comparisons (Optional Features) ... 64
3.6 Generating and Reading VCD and BTIM Files ... 67

Chapter 4: Editor Functions and Code Navigation 69

4.1 Opening, Saving, and Creating New Source Code ... 69
4.2 Navigating Code with Buttons and Report Tabs ... 71

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

4.3 Navigating Code with the Project Window ... 73
4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing ... 75
4.5 Searching in the Project Window ... 78
4.6 Editor and Report Window Commands ... 80
4.7 The Editor/Report Preferences Dialog ... 82
4.8 XEmacs Integration and other External Editors ... 83
4.9 Editor Window Overview ... 85

Chapter 5: VeriLogger Command Line Tools 87

5.1 VeriLogger Extreme tools: Simx and Simxloader ... 87
5.2 Preparing Verilog Source files ... 89
5.3 Batch Files for Command Line Simulators ... 89
5.4 Simx Commonly-Used Command Line Options ... 90
5.5 Simx: Compiler/Elaborator ... 92
5.6 Debug and Logging Options ... 94
5.7 Specify Block and SDF Timing Options ... 95
5.8 Overriding Parameter Value Options ... 97
5.9 Loading a PLI application ... 97
5.10 Simx Miscellaneous Options ... 97
5.11 Simxloader: Simulator ... 98
5.12 Simxloader Race Detection Options ... 100
5.13 Simxlib: Compiled Library Utility ... 101
5.14 VeriLogger Pro tools: Vlogcmd ... 103
5.15 Vlogcmd Simulator Control Commands ... 107
5.16 Vlogcmd Predefined Plus Options ... 107

Chapter 6: SDF, Encrypted Models, and SmartModels 109

6.1 Using a Standard Delay File (SDF) ... 109
6.2 Verilog Protected Envelopes (Encrypted Models) ... 110
6.3 SmartModels (Swift Models) ... 114

Chapter 7: Speed Tricks and Techniques 116

7.1 Dumping Simulation Waveforms ... 116
7.2 What not to Watch ... 116
7.3 Eliminate 5 Second Waveform Updates ... 118

Chapter 8: Verilog2VHDL Translation 119

8.1 Graphical Interface for Translation ... 119
8.2 Verilog2VHDL Translation Options ... 122
8.3 Compiling and Simulating VHDL Output ... 124
8.4 Frequently Asked Questions: Verilog2 VHDL ... 137

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

8.5 Recommended Modeling Style Verilog ... 139
8.6 Verilog2VHDL Known Issues ... 144
8.7 Verilog2VHDL Release Notes ... 147

Chapter 9: VHDL2Verilog Translation 150

9.1 Graphical Interface for Translation ... 150
9.2 VHDL2Verilog Translation Options ... 154
9.3 Mapping VHDL packages to file locations ... 156
9.4 Mapping Functions and Procedures ... 157
9.5 Translating Functions and Procedures ... 159
9.6 D-FlipFlop Mapping ... 159
9.7 Importing (parts of) Verilog files ... 161
9.8 Reserved Verilog Keywords ... 161
9.9 Frequently Asked questions VHDL2Verilog ... 162
9.10 Recommended Modeling Style VHDL ... 164
9.11 VHDL2Verliog Known Issues ... 170
9.12 VHDL2Verilog Release Notes ... 172

Chapter10: C++ and SystemC 177

10.1 Setting up Visual Studio C++ for Windows ... 177
10.2 Setting up gcc for Linux Machines ... 177
10.3 Building and Running SystemC simulations ... 178
10.4 Learning SystemC ... 179

Chapter 11: Schematic Viewing of Gate Level Designs 180

11.1 Gates-On-The-Fly Install and License ... 180
11.2 Launching the Schematic window ... 180
11.3 General GOF Information ... 183

Chapter 12: SimSwapper Simulator Command-Line Swapper 184

12.1 SimSwapper Quick Start ... 184
12.2 Passing Command Line Options to SimSwapper ... 185
12.3 SimSwapper Translation Modes ... 185
12.4 SimSwapper Configuration ... 186
12.5 SimSwapper Command Line Options ... 187

Appendix A: BugHunter System Tasks 189

init_syncad ... 190
btim_dumpfile ... 190
btim_closedumpfile ... 190
btim_AddDumpSignal ... 190

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

db_getcurrenttime 191
db_printinteractivescope 191
db_finish 192
db_addtimebreak 192
db_removetimebreak 192
db_enabletimebreak 192
db_disabletimebreak 193
db_getbasictype 193
db_getvalue 193
db_printinternaltimeprecision 193
db_setinteractivescope 194
Enabling BTIM dump commands in command-line simulator 194

Appendix B: Verilog2VHDL Translation Reference 195

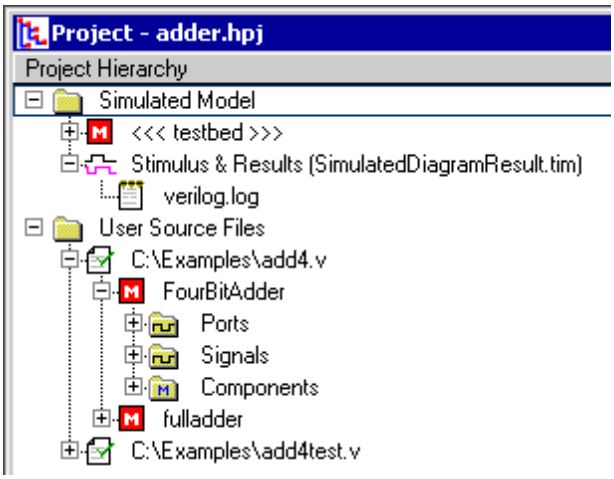
Appendix C: VHDL2Verilog Translation Reference 206

Index 215

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 1: Getting Started with BugHunter

This chapter covers the basic steps involved in setting up BugHunter to work with your simulator and how to create and debug a project. Each step is listed in the suggested order that you will want to perform the functions.



Step 1: Setup the Simulator Path 8
Step 2: Setup the Simulator Options 23
Step 3: Create a Project 13
Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project 14
Step 5: Draw a Test Bench (optional) 16
Step 6: Build the Project and Set the top 18
Step 7: Simulate and Debug 19
Step 8: Save the Project, Code and Waveform Files 21

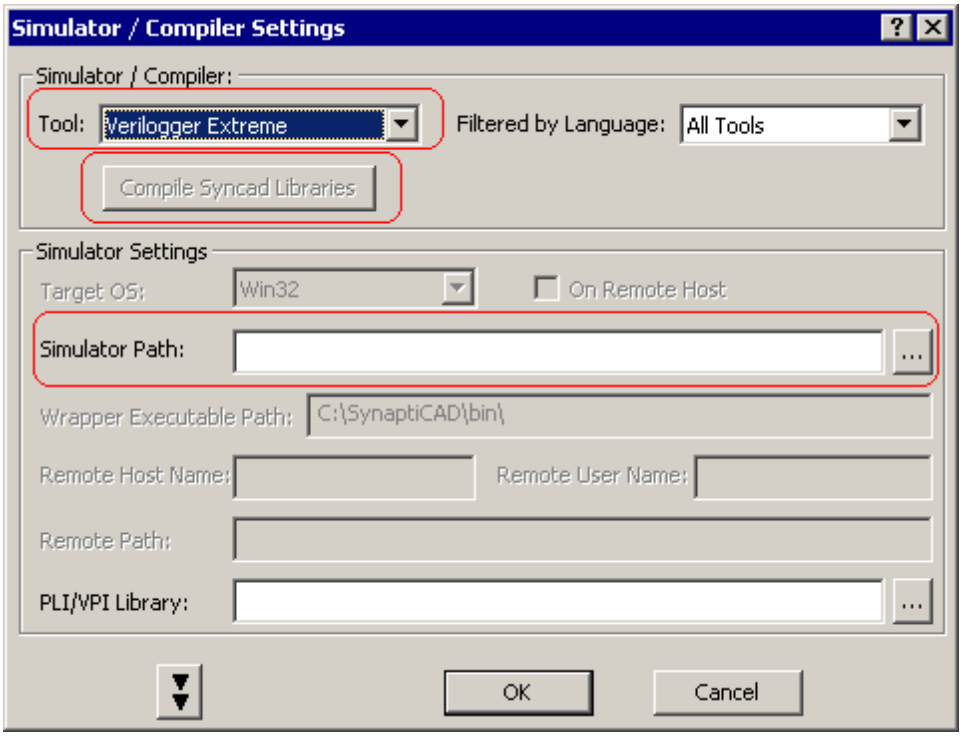
Step 1: Configuring BugHunter for your Simulator(s)

BugHunter Pro needs to know where your VHDL/Verilog simulator or C++ compiler is located. If you are only using VeriLogger Extreme or VeriLogger Pro you can skip this section because the simulator was setup during installation unless you wish to run the 64-bit version of the simulator. BugHunter saves the paths for each external simulator or compiler in the ***simulatorconfiguration.ini*** file each time the program is closed.

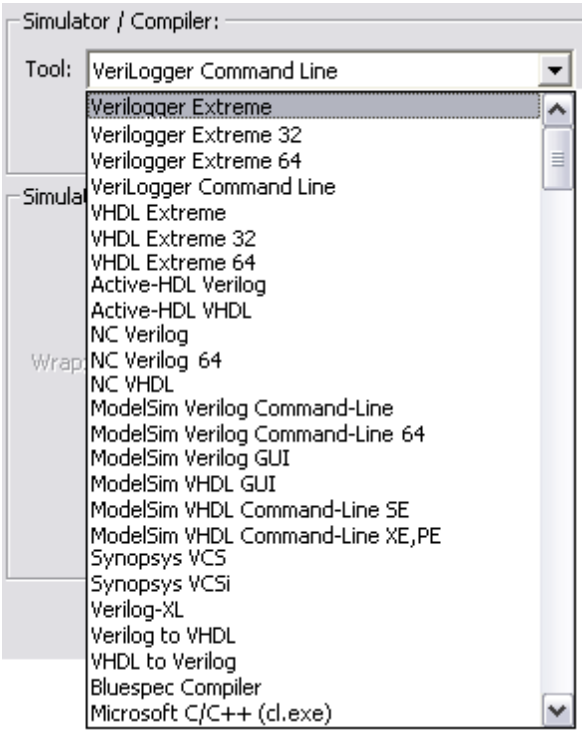
Set the Path to the Simulator:

- Choose the **Options > Simulator / Compiler Settings** menu option to open a dialog of that name.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- In the **Tools** drop-down choose your simulator or compiler. VeriLogger Extreme will run either in 32bit mode or 64bit mode depending on your OS version (e.g. 32bit or 64bit OS). To force 32bit operation on a 64bit system, select **VeriLogger Extreme 32**.



Compiling the Syncad Libraries for Your Simulator(s)

- The **Compile Syncad Libraries** button will be enabled for simulators that require it. This button allows you to compile libraries needed by external simulators and compilers for SynaptiCAD projects. ***This needs to be done one time before using a new simulator***.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

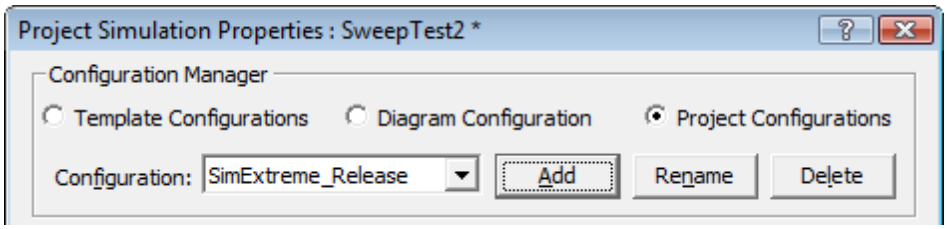
- In the **Simulator Path** edit box, either type in the path name or use the browse button to locate the path.
- Continue to setup the paths for each tool that you are interested in using. When you are done click **OK** button to close the dialog.

Step 2: Setup the Project Simulation Options

The *Project Simulation Properties* dialog controls how the project is built, and determines the simulator run time options and which simulator to use for projects and diagrams. The default settings for each simulator need to be checked to make sure they match your systems requirements. Also, if you plan to move projects back and forth between different machines and simulators, you may wish to create **Configurations** for each machine and each simulator. Configuration can also be used to pass different sets of command line options to a simulator. See Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23 for an in-depth discussion of the settings in this dialog.

Open the Project Simulation Dialog and choose the Configuration Template :

- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog. 



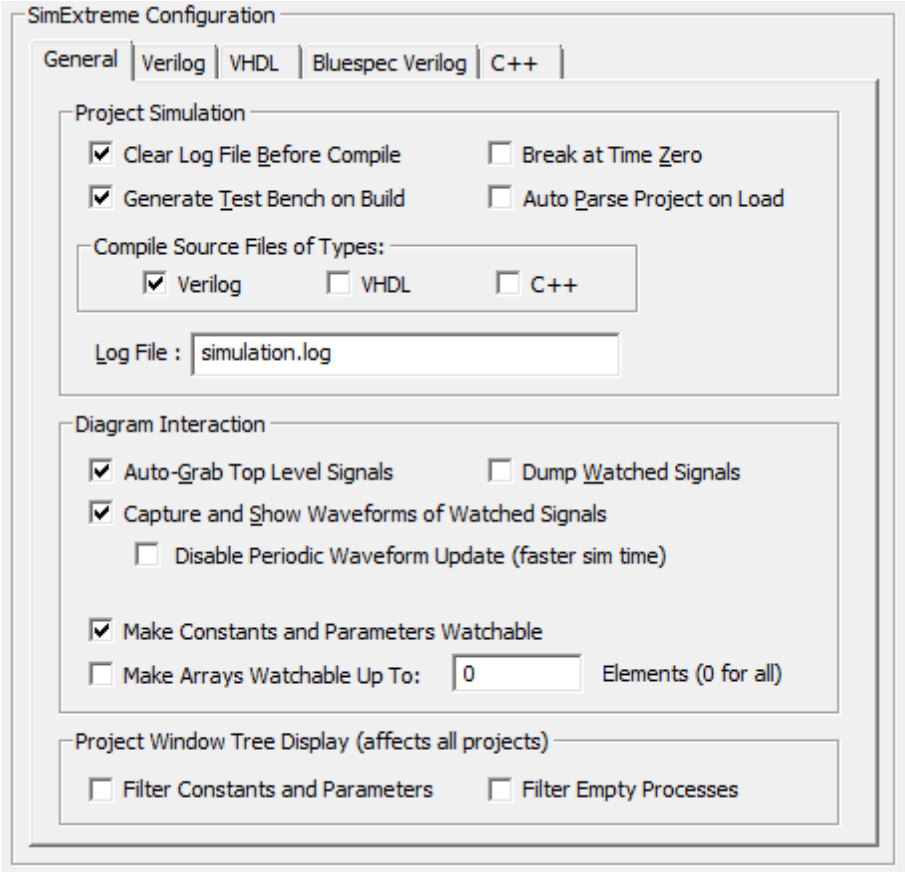
- Most commonly you will be working with the **Project Configurations** which control how builds are performed in the current project. Project Configurations are stored in the project file. **Template Configurations** hold the default settings for the configurations that get automatically created inside each new project . The **Diagram Configuration** controls how diagram simulations are performed (e.g. for simulated signals in a diagram). **Template** and **Diagram Configurations** are stored in the program's INI file, not the project file.

- Select the **Configuration** for the simulator that you will be using to build the project. You can also create additional configurations to pass different sets of options to a simulator. For example, you might want to pass one set of options to the simulator while debugging your design, then another set of options when you want the simulation to run at maximum speed. See Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23 for an in-depth discussion on creating Configurations.

Look at the General Tab:

The **General** tab contains simulation options that are standard across all of the simulators. Here are some settings that are specific to BugHunter's integrated timing diagram editor environment:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

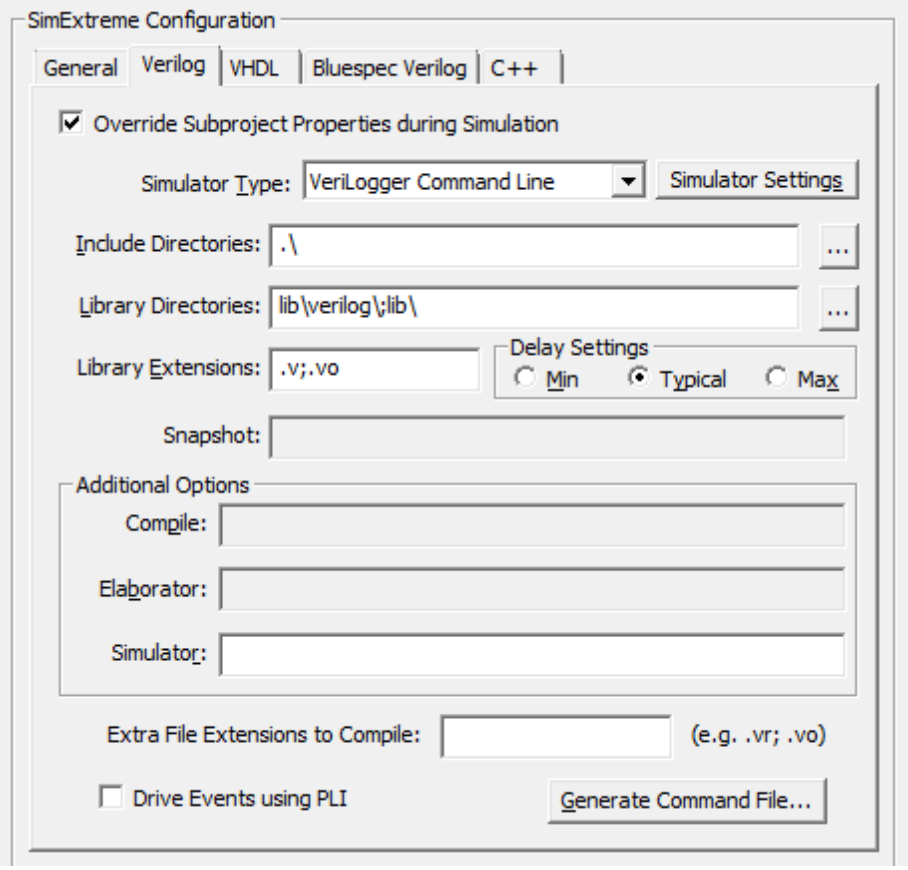


- **Auto-Grab Top Level Signals** causes signals in the top-level component(s) to be automatically added as Watch signals in the Stimulus and Results diagram whenever the project is rebuilt.
- **Capture and Show Waveforms of Watched Signals** enables the acquisition and display of waveform results from a simulation run.
- **Compile Source Files of Types** section specifies which kind of files to compile. Unless you are working in a mixed-language project, only one language should be checked. These check boxes are particularly useful for a V2V translation project, where you may want to switch back and forth between compiling the original code in one language and the translated code in the other language.

Look at the Language Tab for each simulation language that you plan to use:

- Pick the **Language** tab for your simulator.
- **Simulator Type** specifies the simulator.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- The **Simulator Settings** button opens the *Simulator / Compiler Settings* dialog where you can edit the simulator paths.
- **Include Directories** specifies the directories where BugHunter searches for included files. The following is a Windows example (Unix users should use the / slashes):

  ```
  C:\design\project;c:\design\library
  ```
- The **Library Directories** box lists the path and directories where the program searches for library files. BugHunter will try to match any undefined components with the names of the files that have one of the file extensions listed in the *Lib Extensions* edit box. The simulator does not look inside a file unless the undefined component name exactly matches a file name. The simulator does not look at any files unless there are file extensions listed in the Lib Extensions edit box. Note that this works even with compiled code simulators that don't normally support the -y option. The following is a Windows example (Unix users should use the / slashes):

  ```
  C:\design\project;c:\design\library
  ```
- **Compiler**, **Elaborator**, and **Simulator** option edit boxes allow you to write additional command line options that will be passed to the tool when it is run. Some simulators do not support all three tools types, in which case the associated edit box will be disabled. Source files can be passed to a simulator via the Compiler command-line options (either directly or indirectly via a command file loaded with -f option), which can be useful method of quickly porting an existing command-line based design to a BugHunter project. By default, options should be specified in Simx simulator syntax, regardless of the target simulator (see Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23 in the Language Tabs).

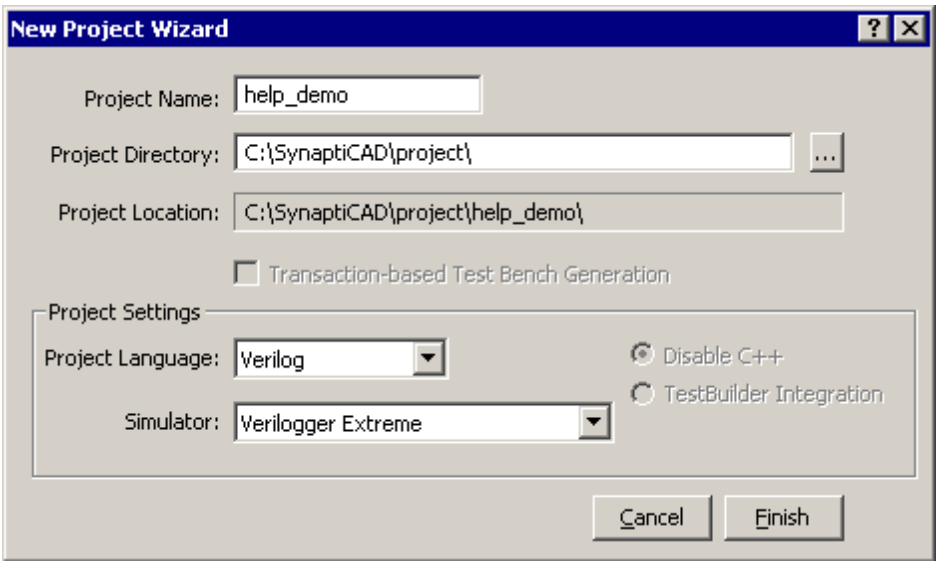
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Step 3: Create a Project

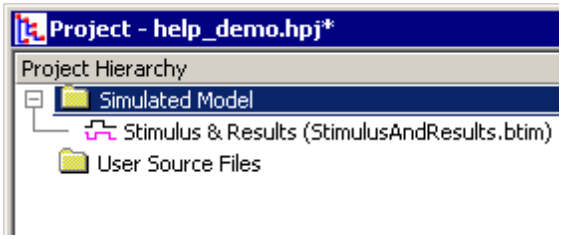
BugHunter Pro uses a project file to store the list of files to be simulated and the simulation options. The *Project* window right-click context menus give access to functions that can be applied to a specific node in the tree like setting watches on signals and viewing source code files.

Create a New Project:

- Choose the **Project > New Project** menu to open the *New Project Wizard* dialog.



- In the **Project Name** box, enter the name of the project file.
- Enter the base path for the new project in the **Project Directory** edit box. Note that the **Project Location** displays the full path to the project. BugHunter will create a directory that is named after the project at the end of the path specified in the *Project Directory* edit box.
- If you are running VeriLogger Extreme or VeriLogger Pro the **Project Language** and a **Simulator** will already be set, otherwise set these properties.
- Press the **Finish** button to create a new project with several empty folders and a default Stimulus and Results timing diagram.

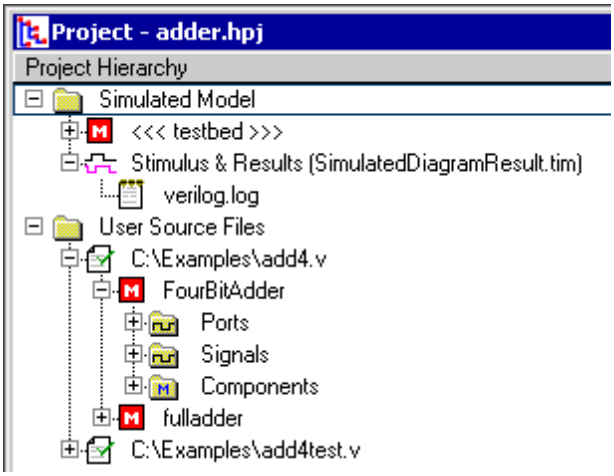


Working with the Project Window:

The *Project* window can be used to open source code editors, set watches on signals, and set the Stimulus and Results diagram. After a project is built as described in Step 6, the *Project* window can be used to investigate the hierarchical structure of the design. Each node in the tree has a context sensitive pop-up menu that can be opened by right clicking on the node.

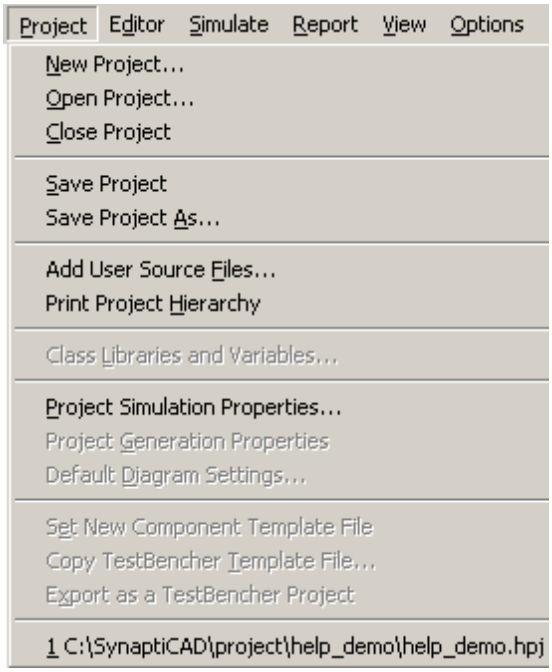
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- **Expand** or **Hide** a branch by pressing + or - symbols.
- **View Source Code** by double clicking on a file name, port, signal, component, or port to open an editor window (see Chapter 4: Editor Functions 69).
- **View Simulation results** by opening the *Stimulus & Results* diagram.
- **Right click** on a node to view all of the available menu options.



Most of the project level features like saving, opening, creating, and editing the settings are accessed through the **Project** menu options.

- The bottom of the Project menu has a list of recently opened projects.
- All projects should have an file extension of **HPJ**.



Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project

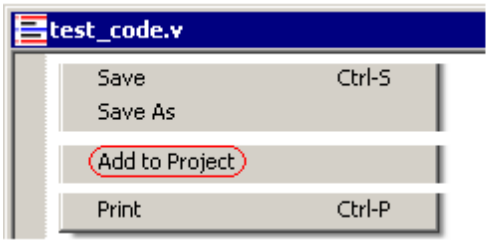
Once the project is created you can create new source files using the built in editors. Then add the source code files to the project so that BugHunter will know the location of the files to compile.

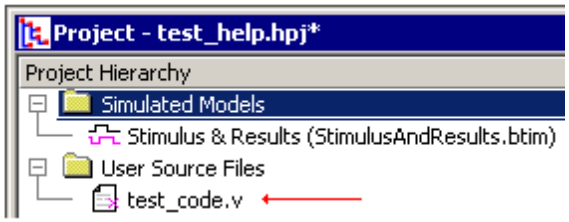
To create a new source file:

- Choose the **Editor > New HDL File** menu option to open an editor window. Type in your source code and then save the file. Usually you will save the file in the project directory, but it is not required.The **Editor** menu contains functions that act on the editor windows and Chapter 4: Editor Functions 69 covers all of the editing features.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

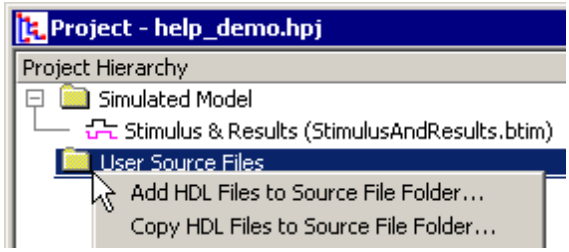
- Next, right-click in the editor window and choose **Add to Project**. This will add your file to the **User Source Files** folder in the Project window.



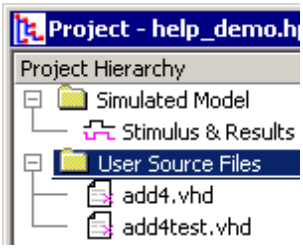


Adding source files to the project when not opened in an editor window:

- Right click on the ***User Source Files*** folder and choose one of the **Files to Source File Folder** menus to open a *file* dialog.
- The **Copy** menu copies the source file to the project folder and adds it to the project list.



- The **Add** function adds the file and its path without moving it to the project folder. Files can also be added by choosing the **Project > Add User Source File(s)** menu from the main bar.
- When files are first added to the project, you can see the filename, but you cannot see a hierarchical view of the components inside the files. This is shown by the pink X on the node. To view the internal components on the project tree you must first preparse the design by performing a **build** or **run** a simulation as described in Step 6: Build the Project 18.



- Double clicking on a source file name in the *Project* window automatically launches an editor window.

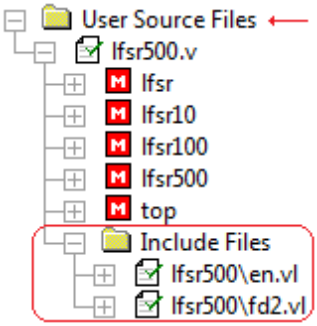
Files that should not be added to the User Source Files folder

There are three types of source code files that should not be added to the User Source Files folder: (1) files that will be automatically included by a source code file, (2) files that were added via compiler command line options field in the **Project Simulation Properties** dialog (see 2.12 Compiling Command-Line Based Designs 52 for details), and (3) files that will be found using the source code library paths.

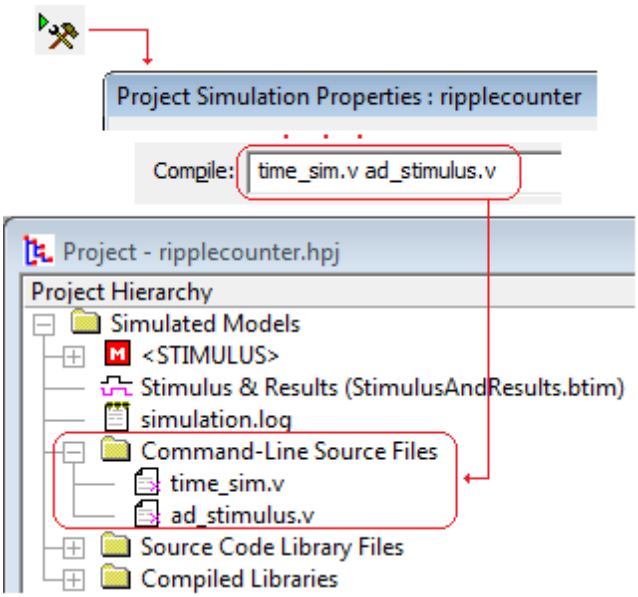
After the simulation has been built, you can see the files that have been automatically included by looking in the Project tree.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

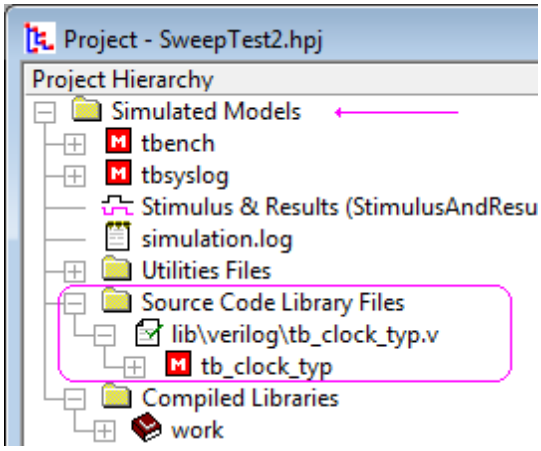
- To view files that have been included by a source code file, open the tree under the particular file and look in the **Include Files** folder.



- Files passed to the compiler via the **Compile** command line options field in the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog will be displayed in the project tree inside a folder called **Command-Line Source Files** after the preparse phase. This folder is re-filled based on the options passed in the command line whenever the project is built. This folder will only display when it is not empty and files cannot directly be added or removed from this folder.



- To view files that were found and compiled from source code library path searches during the preparse phase, look in the **Source Code Library Files** folder. See Section 2.9 Source Code Libraries 46 for more information about setting up paths to source code libraries. In the image shown, the file **tb_clock_typ.v** was found and parsed.



Step 5: Draw a Test Bench (optional)

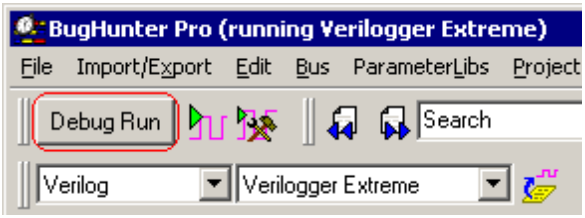
If your top-level component has input ports, BugHunter can take drawn waveforms and generate a test bench model that can be used to test your model. The VeriLogger Basic Verilog Simulation tutorial demonstrates this feature. Each time a simulation is run (see Step 7: Simulate and Debug 19),

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

BugHunter will create a test bench component from the drawn waveforms. A wrapper component that hooks up the test bench component to the design model is created at the same time.

Draw a Stimulus Test Bench for unit level testing:

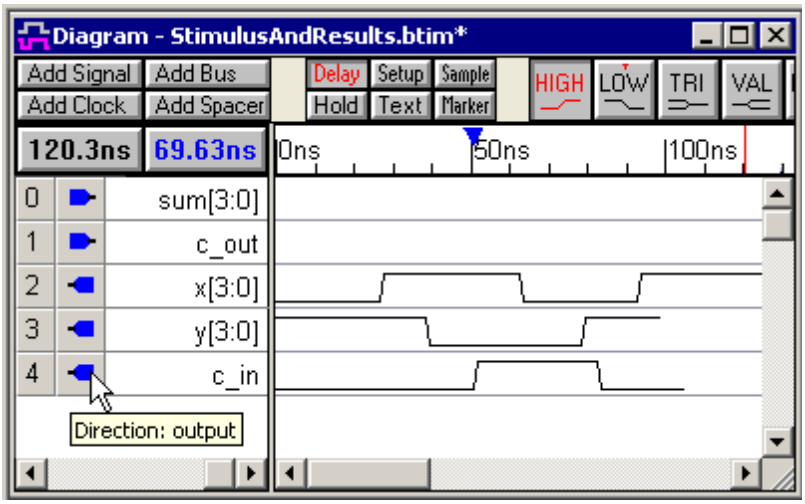
- Make sure the simulation mode is set to **Debug Run**, rather than ***Auto Run***, so that the simulator does not re-simulate while you are drawing.



- Press the **Parse MUT** button to extract the port signal names and sizes and put them in the **Stimulus and Results** diagram. This will also populate the project window with the hierarchical.

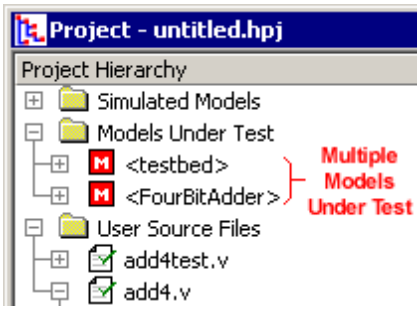


- Draw waveforms on the output signals, which will be drawn in black.
- If you have the *Reactive Test Bench* option then you may also wish to draw waveforms on input signals to indicate the expected inputs to the testbench (or outputs from the model under test), and these waveforms will be drawn in blue.



Changing the Model Under Test:

- The Parse MUT function makes a guess as to which model is the model under test and displays that model with single brackets, <>, underneath in the **Models Under Test** folder.



- To pick a different model under test, first right click on the MUT and choose **Unset Current Model Under Test**, and then right click on a different model under the *User Source Files* list and pick **Set as Model Under Test**. Multiple models under test can also be specified.
- Then press **Parse MUT** button to re-populate the *Stimulus and Results* diagram.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Step 6: Build the Project and Set the top

Building a project performs the following steps: (1) preparses the design files and fills the Project window with the hierarchical structure of the design, (2) launches a command-line compiler to compile the source code files, and then (3) sets watches on all the signals and variables in the top-level instances. The **simulation.log** tab window will display information messages generated during the preparse and during the execution of the command-line compiler tools.

A build will automatically be done each time the simulation is run, but having a separate build button enables you to create the project tree without having to wait for a simulation to run. After the build, you are also able to set the top level instances for the project and/or select additional signals to watch using the project tree context menus.

Three ways to build a project:

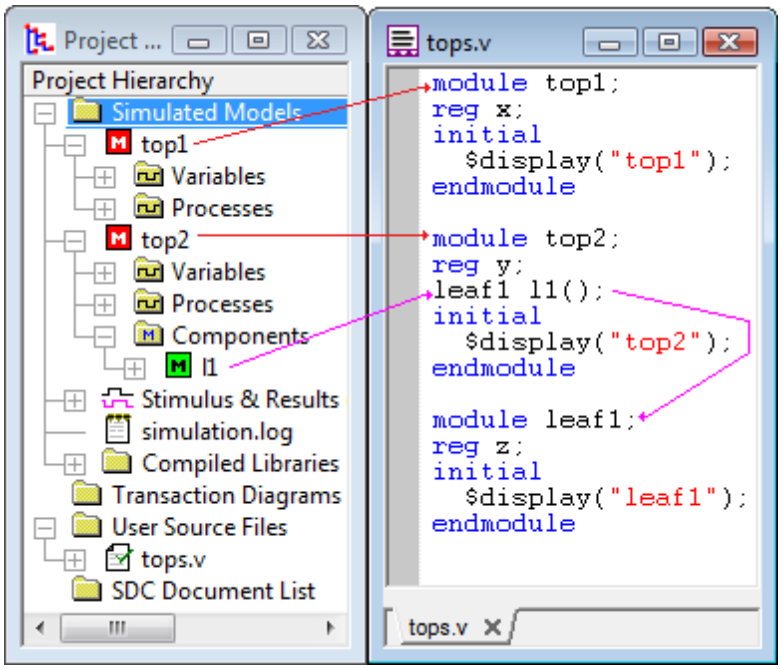
- (1) Click the yellow **Build** button on the simulation button bar, (2) select the **Simulate > Build** menu, or (3) press the **<F7>** key.



Set the <<<Top Level Component>>>:

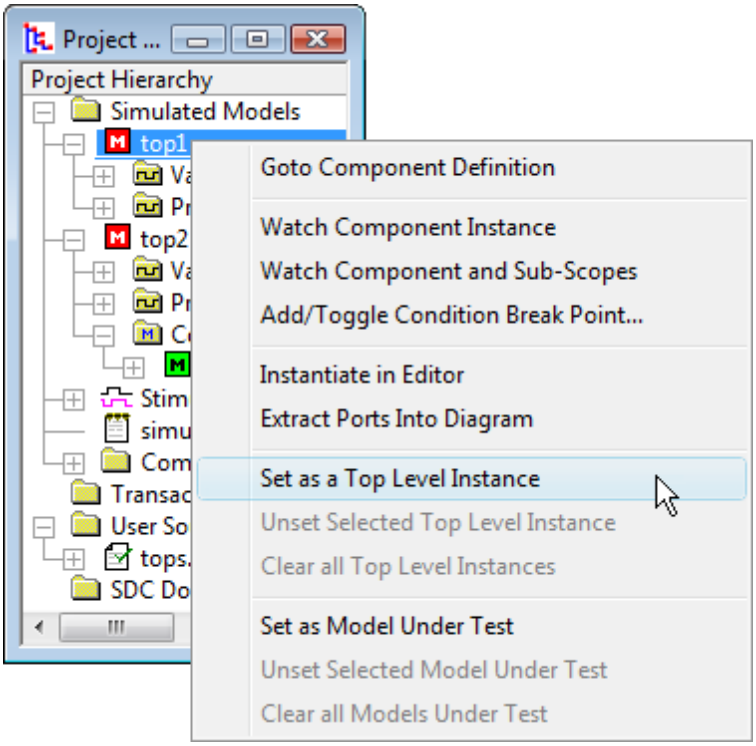
In languages that support multiple top-level instances, BugHunter will find all of of the components that are not instantiated in any other component and list them under the ***Simulated Model*** tree without any brackets. If the language only supports one top-level, the program will grab the first that it finds in the files. All top-level instances will be simulated when a simulation snapshot is run. Any component can be specified as top-level, by using the context menu. The **--scd_top** elaborator command line option duplicates the following GUI functionality (see Section 5.5 Simx: Compiler/ Elaborator 92).

- In this example, after the first build, both top1 and top2 will be listed under Simulated Model, because neither component is instantiated in another component. Both are default top-level modules and will be simulated simultaneously.

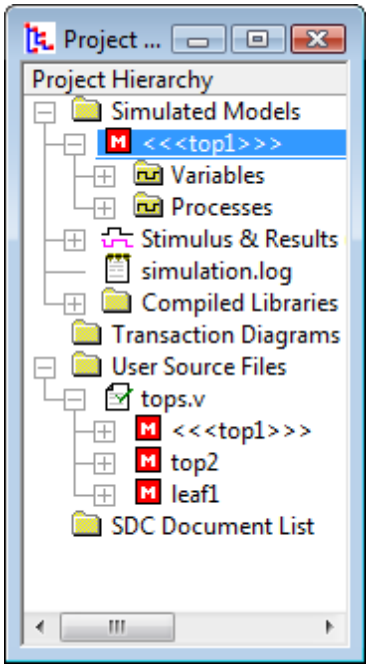


Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- To set one component as the top level, find the component under the ***Simulated Model*** or the ***User Source Files*** folders and right click and choose the **Set as a Top Level Instance** from the context menu. More than one top level instance can be manually set.



- The manually-set top level instances are displayed with triple brackets <<<>>> around the names.
- In this example, only top1 will be simulated. The top2 component will not be simulated because it is not instantiated within top1.
- To undo this operation so that the default top-level components are automatically chosen by the tool, right click on the component and choose **Unset Selected Top-Level Instance** or **Clear all Top Level Instances**.



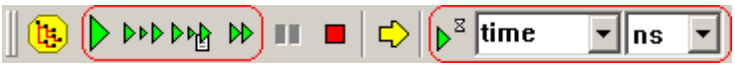
Step 7: Simulate and Debug - General Overview

BugHunter can perform a variety of graphical debugging functions which are covered in detail in Chapter 2: Simulate and Debugging Functions 221. Basically, you will start the simulator and view the results either in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram or in one of the tabs of the *Report* window.

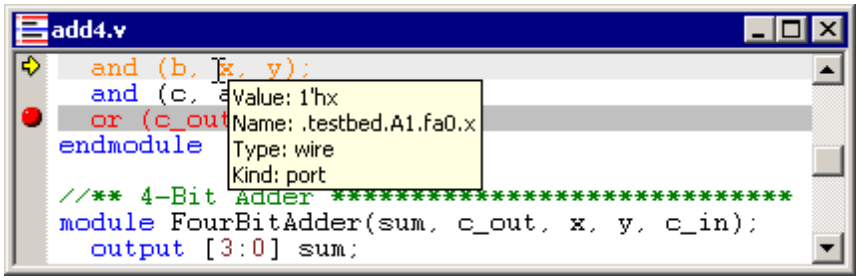
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Start the Simulator:

- Start the simulator by pressing one of the green buttons on the Build and Simulate button bar. Section 2.2 Build and Simulate 29 explains the differences between the types of single stepping and running.

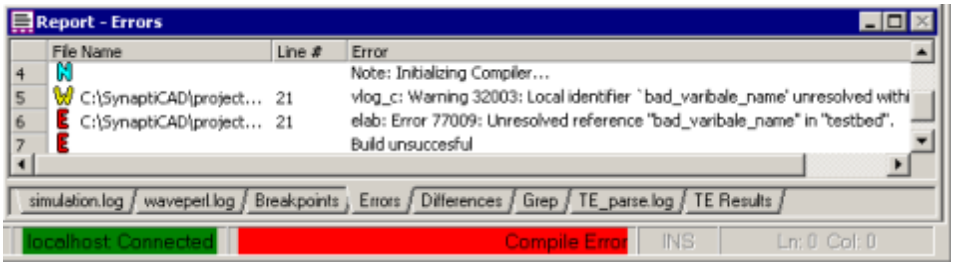


- When single stepping, the yellow arrow button will open the editor with the line of code that will be simulated next, and the line of code is marked with a yellow arrow as shown below.
- Variables can be inspected by moving the mouse cursor over the variable in the editor window (see Section 2.5: Inspect values 36 for more inspection features).
- The ***red dots*** in the margin of the editor window are breakpoints (see Section 2.4: Breakpoints 34 for more advanced breakpoint types).



Check for Errors:

- The status bar in the lower right hand corner displays a red message if an error is found during the build or simulation.
- In the ***Errors*** tab of the *Report* window, double click on an error to open an editor window that will display the code the caused the error. If you cannot see the *Report* window, select **Window > Report** menu to bring the window to the front.



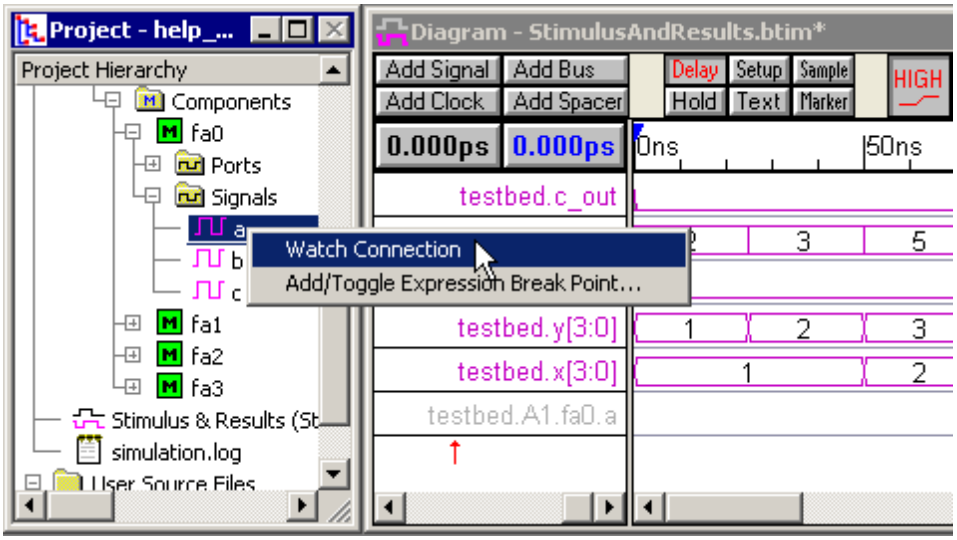
- The ***Simulation Log*** tab also displays error messages and other messages that are produced by the simulator, however these are not linked to the code.
- The ***Waveperl Log*** *tab* will display error messages that are associated with test bench code generation. Usually, only TestBencher Pro and Reactive Test Bench users need to check this tab.

View Waveform Simulation Results:

The signals in the top-level module will automatically be put into the *Stimulus and Results* diagram and waveforms will be displayed as the simulation progresses. Signals can be added to the diagram by right clicking on the desired signal in the Project window and setting a **watch** on it. Signals can be removed by deleting them from the *Stimulus and Results* diagram. See Chapter 3 56 for information

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

on using multiple *Stimulus and Results* diagrams.



Step 8: Save the Project, Code and Waveform Files

In BugHunter there are three types of files associated with a project.

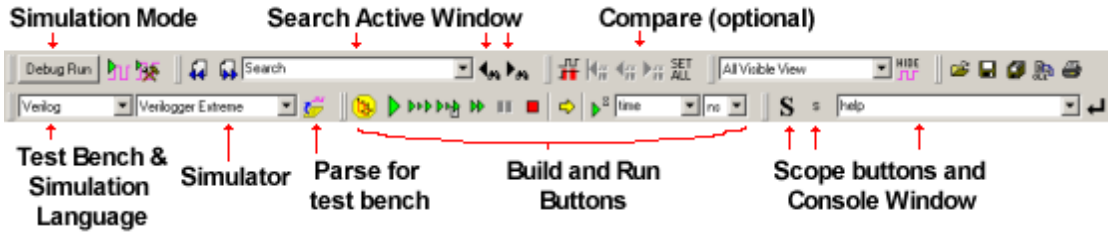
- Project files have an extension of **hpj** and are saved by using the **Project > Save HDL Project** menu option. This saves the list of files that compose the current project and related simulation options. It does not save the watched signals list.
- HDL Source code files usually have an extension of **v, vhd** or **cpp** (depending on the language) and are saved by selecting the editor window and choosing the **Editor > Save HDL Code** menu option.
- *Stimulus and Results* diagram files have an extension of **btim** and are saved using the **File > Save Timing Diagram** menu option. This file saves any watched signals.

Saving watched signals in separate diagram files allows you to build several different test cases so you can compare and contrast future simulation results.

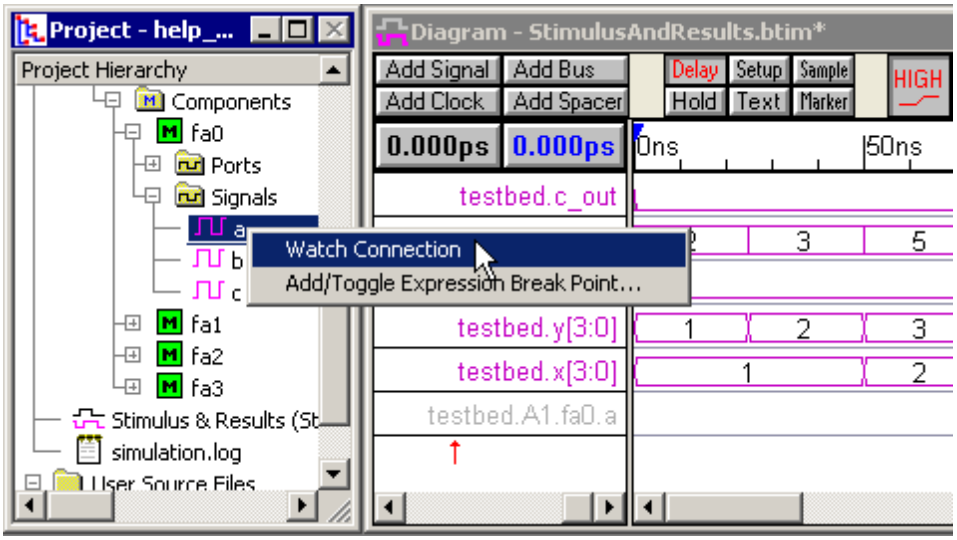
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 2: Simulation and Debugging Functions

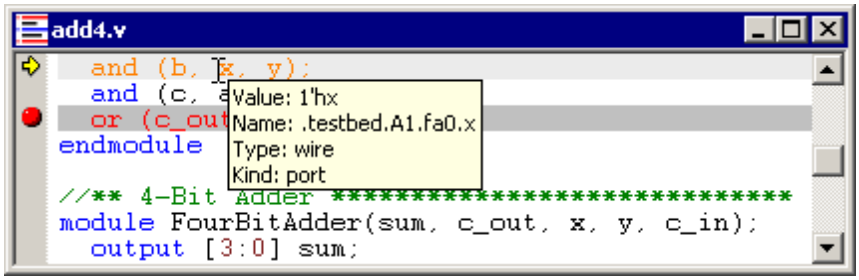
The Simulation Button Bar controls when and how simulations are performed. The interactive command console window can be used to enter simulator commands to observe and control variables and models during simulation. The Search Active Window box will search diagrams for signals, or the project window for anything.



The Stimulus and Results diagram shows the simulated waveforms. Additional signals can be added by right clicking on the signal or component in the *Project* window and setting a **watch** on the object and then re-simulating (or continue simulating).



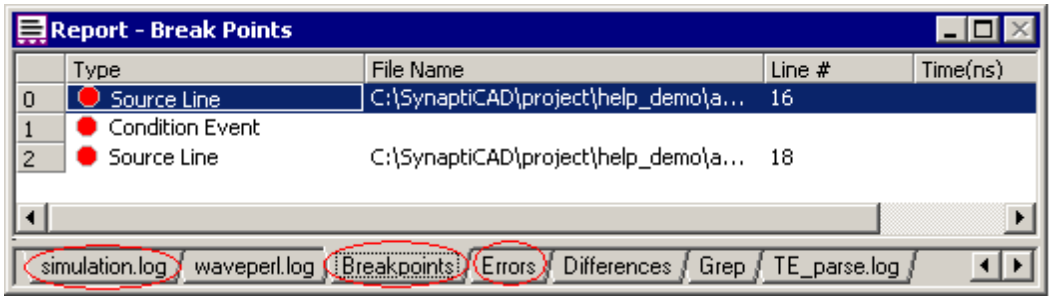
Quickly inspect a variables current value by placing the mouse over a variable in the *Edit* window. Or use the **Simulate > Inspect values** menu to investigate variables values at different times during the simulation. Breakpoints can be added to the source code by placing red dots in the grey bar to the left of the code. The current simulation line is indicated by the yellow arrow.



The *Report* window manages several tab windows are important to simulation and debugging. The **simulation.log** file displays the default log file for the simulator. The ***Breakpoints*** tab displays all of the breakpoints that are set on the code in the editor windows and the components in the project file.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

And the ***Errors*** tab displays any compile or simulation bugs that are found in the design.

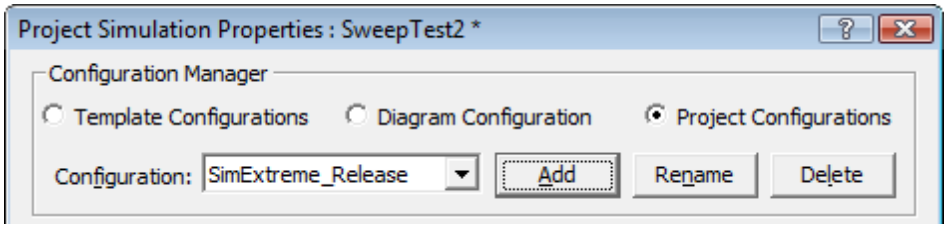


2.1 Project Simulation Properties

The *Project Simulation Properties* dialog controls how a project is compiled and run, and determines the simulator run time options and which simulator to use for projects and diagrams. If you are moving projects back and forth between different machines and simulators, you may wish to create a**configuration** template for each machine. Also you may wish to have different configuration for different debug and release setups.

Open the Project Simulation Dialog:

- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog.



Global versus Project Settings

- Select **Template Configurations** to edit the default settings that are used by new projects. These are stored in the INI file each time the program is closed. The **Restore Default Templates** button (at the bottom of the dialog) is used to reset the INI file to the factory default settings for this dialog.
- Select **Diagram Configuration** to edit the options for how diagrams are simulated (simulated signals in a *Diagram* window). These are stored in the INI file.
- Select **Project Configurations** to edit the project settings for the current project. These settings are stored in the project HPJ file when you save the project.

Configurations:

If you are moving projects to different machines or if you want to have different project settings for debugging and releasing a project you may want to create a new configuration to store the different settings. You can also create different configurations for different simulators which need different command line options. Configurations are also useful if you have projects containing source files in multiple languages and you occasionally only want to compile files of a particular language type (for example, when you're translating from VHDL to Verilog and only want to compile the translated files).

There are default configurations for all supported simulators. You can edit these or create a new

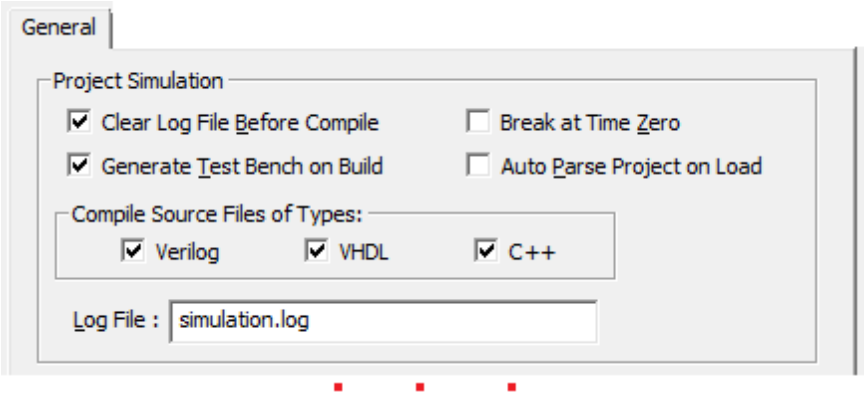
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

configuration:

- Press the **Add** button to open the *Add New Configuration* dialog and you specify a name and the default configuration to copy settings from.
- **Rename** button lets you change the name of the current configuration.
- **Delete** removes the current configuration.
- Use the **Configurations** drop-down to choose which configuration is currently active (e.g. which settings will be used for compiling and running simulations).

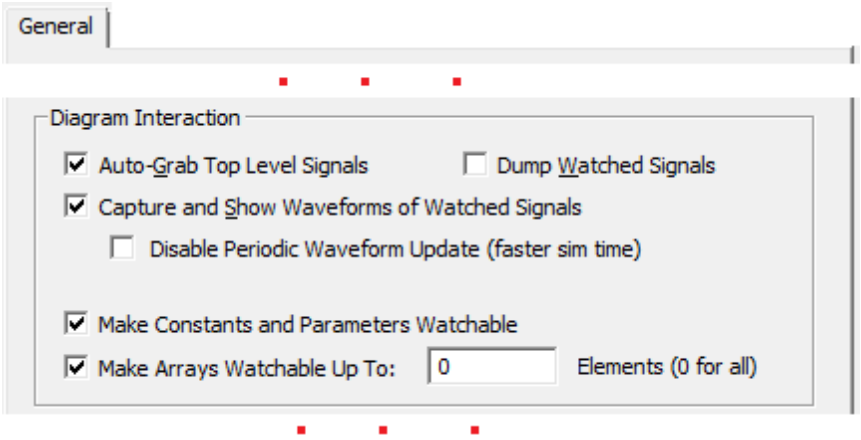
General Simulation Options

The **General** tab contains simulation options that are standard across all simulators.

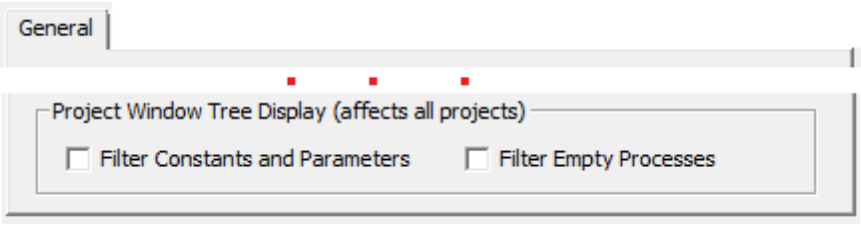


- **Clear Log File Before Compile** clears the simulation log just prior to a new compilation being performed. This log maintains compilation notes, as well as some simulation notes. Note that in this dialog you can also change the name of this log (see Logfile below).
- **Break at Time Zero** is the equivalent of setting a breakpoint at time zero. This starts the simulator and allows you to enter commands into the console window that will be executed at the start of the simulation.
- **Generate Test Bench on Build Project** automatically updates the test bench for changes to timing diagrams. Turn this off if you want to temporarily change some of the generated source code manually or to avoid updating the test bench on diagram changes.
- When the **Auto Parse Project on Load** box is checked, user source files are automatically parsed and built when the project is loaded. The top-level component is the first module that is not included by another module for Verilog; it is the first entity/architecture pair parsed for VHDL. This is mainly used by Actel Libero customers with WaveFormer Lite.
- **Compile Source Files of Type** section specifies which kind of files to compile. This is especially important for V2V translation projects, and projects with mixed language code. Consider using this along with the above *Configurations* setting, by having a VHDL configuration and a Verilog configuration for doing different simulations.
- **Log File** specifies the name of the log file that receives all the simulation results and information. By default BugHunter uses *simulation.log*.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- **Auto-Grab Top Level Signals** causes signals in the top-level component to be automatically added as Watch signals in the stimulus and results diagram whenever the project is rebuilt
- **Dump Watched Signals** generates a dump file for any watched signals in the diagram. The generated file will named ***diagramName*.VCD**.
- **Capture and Show Waveforms of Watched Signals** enables the display of waveform results from a simulation run.
    - When **Disable Periodic Waveform Update (faster sim time)** is unchecked, all simulation waveforms are flushed across to the Stimulus and Results Diagram window every 5 seconds. Checking this causes waveforms to only be updated when sufficient data has built up or when the simulator is paused or stopped.
- When **Make Constants and Parameters Watchable** is unchecked then these objects will not be watched when you ask to watch all contents of a component.
- When **Make Arrays Watchable Up To: xxx Elements (0 for all)** is unchecked, array elements will not be watched when you ask to watch all the contents of a component. Even if it is checked, you can limit the number of array elements that get dumped for each array (in order to prevent creating too many watched signals from being generated when watching a large memory array, for example). If you really want to dump all array elements, no matter how large the array, set the Elements limit to 0.



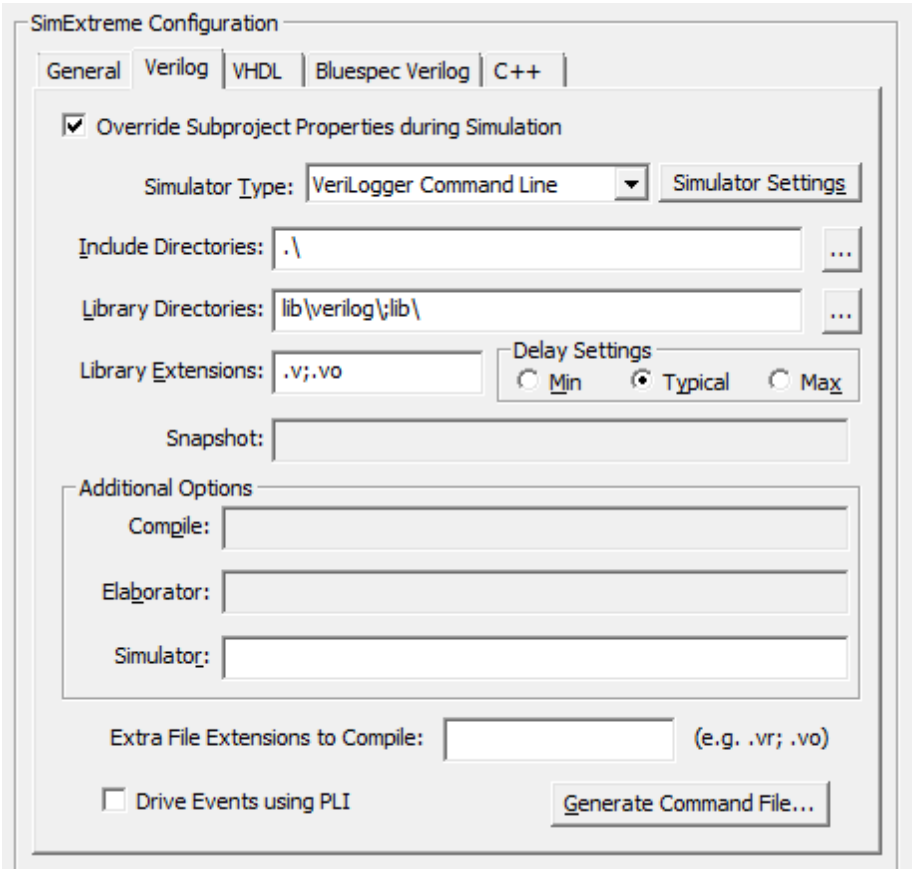
- **Filter Constants and Parameters** will hide these objects in the project tree to make the tree size more manageable.
- **Filter Empty Processes** will hide processes in the project tree that do not contain signals or variables.

Verilog Tab:

The **Verilog** tab specifies the simulator and simulation options used for Verilog projects.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- The **Override Subproject Properties during Simulation** works only with TestBencher and forces the compiler to use only the top-level project settings to build and run the subprojects.
- **Simulator Type** specifies the simulator.
- The **Simulator Settings** button opens the Simulator / Compiler Settings dialog where you can edit the simulator paths.



- **Include Directories** specifies the directories where BugHunter searches for included files. The following is a Windows example (Unix users should use the / slashes):

```
C:\design\project;c:\design\library
```

- The **Library Directories** box lists the path and directories where the program searches for library files. BugHunter will try to match any undefined components with the names of the files that have one of the file extensions listed in the *Lib Extensions* edit box. The simulator does not look inside a file unless the undefined component name exactly matches a file name. The simulator does not look at any files unless there are file extensions listed in the Lib Extensions edit box. Note that this works even with compiled code simulators that don't normally support the -y option. The following is a Windows example (Unix users should use the / slashes):

```
C:\design\project;c:\design\library
```

- The **Lib Extensions** box specifies the file name extension used when searching for library files in the library directory. Each library extension should begin with the period character followed by the extension name. Use a semicolon to separate multiple file extensions.

```
.v;.vo
```

- The **Delay Settings** radio buttons determines which delay value is used in min:typ:max expressions. These settings are output as either the **+maxdelays**, **+mindelays**, or

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

+typdelays command line simulator option.

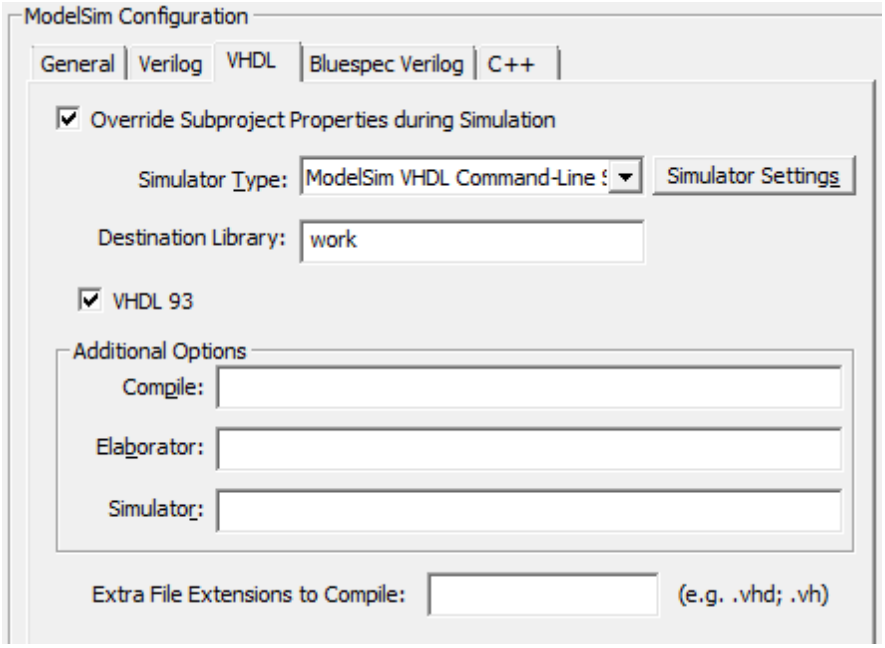
- The **Snapshot** box accepts a text string that will become the name of the simulation that is built (overriding the normal name of the simulation build).
- **Compile**, **Elaborator**, and **Simulator** option edit boxes allow you to write additional command line options that will be passed to each tool when it is run. If you want to compile an existing design that is normally compiled using a command line simulator, you can easily compile this kind of design by setting the same options here (see 2.12 Compiling Command-Line Based Designs 52 for details). Note that not all simulators support all three phases of command line options.
    - By default, simulation options are expected to be specified using Simx-syntax (discussed in Chapter 5). BugHunter will automatically translate these options to the appropriate form for the target simulator. If you want to pass options from another simulator, you can use the "simulation translation mode" options to change the mode BugHunter expects options to be in (see Section 12.3 SimSwapper Translation Modes 185).
- The **Drive Events using PLI** checkbox changes the way stimulus from the *StimulusAndResults* diagram is sent to the simulator. By default, stimulus waveforms cause Verilog stimulus code to be compiled into the simulation (see Section 3.2: Drawing Waveforms for Stimulus Generation 59). But when this option is checked, stimulus is directly injected into the simulation at runtime via a PLI application that reads from the btim timing diagram file. This allows you to change the stimulus by editing the btim file without requiring a recompile of your simulation. The disadvantage of this approach is that you cannot single step through the stimulus, since it's injected via PLI.
- The **Extra File Extensions to Compile** adds more types of files that will be treated as Verilog files.
- When the **Generate Command File** button is pushed, the text contained in the Simulator Options edit box along with the list of Verilog files specified in the *Project* window are written to a Command File. This file can then be used with the Command Line version of your simulator to run a simulation without the BugHunter GUI.

VHDL Tab:

The **VHDL** tab contains the simulation options and simulator used for VHDL projects.

- The **Override Subproject Properties during Simulation** works only with TestBencher and forces the compiler to use only the top-level project settings to build and run the subprojects.
- **Simulator Type** determines the simulator.
- The **Simulator Settings** button opens the *Simulator / Compiler Settings* dialog where you can edit the simulator paths.
- The **Destination Library** controls the logical library that sources files will be compiled into when a build is performed.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



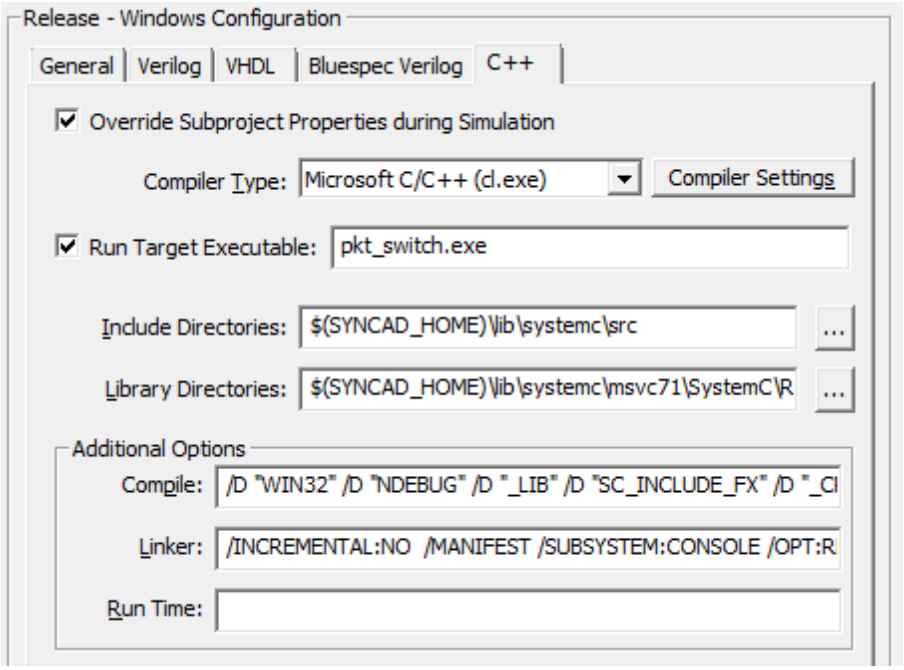
- The **VHDL 93** checkbox specifies that the project dialect for the generated files is **VHDL 93**.
- The **Compile**, **Elaborator**, and **Simulator** options edit box allow you to write additional command line options that will be passed to the tool when it is run. Most simulators do not support all three phases of command line options.
- The **Extra File Extensions to Compile** adds more types of files that will be treated as VHDL files.

C++ Tab:

The **TestBuilder** tab contains the compiler options and compiler used for C++ projects.

- The **Override Subproject Properties during Simulation** works only with TestBencher and forces the compiler to use only the top-level project settings to build and run the subprojects.
- **Compiler Type** specifies the C++ compiler.
- The **Compiler Settings** button opens the *Simulator / Compiler Settings* dialog where you can review and edit the compiler paths.

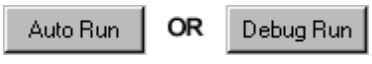
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- The **Run Target Executable** sets the name for the executable program that will be built/run from the C++ source code in the project.
- The **Include Directories** specifies the include directories that will be searched for header files when files are included into a source file.
- The **Library Directories** specifies the directories to search for library files during the build process.
- The **Compile**, **Linker**, and **Run Time** options edit box allow you to write additional command line options that will be passed to the tool when it is run.

2.2 Build and Simulate

BugHunter has two simulation modes, **Auto Run** and **Debug Run,** that determine when a simulation is performed. In the **Debug Run** simulation mode, simulations are started only when the user clicks the **Run** or **Single Step** buttons (similar to a standard HDL simulator). In the **Auto Run** simulation mode, the simulator will automatically run a simulation each time a waveform is added or modified in the *Diagram* window. The Auto Run mode makes it easy to quickly test small components using a stimulus diagram and do bottom-up testing of your components. Click the mode button to toggle between the two simulation modes.



The active simulation mode is displayed on the left most button on the simulation button bar.

The build and simulate functions are accessed from the simulation button bar located at the top of the main window. These buttons also create batch files that can be used to run the simulator from the command line (see Section 5.3 Batch Files for Command Line Simulators 89).



Project Simulation Properties - opens a dialog that controls how the project is built, and determines the simulator run time options and which simulator to use for projects and diagrams. It also supports configurations for saving options for different kinds of builds. See Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23 for an in-depth discussion of

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

the settings in this dialog.



Build - compiles the project files, builds the hierarchical tree, populates the Stimulus and Results diagram, and if necessary generates a testbench. It does not run a simulation. The **<F7>** key and the **Simulate > Build** menu also perform the same function. See the note below for controlling the destination library during the build.



Run/Resume - compiles the files (if there have been changes since the last build) and then runs a simulation until it is stopped by a breakpoint, the pause button, the stop button, or the end of the simulation is reached. This button also continues a simulation when it is currently paused. The **<F5>** key and the **Simulate > Run** menu also perform the same function.



Step Into - steps to the next line of code and will also step into function calls.



Step Over Calls - steps to the next line of code. It does not step into function calls.



Step Out - executes to the end of the current function and stops as the function finishes.



Enable Trace Logging - if the Log button is depressed then using any of the stepping buttons will send a trace statement to the **simulation.log** file.



Pause - stops the simulation and places the simulator into interactive debugging mode. This button is only active during a simulation.



End - exits the simulation.



Goto - opens an editor at the line that will execute next. Use this button when the simulation is stopped.



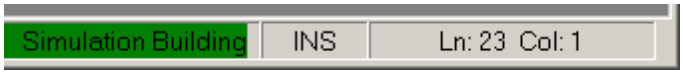
Run To Time button bar runs the simulation for a specified amount of time. Type a time into the time box, pick the units of time, and then click the green triangle with the hourglass button.

First build to debug syntax errors:

- Normally you will first press the **Build** button to compile the code and debug any syntax errors. The status of the build is reported in the lower right hand corner of the screen.



- **Simulation Building** means that the compile is still compiling.

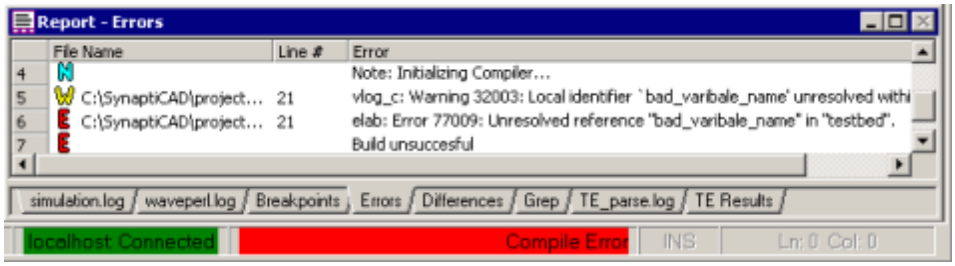


- **Simulation Built** means that the compile succeeded and you are ready to simulate



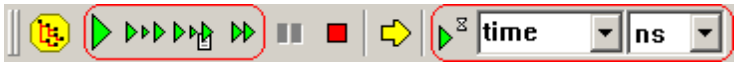
- **Compile Error** means that the compile failed and the syntax errors will be listed in the *Error* tab of the *Report* window (see Section 2.7: Report Window Error and Log file tabs 40). Double click on an error to be taken to the code that caused the error.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

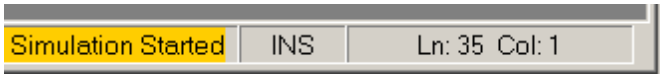


Then run the simulation:

- Press one of the green Run buttons to start the simulator. The status of the simulator is reported in the lower right hand corner of the screen.



- **Simulation Started** shows that the simulation has been started at time 0, but has not yet executed a line of code.



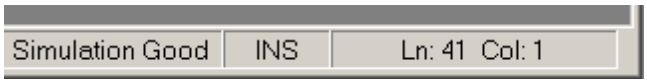
- **Simulation Running** shows that the simulation is currently running and may be stopped using the pause or stop button.



- Whenever a simulation is paused, the simulation time and scoping level are listed in the status bar.



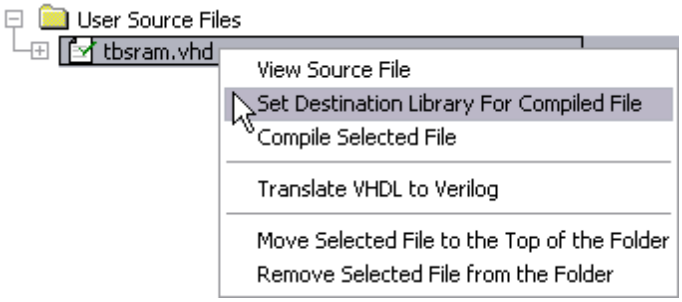
- **Simulation Good** is displayed when the simulator is completed without errors.



Compiling to Destination Libraries during a Build:

By default, the source files under the **User Source File folder** (in the Project Window) are compiled to the standard 'work' library in VHDL. Sometimes, however, these source files may need to be compiled to a different library. You can override the default work library destination for a source file by specifying the new library using a right click context menu.

- In the User Source Files folder, right click on the source file and choose **Set Destination Library for Compiled File** from the context menu. This opens a dialog where you can set the name of the logical library that this file will be compiled to when Builds are performed.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Compiling a Single Source File:

It's sometimes convenient to compile one or more individual source files to check for syntax errors in code you've just changed.

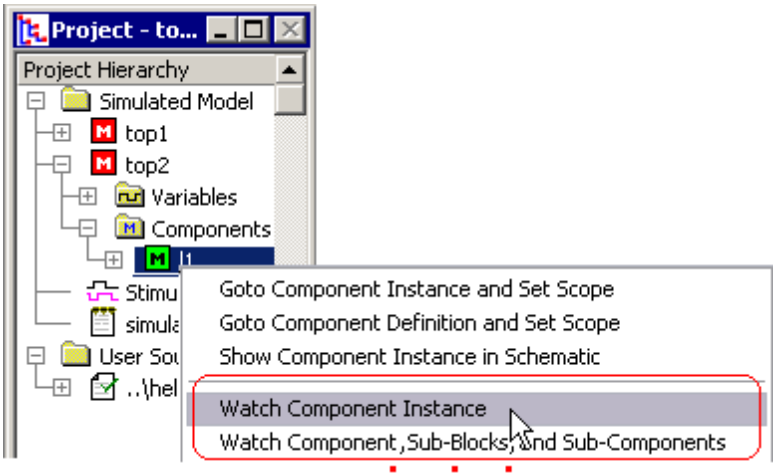
- In the **User Source Files** folder, right click on the desired source file and select the **Compile Selected File** menu option. See the above picture of the context menu.

2.3 Watching Signal and Component Waveforms

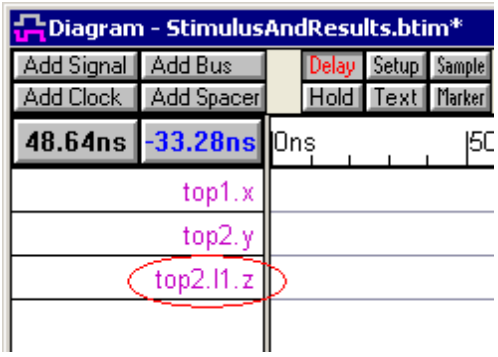
After compiling a project, use the *Project* window to pick signals to be watched and placed in the Stimulus and Results diagram. To maximize simulation speed, simulators do not automatically store signal transition times unless a signal is specifically tagged as one to watch. Chapter 3: Waveforms and Test Bench Generation 56 covers all the the intricacies of managing multiple Stimulus and Results diagrams.

Watch anything under Simulated Model: signals, ports, variables, or components

- Expand the ***Simulated Model*** folder until you locate something that you would like to watch.
- Right-click on the node and choose one of the **Watch** menus, which will vary according to what type of object is selected.

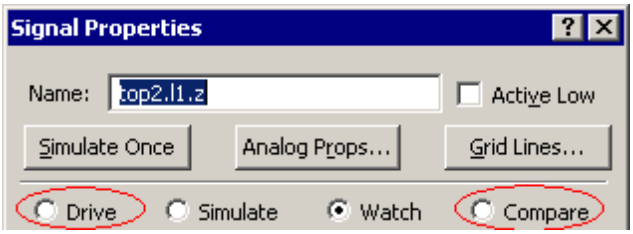


- After setting the watch, the signal name will appear in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram. The waveform data will be displayed during the next simulation run. If any signal is selected when you add the watch signal, the watch signal will be added after the last selected signal.
- To **remove a watched signal**, just delete it from the *Stimulus and Results* diagram.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- To **temporarily stop watching** a signal, double click on the signal name to open the *Signal Properties* dialog and change the signal type from ***watch*** to ***drive*** or ***compare***. Generally it's best to make it a compare signal.



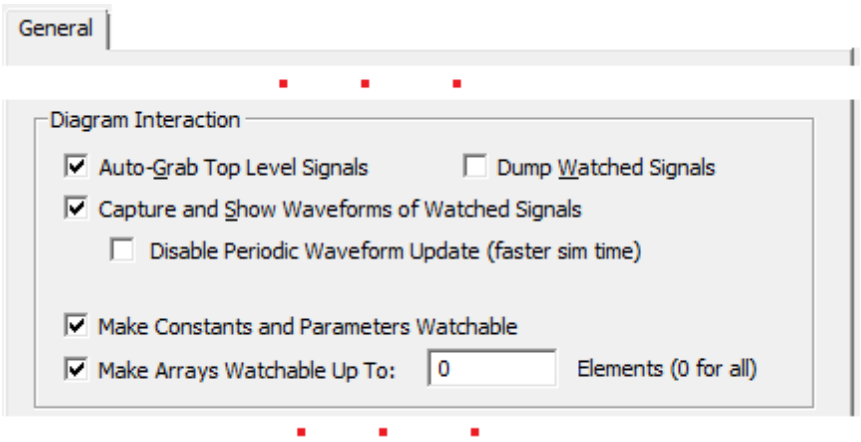
- If a signal is currently being watched, watching the signal again will scroll the Stimulus and Results diagram to display the signal.
- You can also view bit-slices of a watched signal by changing the MSB and LSB of the original signal or on a copy of the signal. See Section 3.4: Bit-Slicing a Watched Signal 63 for a description of this technique.

Top-level Models are automatically watched:

After you build the project, the signals or the ports in the top-level component are automatically added to the *Diagram* window. If the top-level component does not have port signals, the internal signals of the component are viewed. If the top-level component has port signals, the output ports are viewed as purple signals and input ports are viewed as black signals. You can edit the black input signals to provide stimulus to the top-level component. The waveform drawing functions are covered in Section 3.2 Drawing Waveforms for Stimulus Generation 59.

Global Settings for watch signals:

- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog.



- **Auto-Grab Top Level Signals** tells BugHunter to grab the signals in the top-level components and add them to the *Stimulus and Results Diagram* as default watch signals whenever a build is performed.
- **Capture and Show Waveforms of Watched Signals** causes watched signals to display their waveform data in the *Stimulus and Results Diagram*. Normally this is unchecked if the ***Dumped Watch Signals*** is checked.
- **Dump Watched Signals** will cause the watched signal data to be written to a Verilog Change Dump file (VCD file). This is normally unchecked because the *Stimulus and Results Diagram* captures waveform data in the BTIM format which is a much faster and more compressed

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

format than VCD.

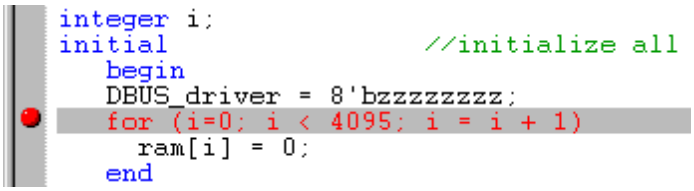
2.4 Breakpoints

Breakpoints pause the simulation at a particular source code line, simulation time, or activity on a particular variable. The *Report* window displays the list of breakpoints in the **Breakpoints** tab. Each break point can be also be temporally made inactive without having to remove the breakpoint from the project.

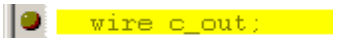
Add Source Code Breakpoints through the Editor Windows:

Source code breakpoints stop the simulator each time a particular line of code is executed.

- In an *Editor* window, click on the gray line on the left side of the window, to add a breakpoint, indicated by the red circle on the line.

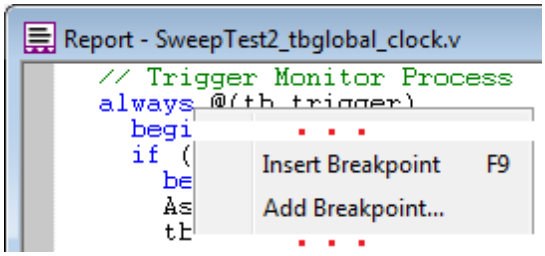


- During simulation, a source code breakpoint can turn grey to indicate that it is on an invalid line of code.



Breakpoints can also be added by right clicking and choosing one of the **Breakpoint** context menus.

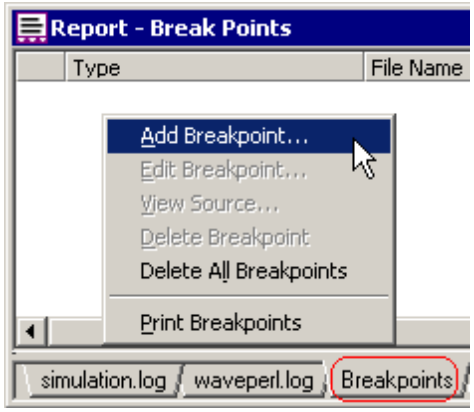
- **Insert Breakpoint** adds a line breakpoint at the current cursor position.
- **Add Breakpoint** opens the breakpoint dialog, allowing you to create time and condition breakpoints.



Add Time Breakpoints through the Report Window Breakpoint Tab:

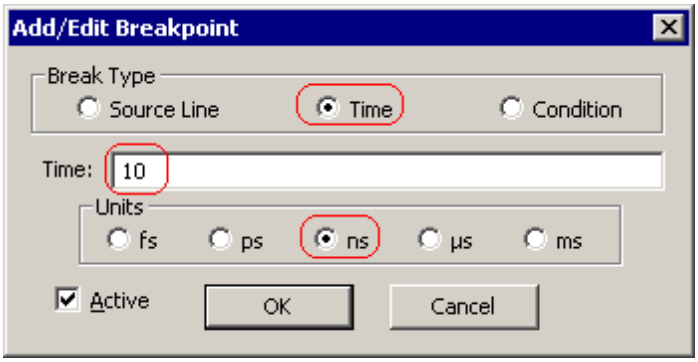
Time based breakpoints stop the simulator at a particular simulation time.

- Right-click anywhere in the *Breakpoints* tab window and select the **Add Breakpoint** option from the pop-up menu to the *Add/edit Breakpoint* dialog.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

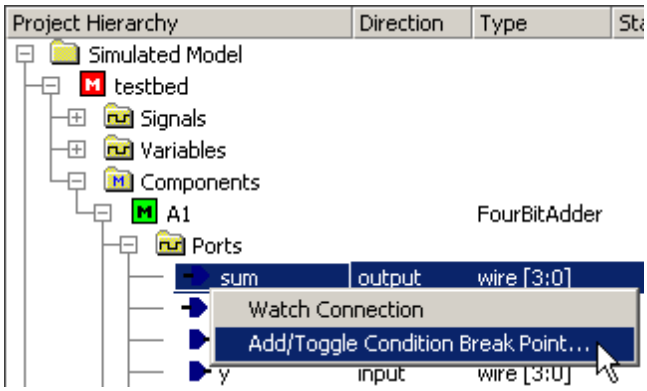
- Select the **Time** radio button to change the dialog to the time configuration.
- Enter a time and a time unit, then press Ok to close the dialog.



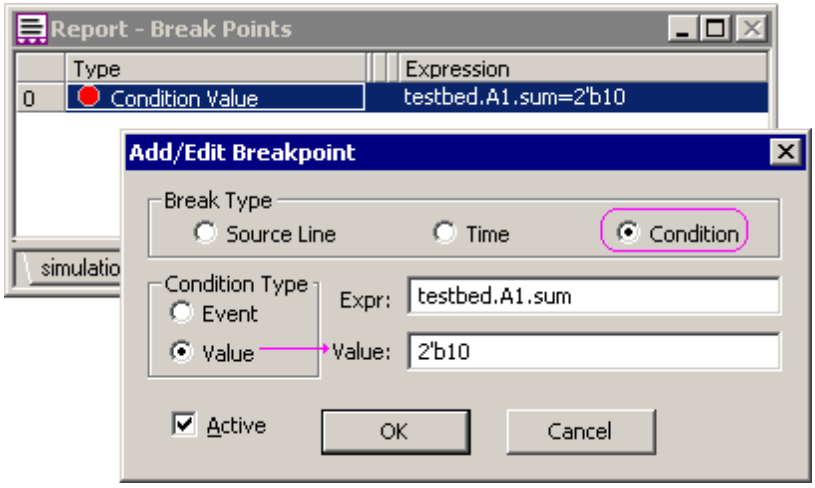
Add Condition Breakpoints through the Project window:

Condition breakpoints will break every time a particular variable/signal changes or every time it reaches a specific value.

- The easiest way to add a Condition breakpoint is to find the variable in the Project tree and right click and choose choose **Add/ Toggle Condition Breakpoint** menu. This will open the *Add/Edit Breakpoint* dialog with the Expr box filled.



- If the **Event** condition type is chosen, then the simulation will break on any change in the expression listed in the **Expr** box.
- If the **Value** condition type is chosen, then the simulation will break only when the expression matches the value in the **Value** edit box.



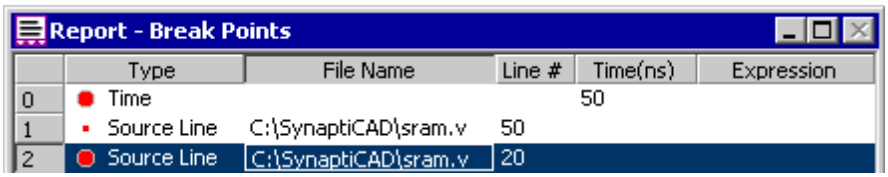
- Most simulators only accept a hierarchical signal name for the **Expr** in a condition breakpoint, but some simulators accept more complicated expressions. Graphical breakpoints generate simulator ***stop*** console commands, so these condition breakpoints should have the same functionality as that command. Below is an example of a console command for a value based on a bit slice of the variable. In the breakpoint GUI, you would enter *testbed.A1.sum[2:1]* into the Expr box, and *2'b11* into the value box.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



Turn Breakpoints ON and OFF using the Breakpoint Tab window:

- Each breakpoint, regardless of how or where it is added, will be listed in the ***Break points*** *tab* in the *Report* window.



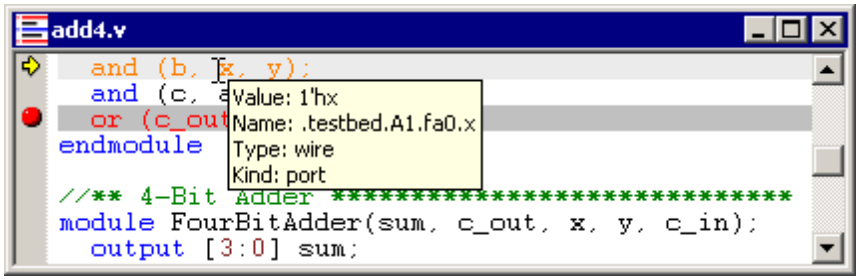
- Clicking on a red breakpoint button will toggle it between active and inactive states. An inactive breakpoint is displayed as a small red circle and is ignored in a simulation.
- Double-clicking on a source code breakpoint will open an editor starting at that line in the source code.
- Right-clicking anywhere in the tab window will open a menu allowing you to add, edit, or delete breakpoints.

2.5 Inspect And Edit Values

During a paused simulation, BugHunter supports inspecting values of variables and signals in both the *Editor* windows and in the *Inspect Values* dialog. The *Editor* window displays only the current values for the simulation. The *Inspect Values* dialog can be used to inspect both the current and past values.

Use the Editor window to inspect current values:

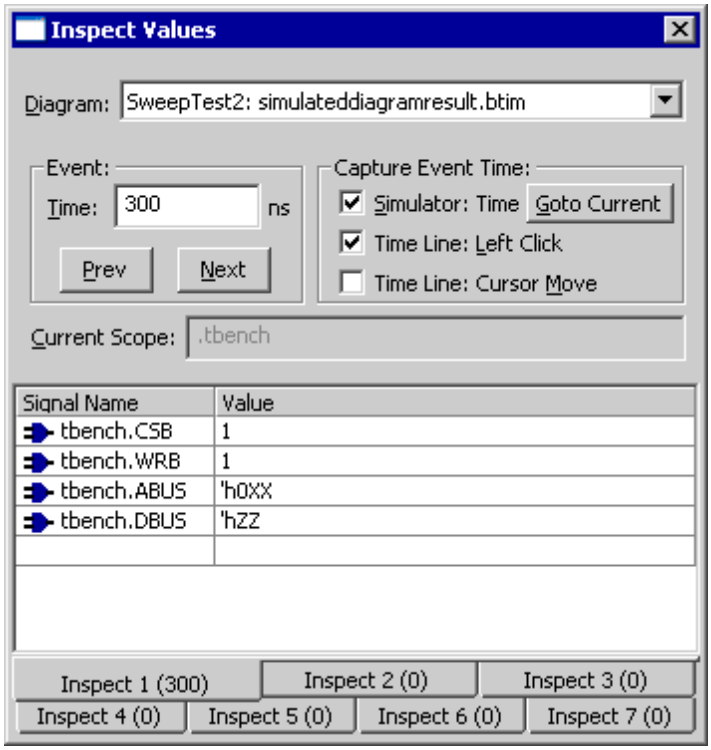
- Put the mouse over a variable or signal name. This will cause a tool tips to pop-up and display the value and the type of the variable.



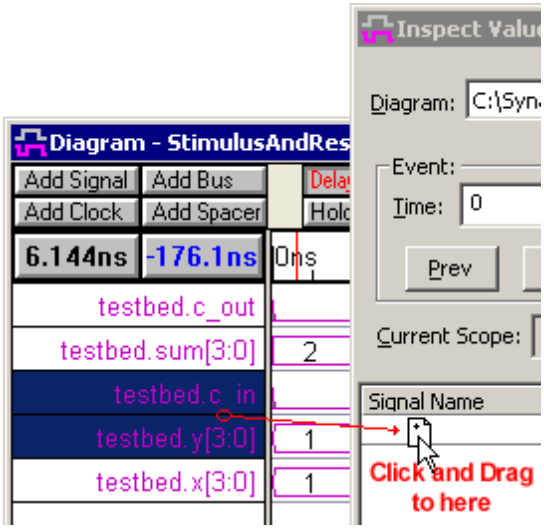
Use Inspect Values dialog to inspect at previous simulation times:

- Choose **Simulate > Inspect Values** menu option to open the dialog.

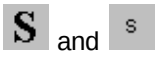
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- Drag and Drop signals from the *Stimulus and Results* diagram into the **Signal Name** box.
- You may also type variable names into the **Signal Name** boxes. However, only variables that are also displayed in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram will be able to view previous values. In order to speed simulation times, the tool only remembers the current values for all of the variables and the diagram stores the previous values for just the signals that are specified as important.



- The **Event** section changes the value display to different simulation times. As you go back in time, the icons will change from blue OR gates to waveforms to indicate whether the information is coming from the simulator or from previous results stored in the diagram window. The **Prev** and **Next** move the simulation time to the closest event in the diagram window.
- The "S" top-level scope and "s" local scope buttons on the simulation button bar affect the scope of the variables in the dialog.



and

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

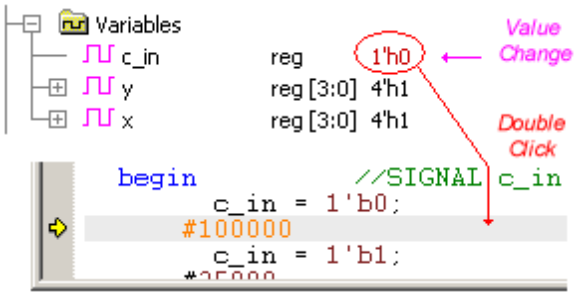
- There are 7 different inspect tabs that let you group a set of related variables together for easier debugging.
- When **Simulator: Time** is checked each tab will continue to update its values to the current simulation time. The **Goto Current** button updates a tab to the current simulation time.
- The **Time Line: Left click** and **Time Line: Cursor Move** affect how the mouse changes the **Time** for the dialog. Left click down in the time line on the top of the diagram window, causes a value display to appear across waveforms. If these check boxes are checked then the corresponding mouse action cause the values in the dialog to change.

Editing Signal and Variable Values in the Inspect Window

Press <F2> in the Value column of a variable in the Inspect Window to open an edit box to change the variable's value. When you press <enter> to close the edit box the value will be changed and the value will turn red to indicate the change in value.

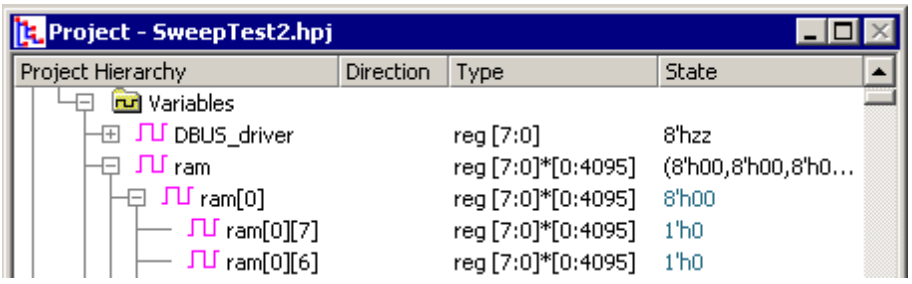
Project Window Shows State of Signals at each Scope Level

The Project Window contains a State column which displays the current values of signals, variables, and constants during a simulation run. This feature is useful for inspecting values at a given scope level within a design when a simulation is paused. Values that have changed since the last time the simulation was paused are displayed in red to highlight activity on these signals and variables.



Viewing Array values in the Project window

The values of array variables are shown in the project window as a comma-separated list of the values of each element. It is also possible to drill down to individual elements in an array or down to individual bits in a bit vector using the project window.



Editing Signal and Variable Values in the Project Window

To change the value of a simulation signal or variable during a simulation, double click on it's value in the State column in the Project Window (or select the value cell and press <F2>), set the desired new value, then press <Enter> to close the edit box and apply the new value.

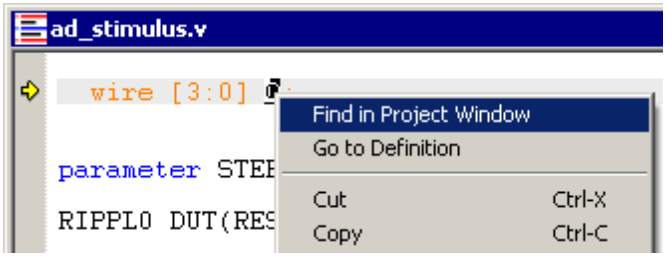
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

2.6 Find Drivers

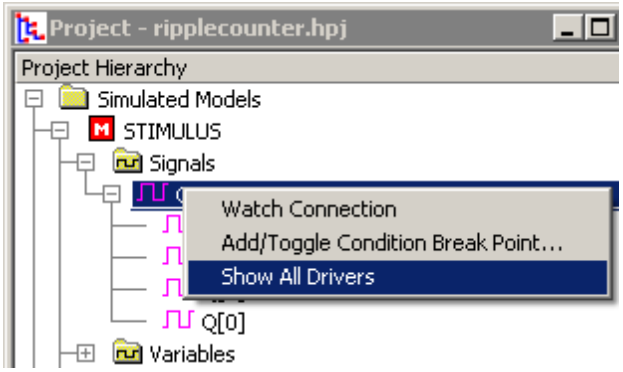
When debugging a simulation, one of the most important questions to answer typically is why a signal is behaving unexpectedly. BugHunter provides a Show Drivers window for exploring the cause-effect relationships between signals. The drivers for a net can be found by using a context menu in the Project Tree.

Locate the Net in the Project Tree:

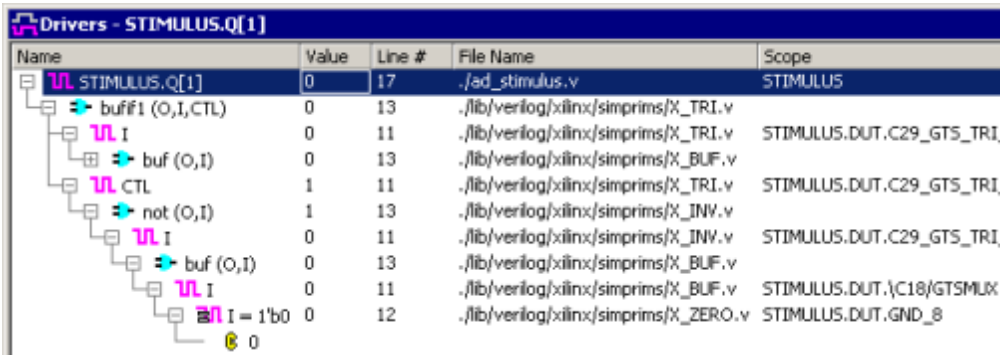
- Step into a simulation. The simulation must be running in order to view driver information for signals.
- Find the Net in the ***Project tree***.
- If you have located it in the ***source code***, then you can select it the signals and right click and choose the **Find in Project** from the context menu.



- In the Project tree, right click on the wire and choose **Show All Drivers** from the context menu. This will open a ***Drivers*** window to show the drivers and the signals connected to the drivers.



- Use the + icons to drill into the drir information.
- The color and type of icon shows information about the drivers and signals: Purple is a net, Green is a register, Blue is a primitive gate, Purple with Equal mark is a continuous assignment statement, and C is a constant value.



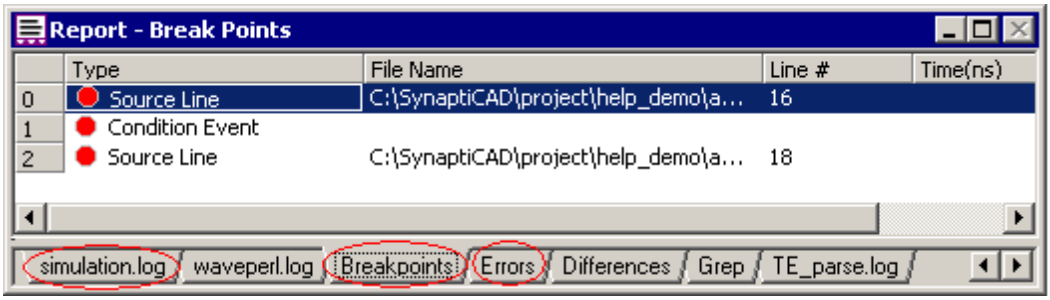
- As shown in the above picture, if you expand the sub-tree of a driver, you can see the input signals to the driver and their current values. By descending thru the tree, you can trace signal paths in your design.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

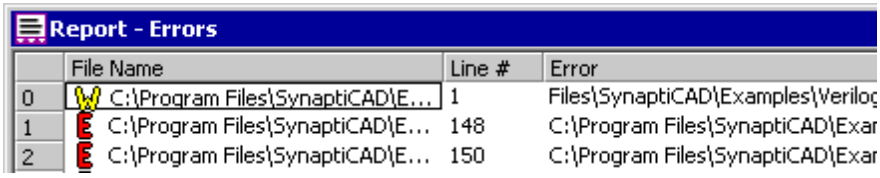
- Double click on a driver name or signal to view the source code for a particular driver or signal. This will also change the simulator's current interactive scope to the instance containing this driver to provide more accurate display of tooltip information in the source editor window.
- Double click in the value column to edit the value for that driver.
- Double click in the scope column to view the source code for the scope instance.

2.7 Report Window Error and Log file tabs

The *Report* window manages several tab windows, three of which are important to simulation and debugging: **simulation.log**, **Errors** and **Breakpoints**.



- The ***simulation.log*** tab contains the default log file for BugHunter. All information generated by the simulator, such as compiler messages, and all user-generated messages from $display tasks and traces are sent to this file. During a simulation run you should watch the simulation.log file for important messages.
- The ***Errors* tab** displays errors an warnings that are hyperlinked to the actual code that threw the message. Double-clicking on an error in the *Errors* tab will open an editor starting at the line of source code where the error was found.



- The ***Breakpoints* tab** is shows a tabular form for all the breakpoints in the current project. This is covered in Section 2.4: Breakpoints 34.

2.8 Command Console for Interactive Debugging

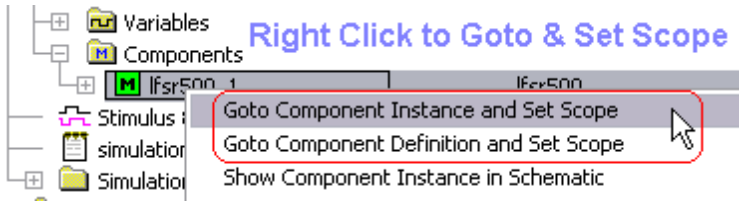
BugHunter has an interactive command console for entering simulator commands to observe, control, and debug a simulation. For example, during an interpreted Verilog simulation, you can enter a Verilog command such as **$finish;** (to end the simulation) or **$display;** (to display the value of a variable). The command console is used to enter commands that are not available in a graphical environment. The types of commands that are supported are dependent on your particular simulator. BugHunter takes the commands and hands them directly to the simulator console. The console maintains a separate history of previously entered commands for each simulator, so that when you switch back and forth between different simulators, you will have a history of valid commands for the current simulator.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

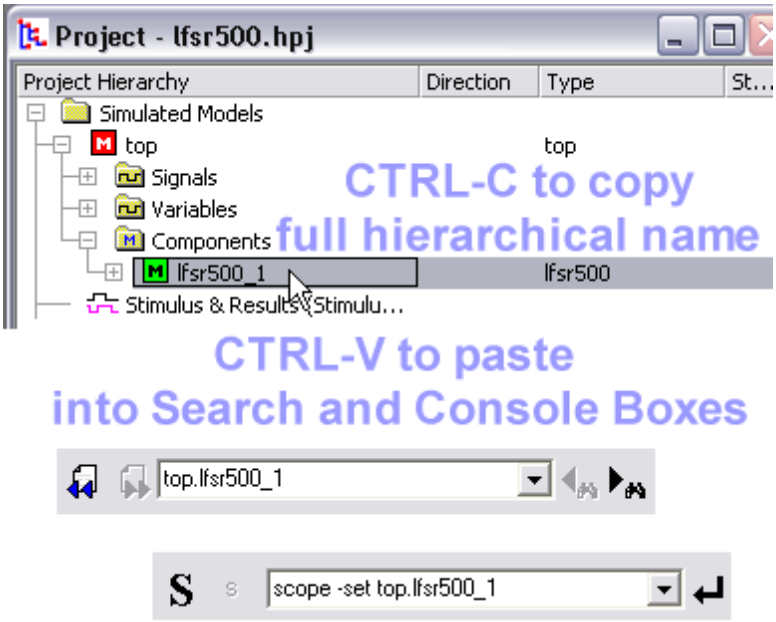
Set the Scope before using most Command Console Functions:

Most of the commands for the Console window are scope sensitive. Here are some quick tips on working with scopes:

- Find a component in your project and choose one of the **Goto** menus to set the scope to that level. This will also open an editor with the relevant code.



- Press the CTRL-C keys to copy the full hierarchical name of a component.
- The CTRL-V keys can be used to paste the name into text boxes, editors, search boxes, and the console window.



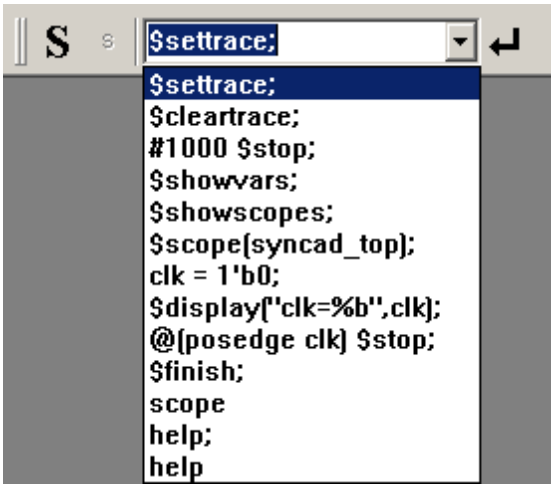
To use the command console window:

- Stop the simulator during a simulation run by either (1) single stepping into the design, (2) hitting a breakpoint, (3) pressing the pause button, or (4) inserting a **$stop** system task into the code. When a simulation is stopped, the simulation display on the status bar turns bright green and displays the current simulation time and scoping level.



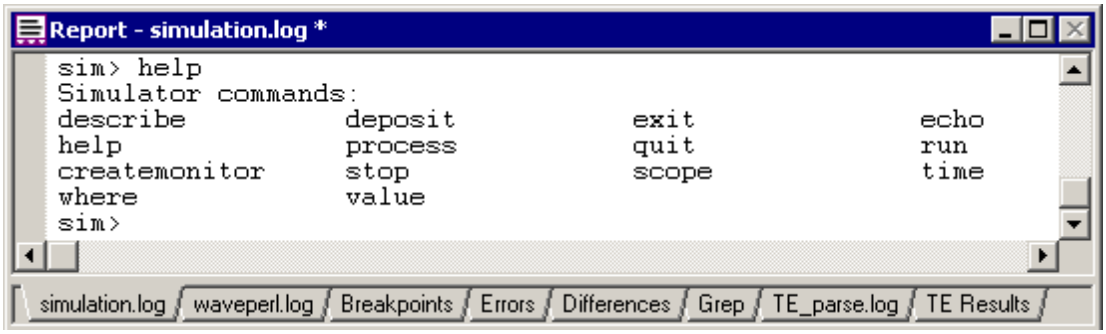
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Type a command into the console window or pick one from the drop-down list and press the <Enter> key or the black arrow button.
- The scope buttons change the scoping level for the commands in the console window. The "S" changes the scope to the top-level component. The "s" changes scope to the current simulation level.



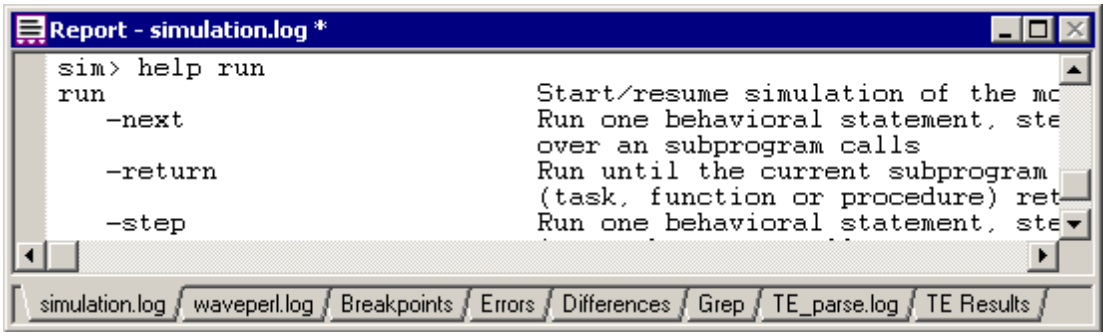
- Type the **help** command to retrieve a list of available commands for your simulator. BugHunter just passes the command to the simulator and there is not a standard list of commands that all simulators support. The list is displayed in the simulation.log tab of the *Report* window.





- To get more information about a specific command, type **help *name_of_command***.





VeriLogger Extreme (simx) Console Commands:

createmonitor instance output [-r [level]] [--signals] [--variables]

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Creates a monitor for signals/variables from a given instance. Monitor source will be saved into the specified output file.

- **instance**: Instance hierarchy path. May contain wildcards at the end. Wildcards are applied only to signal/variable items.
- **-r [level]**: Recursively monitors items from child instances. The level determines max nesting level. If not specified all child instances will be dumped.
- **--signals**: Dumps only signals (e.g. Verilog wires)
- **--variables**: Dumps only variables (e.g. Verilog registers)
- **--ports**: Dumps only ports
- **--parameters**: Dumps only parameters
- **--compact**: Dumps simulation results in compacted form

deposit <object-name> [=] <value>

Set the value of the given object unless it is forced or, in the case of registers, assigned.

- **-after <time-spec> [[<value> -after <time-spec>]...]**: Delay the assignment of the new value. Multiple values may be provided along with the time-specs
- **[-absolute]**: The given time is the time at which the assignment should occur
- **[-relative]**: The given time is a delay after which the assignment should occur
- **-repeat <time-spec>**: Repeat the assignment of the value after the specified time
- **-cancel <time-spec>**: Cancel the assignment of the value after the specified time
- **-release**: Release any existing force or procedural continuous assign on the object
- **-inertial**: Deposit value after an inertial delay
- **-transport**: Deposit value after a transport delay

describe <item-names>

For each item given, print a description of it

echo

Prints message to console log window

```
echo hello
```

exit

Exits the Tcl application

help [-all|-help|-h|<cmd_name>]

The command ***help*** with no options prints a list of the built-in simulator shell commands.

- **-all**: prints all the built-in and user registered commands
- **-help** or **-h**: prints the available options for the help option
- **<cmd_name>**: prints help information about the specified command

process

Show information on processes (behavioral blocks) that are currently executing or are scheduled to execute at the current simulation time

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

quit

Exits the Tcl application

run

Start/resume simulation of the model

- **-next**: Run one behavioral statement, stepping over any subprogram call
- **-return**: Run until the current subprogram (task, function or procedure) returns
- **-step**: Run one behavioral statement, stepping into subprogram calls
- **[-timepoint] <time-spec>**: Run until the given time is reached
- **-absolute**: The given time is an absolute simulation time
- **[-relative]**: The given time is relative to the current time
- **-no_source_text**: Avoids HDL source printing during stepping
- **-source_text <sibling_lines>**: Specify number of sibling lines to be printed around currently debugged statement.

scope

List source or declared objects for a scope, or set the debug scope

- **-describe [<scope-spec>]**: Describe items declared within the given scope, or if no scope is given then within the current debug scope
- **-names**: Show only the names of each declared item
- **[-set] [<scope-spec>]**: Set the current debug scope to the given scope, or if no scope name or other option is given then print the name of the current scope. The -set may be omitted.
- **-show**: Shows useful scope information: current debug scope, instances within the debug scope, and top-level modules in the currently loaded model
- **-tops**: Lists the names of the top level scopes in the currently loaded model

stop

Create or operate on a stop

- **-line <line-number>**: Stop when the given line is about to be executed are instances of the same module.
- **-file <file-name>**: Specifies which of the source files that make up
- **[-hitcount <hit-number>]**: Specifies stop hit count
- **-time <time-spec>**: Stop when the simulation reaches the given time
- **[-absolute]**: Time specification is absolute - the stop will be deleted after this time is reached
- **[-relative]**: Time specification is an interval - the stop will be persistent and will occur repetitively with the given interval
- **-object <object-names>**: Stop when given object changes value
- **[-value <value>]**: Specifies value condition to allow breakpoint hit
- **-delete <stop-names>**: Delete the named stops

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- **-disable <stop-names>**: Disable the named stops
- **-enable <stop-names>**: Enable the named stops
- **-show [<stop-names>]**: Show information on each named stop, or on all stops if no name is given
- **-help** Prints this message

time

Displays current simulation time

value [format] object_names

Print the current value of each named object using the last format seen before the object name on the command line (if none, a default format is used). Valid formats are: %c, %s, %b, %o, %h, %x, %d, %t, %v, %e, %f, %g. To revert to default format, use '%'

where

Displays the current location of simulation

Some VeriLogger Pro and Cadence Verilog XL commands:

Interpreted Verilog simulators such as VeriLogger Pro and VerilogXL can execute lines of Verilog behavioral code entered into the console window. These commands will not work with VeriLogger Extreme and other compiled simulators.

Generally, any behavioral statement used within an **initial** or **always** block can be entered into the console window. Statements that affect the project structurally, such as instantiating a model, are not allowed. All system tasks are accepted in the console window. Compiled code simulators can not do this because all code must be compiled before simulation begins.

Because all Verilog commands require a terminating semicolon, the semicolon must be entered in the console window. Below are some examples of useful interactive commands:

- For example:  would cause the simulator to execute five lines of code.
- To **continue** the simulation, type the period (**.**) character, or press the green **Run** button.
- To **step** to the next statement in the code, type the semicolon (**;**) character, or press the **Step Over** button.
- To **step-and-trace** (step to the next statement in the code and generate a trace message in the **verilog.log** file) type the comma (**,**) character, or press the **Step Into** button.
- To **display the current code-line** execution, (open an editor window and display the currently executing line of HDL code) type the colon (**:**) character, or press the **Goto** button (the magnifying glass).
- To **terminate** the simulation, type the **$finish;** command or press the red **STOP** button.
- **Displaying Variables:** Use the **$display(...);** system task to view a variable's current value. Make sure that the scope is correct. A common mistake is to view a trace, pause the simulation, and type **$display;** without realizing that the variable may not be in the current scope. In interactive mode, the current scope is set using the scope buttons or the **$scope** system task. By default, the scope is set to the top-level component, not the scope at the current execution line. For example, the following statement could be used to view the variable **ireg**:

```
$scope (top.cpu1.iunit);
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
$display (ireg);
// OR, this can be expressed as a single statement
$display (top.cpu1.iunit.ireg);
```

All the variables in a given scope can be displayed using the **$showvars** system task. **$showvars** also displays the information about when the variable was last modified, specifically, the simulation time, the file name, and the line number of the reference.

- **Changing Variables:** Use an assignment statement to change a variable's value.

```
ireg = 4 * bar;
```

- **Variable Watches (breakpoints):** Interactive statements can be used to stop the simulation when a particular variable, or combination of variables, changes. For example:

```
@(top.cpu1.iunit.ireg) $stop;
```

This code will continue the simulation until the variable changes. However, this statement will not necessarily be the first statement executed after the variable changes. Due to the non-determinacy of Verilog code execution, other statements scheduled to execute at the same time unit may execute before the **$stop** statement is performed.

- **Timed simulations:** A simulation can be set to run for a certain length of simulation time using a delay and the $stop directive. The following statement suspends and waits for 1000 simulation time units to pass. After 1000 time units, the simulation is stopped.

```
#1000 $stop;
```

2.9 Source Code Libraries

Verilog supports two methods for using libraries of HDL source code that is common between multiple designs: **source code libraries** and **compiled code libraries**. This section discusses the older, slower method using source code libraries, and the next section discusses how to create and use the faster compiled libraries.

When a Verilog simulator compiles the files listed in the compiler command line options and in the **User Source Files List**, it parses the files and gets a list of module names that are instantiated in the files. After the compiler finishes storing these files into the current 'destination library' (see 2.10 Compiled Libraries 47 for more information about the working library), the elaborator looks for the definitions of these modules, starting it's search in the destination library. If the definition is not found there, then the simulator next looks in the source code libraries (specified using the library search directories) to find a source code file with the same name as the module being searched for.

If a matching file is found, then it will compile the file and display the matched file in the project window under the **Source Code Library Files** folder. This folder will appear under the **Simulated Models** folder, but it only appears if matching files are found. This folder is a good place to look if you need to find out which source code library models are actually being instantiated in a given design.

Set Source Code Library Paths:

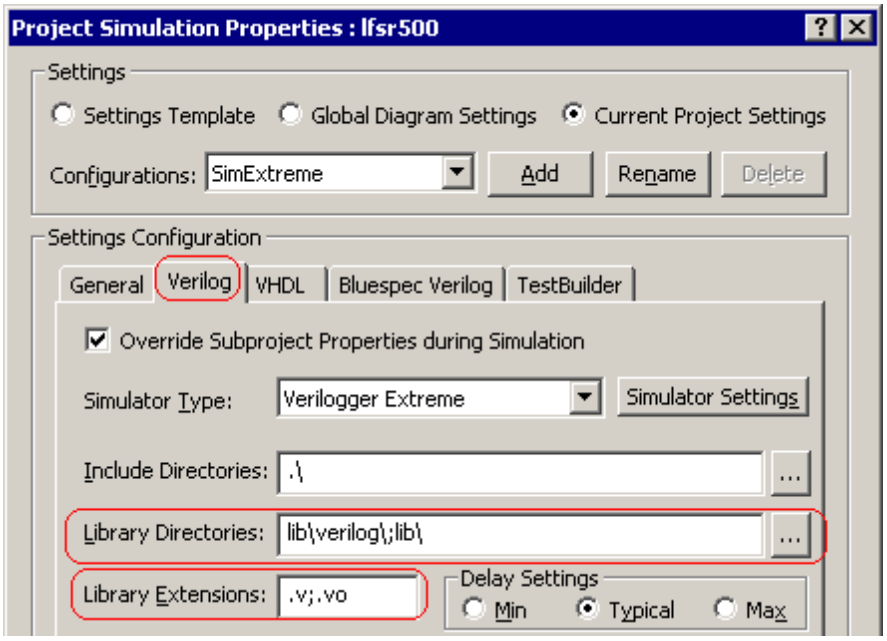
- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog.



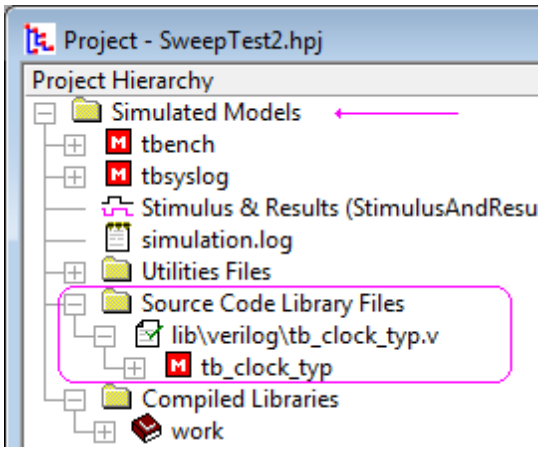
- Pick the ***Verilog*** language tab, then add the paths to your source code libraries to the **Library Directories** field.
- You may also need to add new file extensions to the **Library Extensions** field. Only library source code files with a file extension matching the extensions listing in this field will be matched against during library searches.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- For example, in the image shown below, the compiler will search the two source code library directories lib\verilog\ and lib\, and it will only match against source code filenamess in these directories that end in either .v or .vo.



- After the the simulation is built, you can check the **Source Code LIbrary Files** folder in the *Project* window to see which if any source code library files are being used by the simulation. In the example shown, a file called **tb_clock_typ.v** was found in the source code library **lib\verilog** and compiled to provide the module definition for a module named **tb_clock_typ**.



2.10 Compiled Libraries (Symbolic Libaries)

Most modern HDL simulators, including our simx simulator, compile HDL source files into one or more compiled libraries (referred to as symbolic libraries in the Verilog Language Reference Manual). By default, sources files will be compiled into a compiled library with the symbolic name of **work,** unless a different destination library is specified via the **--work <destination_library_name>** compiler option.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Once an HDL file has been compiled into a compiled library, the modules defined in that source file can be re-used across multiple designs without needing to recompile this source file again. For most users, this increase in compilation speed is the biggest advantage of using a compiler that supports compiled libraries. For example, if many of your simulations re-use primitives from the library source files of an FPGA/ASIC vendor, these files only need to be compiled once with compiled library support.

Cells and Snapshots

A compiled library contains cells and snapshots. Cells represent the definitions for objects such as modules and User-Defined Primitives (UDPs) that are created when source files are compiled into a library. Snapshots are created during simulation elaboration and represent a fully built “simulation” that can be executed.

Within a library, cell and snapshot names must be unique and any attempt to compile a cell into a library that already contains a cell of that name will cause the original cell to be overwritten. However, cells and snapshots of the same name can exist in different libraries.

Cell Instance Resolution During Compilation and Elaboration

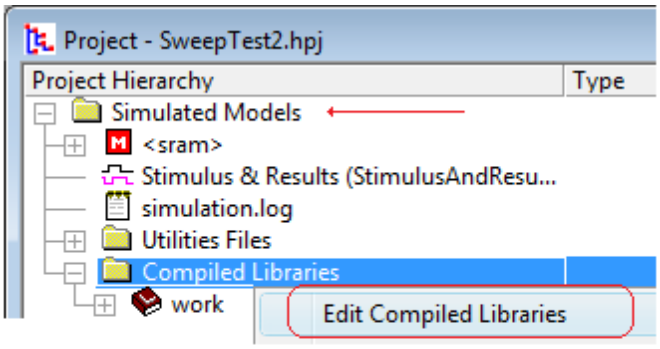
When module instances are instantiated inside a user source file, the module definitions for these instances must be found by searching through your symbolic libraries during either the compilation or elaboration phase. The compiler and elaborator search for matching module definitions in the following order:

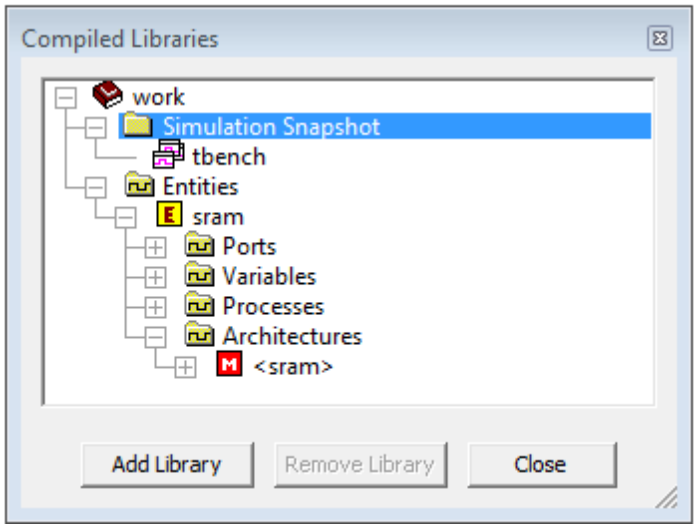
1. First, the current destination library is searched. The destination library is the compiled library to which all cells currently being compiled are being stored. The **--work libname** option can be used to set the destination library. If this option is not set, the default library known as **work** will be used as the destination library.
2. Next, any source code libraries are searched. The location and search order for source code libraries is specified using one or more -y options. For more information about using these libraries, see Section 2.9 Source Code Libraries 46. Source code libraries represent an older Verilog technology for storing frequently used module definitions in source code form rather than in a compiled form, so we recommend using compiled libraries instead. Compiled libraries are faster than source code libraries as the modules only need to be compiled once with any given version of the simulator.
3. Finally, any compiled libraries are searched. Use one or more -L options to specify the symbolic names of compiled libraries to be searched. The compiler/elaborator will map these symbolic names to the actual physical location of the compiled library using the library mappings specified in the scd.lib file. The compiled libraries will be searched in the order they are specified using the -L option (with the special exception of the destination library, which as previously stated, is always searched first).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Creating and Viewing Compiled Libraries using BugHunter

- Under the Simulated Models folder, right click on the Compiled Libraries folder and choose Edit Compiled Libraries from the context menu to open the Compiled Libraries dialog where you can view the contents of existing compiled libraries referenced by the project and add new libraries.
- To view an existing library not referenced by the project or to create a new library, press the Add Library button to open another dialog and fill in the library's symbolic name and the physical path of the library.
- To delete a library, select the library and press the Remove Library button.
- You can also use the **simxlib** command-line tool to create and delete compiled libraries. See Section 5.13 Simxlib: Compiled Library Utility 101 for more details.

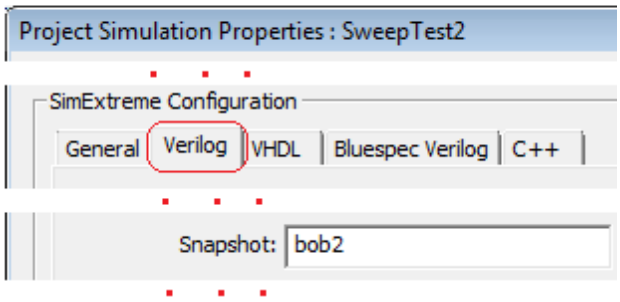




Naming and Running Snapshots (Built Simulations) Using BugHunter

- To name a snapshot, press the **Project Simulation Properties** button on the button bar to open a dialog of the same name.
- In the **Snapshot** box, type in the name of the snapshot or pass it as a compiler command-line option. If no snapshot name is specified, then the name of the first top-level module will be used as the default snapshot name.

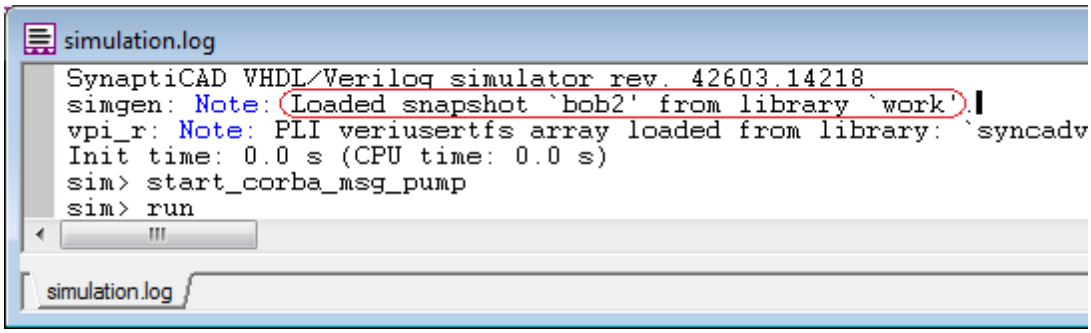




- When you press the yellow Build button, a snapshot is created and stored in the destination library.
- When you press any of the green Run buttons, the named snapshot will loaded from the destination library and run.
- You can tell which snapshot was built or ran by looking at Notes in the **simulation.log** file. The image below shows that simulator loaded and ran a simulation snapshot called "bob2" from the

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

library called "work".



Populating a Compiled Library

When simx compiles source code files, the compiled models are stored to the current destination library specified using the --work option. If no --work option is passed to simx, it will store the compiled models in a default library called **work**.

2.11 Using VPI applications to interface to the simulator

VeriLogger Extreme supports VPI (also called PLI 2.0). VPI is a C-based interface for communicating with Verilog simulators. Users create C/C++-based VPI applications that will be loaded by the Verilog simulator via dynamic linking (a dynamic link library(.dll) on Windows or a shared library(.so) on Unix). VeriLogger also supports the older PLI 1.0 standard (tf/acc functions).

Overview of VPI Example application

VeriLogger ships with an example VPI application that you can build and run under the **SynaptiCAD/vpi_test** directory to test out VPI functionality and learn how to use VPI function calls.

This example, vpi_test, is a VPI application that registers several user-defined tasks that can be called from Verilog source code. The main purpose of these tasks is to test the VPI functionality of a simulator and demonstrate the usage of VPI C calls. The code for registering the tasks is located in vpi_dll.c. The most important of these tasks is:

```
$traverse_top_modules
```

which will dump information about all the design objects in a simulation to the ***simulation log***. For example, to dump the vpi structure of a verilog design, add these lines to one of your Verilog modules to call this function at the start of your simulation run:

```
initial
  $traverse_top_modules;
```

Selecting an appropriate C/C++ compiler to compile the VPI application

VeriLogger Extreme ships with two versions of the simulator: a 32-bit simulator called simx32 and a 64-bit simulator called simx64. You must use an appropriate version of your C/C++ compiler to build a compatible PLI application (i.e. a 32bit PLI application for simx32 or a 64bit PLI application for simx64).

Basic Steps for creating and running the sample VPI application

- For Unix, use a C++ compiler like gcc. In the **SynaptiCAD/vpi_test** directory, there is a **Makefile** that can be used to build the sample VPI application. Edit the Makefile and change the SYNCAD_VPI_DIR variable to point to the root of your SynaptiCAD installation (e.g. /usr/local/syncad).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Run "make" to generate the library **libvpitest.so.**
- If ***libvpitest.so*** is in a different directory, you can specify an absolute or relative path in the **+loadvpi** argument, or you can add the path to *libvpitest.so* to your **LD_LIBRARY_PATH** environment variable. When compiling your own PLI 2.0 applications, if your PLI application links against other shared libraries, make sure the operating system can find them by adding the required directories to the **LD_LIBRARY_PATH** environment variable.

- For Windows, use Microsoft Visual Studio to open one the **vpitest_vc*.sln** files (use the 71 for Visual Studio 2003 and use 9 for Visual Studio 2005/2008) located in the **SynaptiCAD/vpi_test** directory. If you use a later version of MS Visual Studio, you will be prompted to convert the solution to the later version's project format. This will generate *vpitest.dll* to the **SynaptiCAD\bin** directory. If you have installed SynaptiCAD in a "read-only" directory, you will need to specify an alternative destination for vpitest.dll and modify the next step accordingly to point to this dll.
  - Build your VPI application using Visual Studio.
- Inside your Verilog source code, you can add calls to tasks defined inside your VPI application. For example, vpitest.dll registers several user-defined tasks that can be called from Verilog source code. The main purpose of these tasks is to test the VPI functionality of a simulator and demonstrate the usage of VPI C calls. For this example, add the following code to one of your Verilog modules (or use the included example file **test.v** which already contains this call):

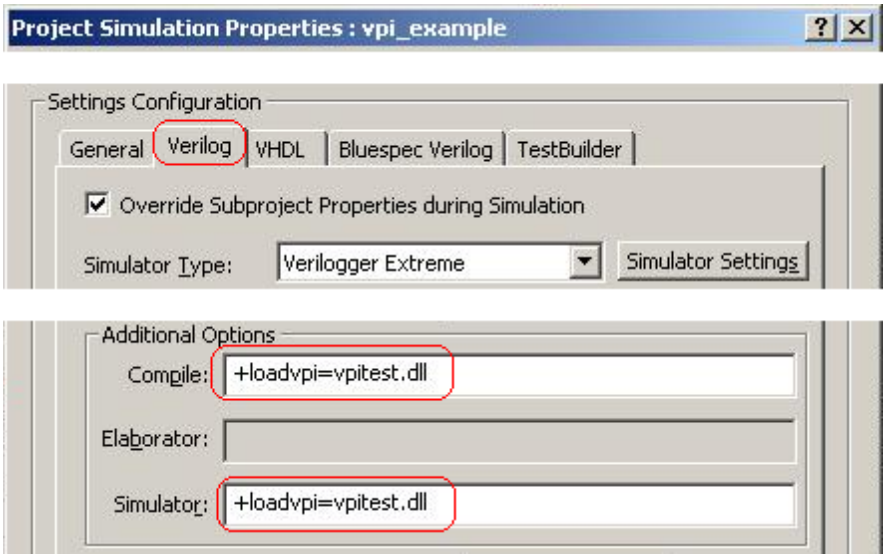
```
initial
  $traverse_top_modules;
```

- Tell the simulator to load the VPI application with the **+loadvpi** simulation option using one of the two methods below:
  - From the command line, enter a command like the following, where test.v is the Verilog source that calls the ***traverse_top_modules*** task defined by the vpitest.dll application.



  - From the BugHunter GUI, choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog. Under the ***Verilog*** tab, add the command option to both the **Compile** and the **Simulator** options boxes.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



Note: When building, you may see the following warnings:

- ***'vpiHandle' differs in levels of indirection from 'void *'***
- ***'vpiHandle64' differs in levels of indirection from 'void *'***

These warnings are benign and can safely be ignored.

Enabling PLI/VPI access to object values (e.g. reg and wire values)

When **simx** is run under the BugHunter GUI, the **+linedebug** command line option is passed to the simulator. This option allows PLI applications to read and write the values of regs and wires (the GUI needs this option for it's debug capabilities also). However, when the simulator is run standalone from the command line, you will need to pass this option if your PLI application uses functions that read or write these objects. If this option is not passed and your application calls such a function, you will get a warning message such as:

pli_r: Warning 95002 ./myfile.v(26): Object of type vpiIntegerVar does not have a value.

Include files for VPI, ACC, and TF Functions

The header files to include in your PLI application are located in your SynaptiCAD installation directory under the subdirectory: **simxkernel\src\vpi\rh** .

- To use vpi functions in your PLI application, include the **vpi_user.h** file located in this directory.
- To use tf functions, include the **veriuser.h** file.
- To use acc functions, include the **acc_user.h** file.

Some SynaptiCAD specific functions can also be used by including these files: **acc_user_syncad.h** and **vpi_user_syncad.h**.

2.12 Compiling Command-Line Based Designs with BugHunter

If you have a design that is normally compiled using batch scripts that launch command-line simulation tools, you can easily convert such designs to compile and run under BugHunter.

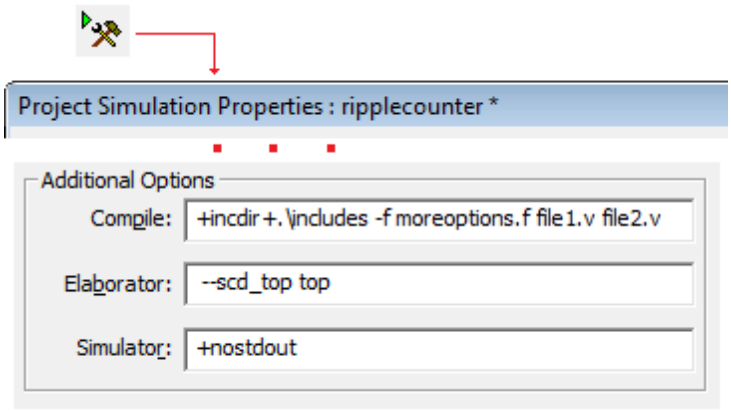
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Quickly converting a batch script compiled design to a BugHunter project

For example, assume you have a batch script that performs the following commands to build and run a Verilog design using our command line simulation tools:

```
simx +incdir+.\includes -f moreoptions.f file1.v file2.v --scd_top top
simxloader +nostdout
```

To compile and run this design using BugHunter, you only need to set the appropriate Additional Options fields in the ***Verilog*** tab of the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog:



Note that any elaborator options passed in the Compile edit box will automatically be transferred to the elaborator during a Build operation by BugHunter, so the "--scd_top top" string could have been placed in the **Compiler** edit box instead of the **Elaborator** edit box. For clarity, however, we recommend that known elaborator options should be placed in the **Elaborator** edit box.

Using environment variable substitution in command-line options

It is sometime useful to use environment variable substitution when specifying paths in your command-line options. For example, a project may be used across multiple computers, and some of the files may be in different locations on each computer. Instead of creating two different copies of the project, you can define environment variables for these varying paths and use variable substitution in the command-line options string.

For example, let's say the **.\includes** directory from the previous example above is stored on the C: drive of computer A and the D: drive of computer B. On each computer we can define an environment variable, INCDIR, that points to the appropriate location:

```
On computer A: set INCDIR=c:\includes
On computer B: set INCDIR=d:\includes
```

Next, change the **Compiler** edit box contents to use environment variable substitution:

```
+incdir+$(INCDIR) -f moreoptions.f file1.v file2.v --scd_top top
```

The $() indicates that environment variable substitution should be performed on the string "INCDIR", replacing this string with either "c:\includes" or "d:\includes" depending on which machine the project is being built.

Converting a batch script for a 3rd party simulator without a separate elaboration phase

Some simulators, such as Cadence's Incisive simulator and SynaptiCAD's simx, allow designs to be compiled, elaborated, and ran in three separate steps. For example, a batch file to compile and run the design above using ncsim might look like:

```
ncverilog +incdir+.\includes -f moreoptions.f file1.v file2.v
ncelab top
ncsim +nostdout
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

To compile such a design using the BugHunter GUI with a two phase simulator in which Compile and Elaboration is performed in one step, just pass both the compile and elaboration phase options in the Compile edit box.

Note that BugHunter can automatically translate the ncsim options to simx options if you first pass the --nc_options command to set the options translation mode (see Section 12:3 SimSwapper Translation Modes 185). For example,

```
--nc_options +incdir+.\includes -f moreoptions.f file1.v.file2.v
```

2.13 Project Window Overview

The Project window is used to control the files that get simulated and to display debugging information about a design during simulation. This section highlights some of the main topics and provides links where these topics are covered in more detail.

Setting up a Project

- Create a project and learn the basic navigation features of the tree (Step 3: Create a Project 13)
- Add source code files to a project (Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project 14)
- Set or change the model under test to be instantiated inside an auto-generated test bench (Step 5: Draw a Test Bench (optional) 16)
- Build a project and set the top level components to simulate (Step 6: Build the Project and Set the top 18)
- Force a source code file to compile to a destination library (2.2 Build and Simulate 29)
- Setting a new Stimulus and Results File and archiving off that file and the loge file (3.1 Stimulus and Results Diagram 56)

Simulation and Debugging Features

- Add watch signals to a diagram (2.3 Watching Signal and Component Waveforms 32)
- Add condition breakpoints to break on signal changes (2.4 Breakpoints 34)
- View and edit signal state values (2.5 Inspect And Edit Values 36)
- View driver tree for a signal to analyze design data flow (2.6 Find Drivers 39)
- Set the simulator's interactive scope by right clicking on an instance (4.3 Navigating Code with the Project Window 73)

Navigating and Finding things within the Project Window

- View source code library files found via library search paths (2.9 Source Code Libraries 46)
- View compiled libraries (2.10 Compiled Libraries (Symbolic Libraries) 47)
- View all source code files **included** by a compiled source code file (Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project 14)
- Find source code declarations by double clicking (4.3 Navigating Code with the Project Window 73)
- Use code in an editor window to jump to the object in the Project Window (4.3 Navigating Code with the Project Window 73)
- Search for items in the Project tree (4.5 Searching in the Project Window 78)

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

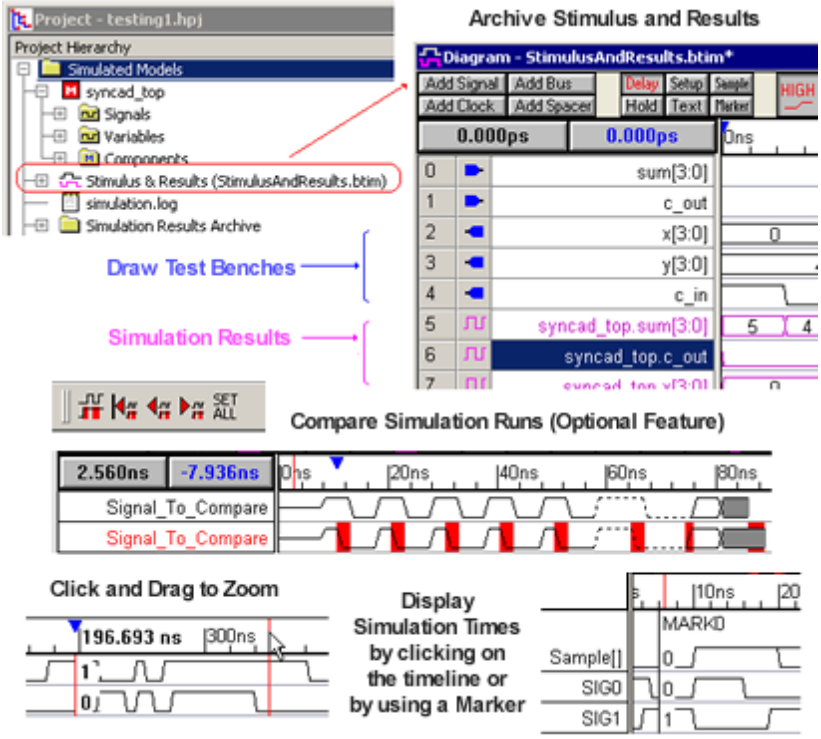
Lesser Known Features

- Add source code to instantiate a component in a source code editor window (4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing 75)
- Translate a single VHDL file to Verilog (or vice versa). This feature requires a license for the V2V Verilog/VHDL translator (9.1 Graphical Interface for Translation 150)
- Show Verilog objects in a schematic window. This features requires a license for the Gates-On-The-Fly Verilog netlist editor (11.2 Launching the Schematic window 180)
- Toggle Library Setting for user source files. Library files are compiled with the -v option (5.4 Simx Commonly used Command Line Options 90)
- Dump a component's ports to a timing diagram as Drive (stimulus) signals instead of as Watch signals (4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing 75)

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 3: Waveforms and Test Bench Generation

BugHunter uses the current *Stimulus and Results* diagram to to graphically generate stimulus vectors for the simulation and to display the simulation watch signals that capture simulation waveform data. The *Stimulus and Results* diagrams can be archived to separate directories and used for regression testing. If your top-level component has input ports, BugHunter can take the drawn waveforms in the stimulus and results file and create a stimulus component and a wrapper component that hooks the stimulus up to the model under test. This makes it very fast to test individual models and small designs.



If you have purchased the Waveform Comparison Option for BugHunter, then you can perform automated comparisons between different Stimulus and Results diagrams. Also, if you have purchased the Reactive Test Bench Generation option, you can create test benches that check the simulation output and create pass/fail logs.

If your simulations are big enough to start slowing down because of the memory limitations of your system, there are several methods for reducing the memory requirements for a simulation. The first method is to dump the waveform data to a BTIM or VCD waveform file and turn off the graphical display of waveform data during simulation. After the simulation completes, you can load in the waveform file and view it graphically. Also, you can eliminate the overhead from the graphical debugger by running Verilog simulations from the command line as described in Chapter 5: VeriLogger Command Line Tools 87.

3.1 Stimulus and Results Diagram

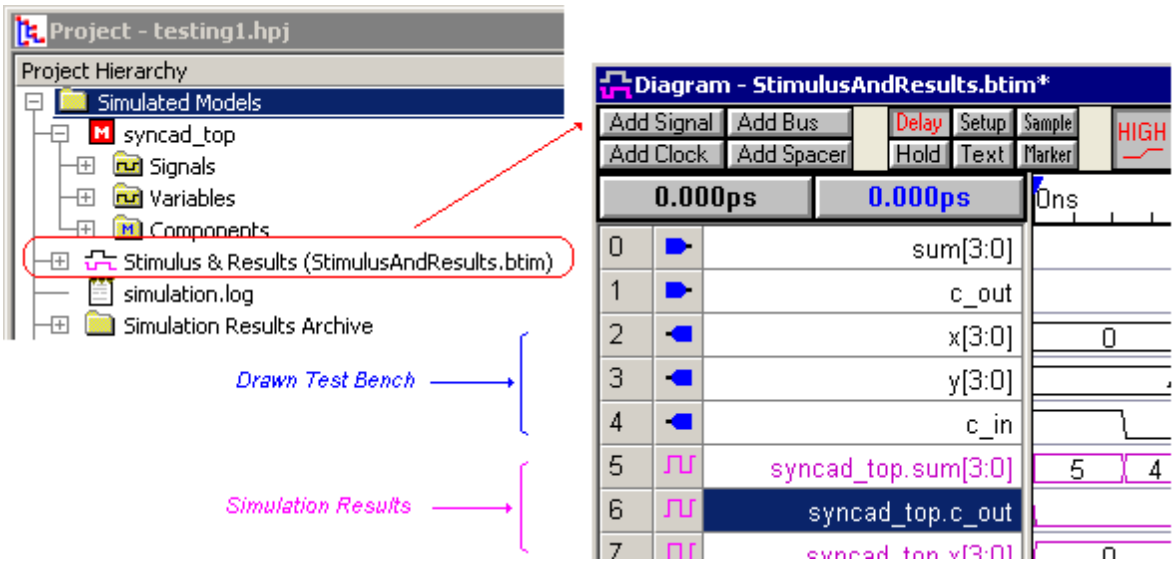
The *Stimulus and Results* diagram lists the watched signals for the simulation and displays the waveform results for these signals after simulation. Multiple stimulus and results diagrams can be used so that each diagram defines different sets of watched signals and different unit-level test benches. Each diagram can be used to test a different aspect of your design. Only one stimulus and

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

results diagram can be active at a given time; the non-active diagrams can be stored in the the **Simulation Results Archive** folder for easy access and retrieval.

The Current Stimulus & Results Diagram:

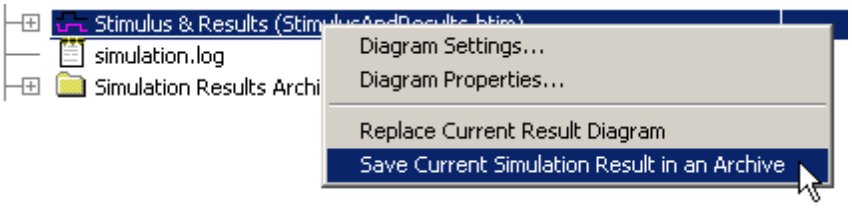
The *Project* window ***Stimulus & Results*** entry defines the current stimulus and results diagram. The default name is StimulusAndResults.btim, but any valid *.btim file can be used (as shown below). The simulation results are displayed on the purple **watched** signals which are set using the process described in Section 2.3 Watching Signal and Component Waveforms 32. This diagram is also the place where you can draw the stimulus waveforms to create unit-level test benches as described in Section 3.2: Drawing Waveforms for Stimulus Generation 59.



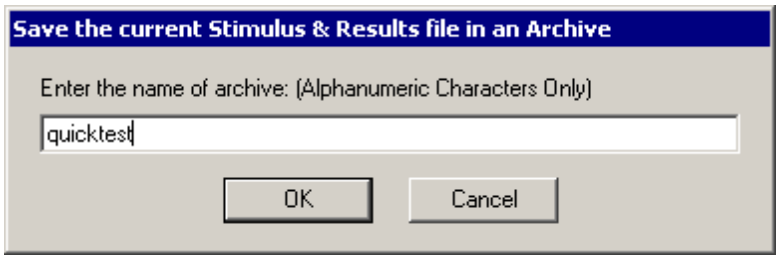
Archiving a Stimulus & Results Diagram:

Once you have created a stimulus and results diagram that you want to keep for regression testing, you can save it to a ***Stimulus and Results Archive*** folder.

- Right click on the *Stimulus & Results* folder and select the **Save Current Result Diagram in an Archive** from the context menu. This will open *the Save the current Stimulus & Results file in an Archive* dialog.

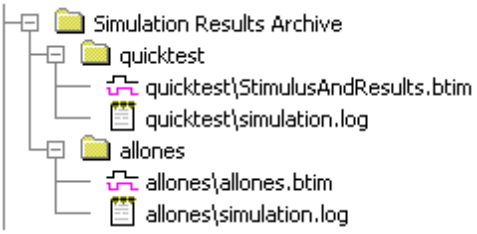


- Enter the name of the archive in the edit box. This will become the name of the directory that the archived files are saved in.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

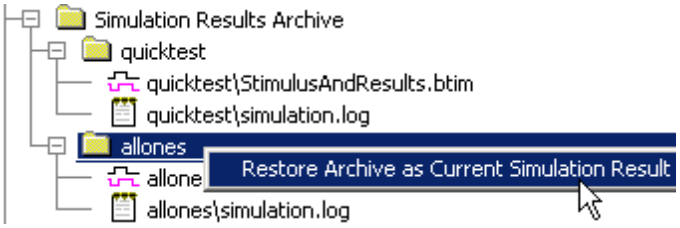
- Click **OK** to copy the *Stimulus &* Results diagram and simulation log file to the new directory and close the dialog. You may be asked to save the diagram and log file before they are archived.



Switching in different archived Stimulus & Results Diagrams:

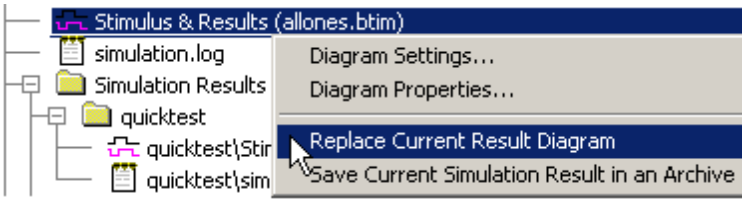
There are several ways to set a new *Stimulus & Results* diagram:

- Under the ***Simulation Results Archive*** folder, right click on an archive folder and choose **Restore Archive as Current Simulation Result** from the context menu. This option will copy the archived diagram and log file back the main Project directory.



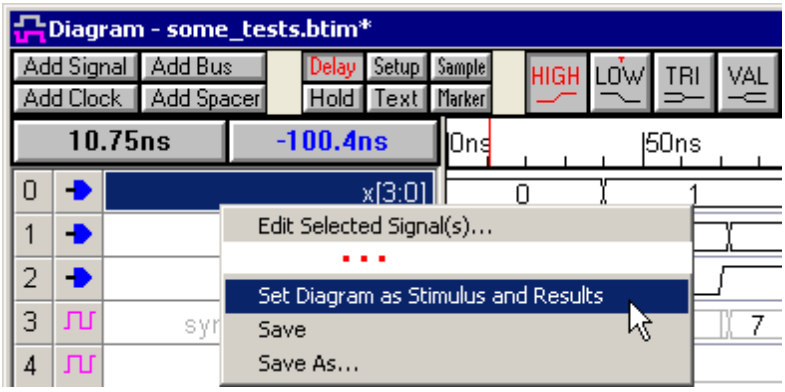
OR

- Right click on the ***Stimulus & Results*** folder and choose **Replace Current Result Diagram** from the context menu. This opens a file dialog that lets you choose a timing diagram.



OR

- Open a timing diagram and right click in the label window and choose **Set Diagram as Stimulus and Results** from the context menu.



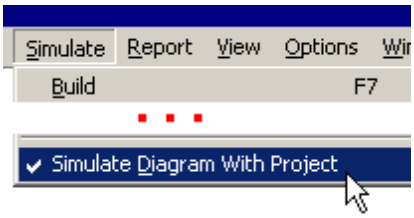
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

3.2 Drawing Waveforms for Stimulus Generation

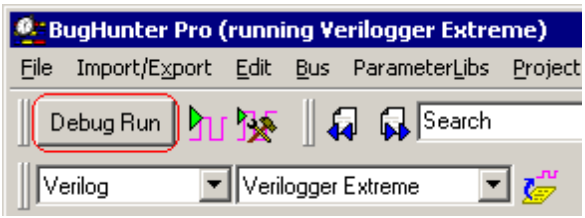
BugHunter can generate stimulus code for signals drawn in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram and use that code as inputs to the project. At the beginning of a compile, BugHunter will take the drawn waveforms and create a stimulus component. It will also create a top-level component that will hook up the stimulus component to your design models. This section covers how to get the timing diagram and test bench to hook-up properly. Instructions for drawing waveforms are in the Timing Diagram Editor Manual Chapter 1: Signals, but if you watch the waveform buttons and the cursor shape as you left click in the waveform window you can probably figure it out.

Setting up BugHunter to Use Drawn Test Benches:

- Verify that the **Simulate > Simulate Diagram With Project** menu item is checked. This option lets BugHunter create the stimulus and wrapper components.



- Make sure the simulation mode is set to **Debug Run**, rather than ***Auto Run***, so that the simulator does not re-simulate while you are drawing.

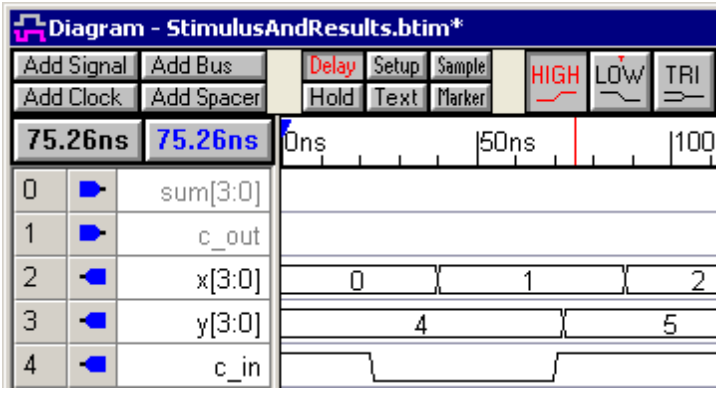


- Also, verify that the testbench generation language in the drop-down list box beside the Debug Run button is correct.

The basic steps for creating a stimulus test bench are:

- Press the **Parse MUT** button  to populate the *Stimulus and Results* diagram with the MUT's input and output ports. By default, BugHunter will automatically choose a likely candidate for the model under test, but you can specify one or more models as models under test (see Section 1.5 Draw a Test Bench 16 for more information on manually setting the models under test).

- Draw waveforms on the test bench output signals with the icons pointing to the left. These are inputs to the models under test.
- The inputs to the test bench are marked with icons pointing to the right. They will be grey, unless you have the **Reactive Test Bench** option. When you simulate, they will turn purple and show the results of the models under test.



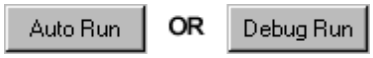
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- If you have the **Reactive Test Bench** option, then the inputs will be black and you can draw expected response from the MUTs (which will draw in blue). See the Reactive Test Bench Manual for these instructions.
- Run a Simulation as discussed in Section 2.2 Build and Simulate 29.



Unit Level testing (automatic simulations):

- After you have sketched most of the testbench, press the **Debug Run** button to change it to **Auto Run**. Now simulations are automatically rerun each time you change the drawn waveforms.



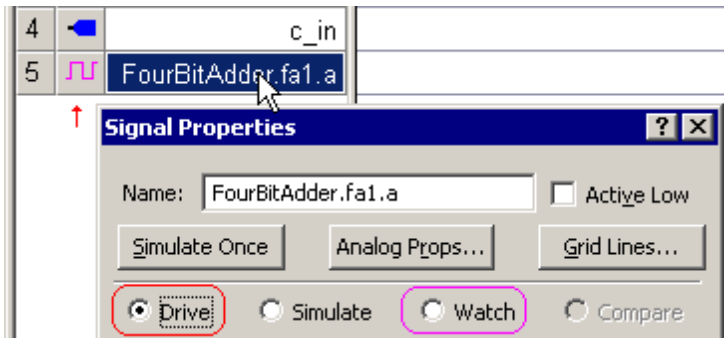
Stimulus for Internal Signals:

BugHunter can generate stimulus for signal nodes internal to the models under test (Verilog only). All you need to do is add the internal signal's name to the *Stimulus and Results* diagram using the full Hierarchical name and draw the waveforms. An easy way to add the signal is to:

- Find the internal signal in the Project window ***Simulated Models*** tree, then right click and choose the **Watch** menu to add the signal to the diagram window.



- Double click on the signal in the diagram window to open the *Signal Properties* dialog.
- Press the **Drive** button (clearing the watch type). Press **OK** to close the dialog.
- Now you can draw on the signal. The purple waveform icon means that it is an internal signal.

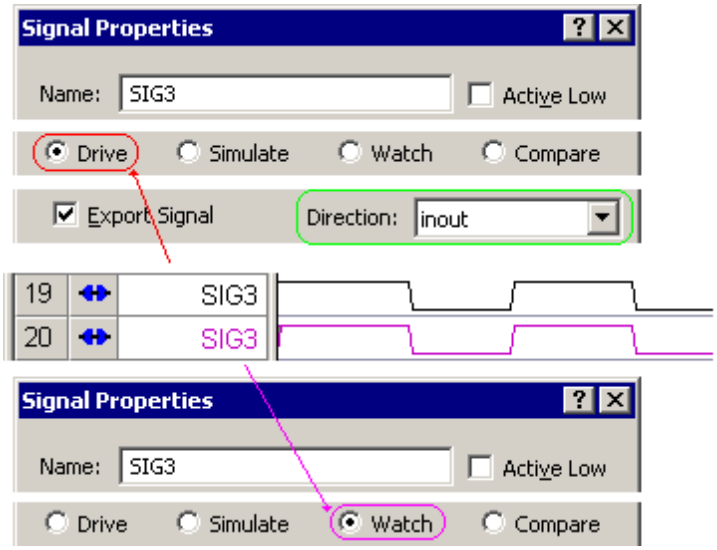


Stimulus for Inout Signals:

BugHunter can graphically generate stimulus for inout ports and simultaneously watch the port's simulated output using another signal with the same name and set one to drive and one to watch.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Add two signals with the same full hierarchical name and a direction of **inout**.
- Double click on one signal and make it a **Drive** signal to generate stimulus for the port. Then draw on it to set the test bench stimulus values. Remember to draw tri-state values on the drive signal when the testbench should not be driving the inout port.
- Double click on the other signal and select the **Watch** radio button. This signal will capture the waveform state changes when the simulation is run.

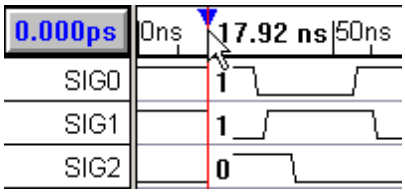


3.3 Zooming, Scrolling, Measuring, and Searching

The *Diagram* window in BugHunter is the same timing diagram editor that is the basis of SynaptiCAD's WaveFormer Pro and Timing Diagrammer Pro products. Because of this, BugHunter users have access to many of the timing diagram editor drawing features. Some features of the Timing Diagram editor such as Timing Diagram Analysis, Reactive Test Bench Generation, and GigaWave require optional feature licenses. The timing diagram editor is described in the Timing Diagram Editors manual on-line help. There are several features that are particularly useful for viewing lengthy simulated signals. We have listed them here for your convenience.

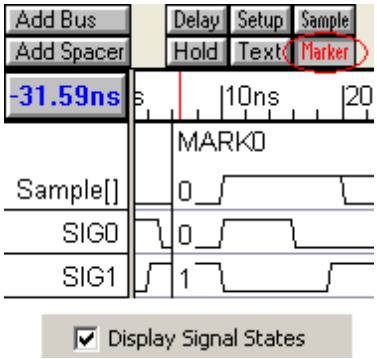
Display Signal States by clicking in the time line

- Click in the timeline in the *Diagram* window to drop a temporary marker line that displays the numerical state of each signal.



Display Signal States using Markers

- Select the **Marker** button, then right click in the timing diagram to add a Marker. Hovering over a marker will show the state values of the signals at that time. To disable this feature, uncheck the **Popup Display Signal States for Markers** checkbox option in the *Drawing Preferences* dialog.
- To permanently display the state values beside a marker, double click on the marker and check the **Display Signal**



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

States checkbox in the *Marker Properties* dialog.

Measuring Times

- The **Time Button**, with the black writing, displays the current position of the mouse cursor in the *Diagram* window. The **Delta Button**, with the blue writing, displays the difference between the mouse cursor and the delta mark (an upside-down, blue triangle) on the timeline above the *Diagram* window.

- To measure, left click on an edge (to select it and also move the delta mark), then move the mouse over another edge. The Delta button will display the difference between the mouse position and the blue mark.

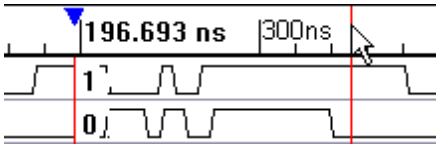


Zooming in the Diagram window

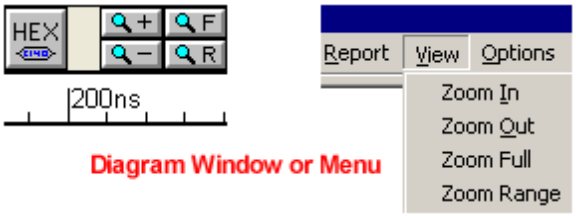
- To zoom in and out quickly, hold down the **<Shift>** key while using the **scroll wheel** on your mouse.

<Shift> and mouse **scroll wheel**

- To zoom in over a visible section, drag and drop inside the **Time Line.**



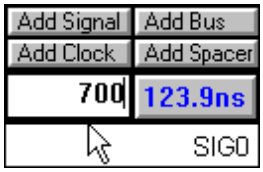
- The zoom buttons are located on the diagram window button bar or under the **View** menu.
- The **zoom in** (+) and **zoom out** (-) center the zoom on the selected item, the blue delta mark, or the center of the diagram in that order.



- The **zoom full** (F) displays the entire timing diagram on the screen.
- The **zoom range** (R) opens a dialog that lets you specify the starting and ending times for the zoom.

Scrolling to a specific time or offset position:

- Press on either the **Time** or the **Delta** button to open an edit box, and type in a time. The Time button (black) causes the diagram window to scroll to that exact time. The Delta button (blue) causes the diagram window to scroll that amount from its current position.



Search for a specific signal name, parameter name or string:

- Select one of the child windows in the program, then type into the



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Search box on the main window bar.

- If the Diagram window is selected, then it will search for signal names.
- If a waveform edge is selected in Waveform window, then it will search for a signal value that matches the search string. The search will begin with the signal and edge that is selected and continue from left to right and down the page until a match is found.
- If the Parameter window is selected, then it will search for parameter names.

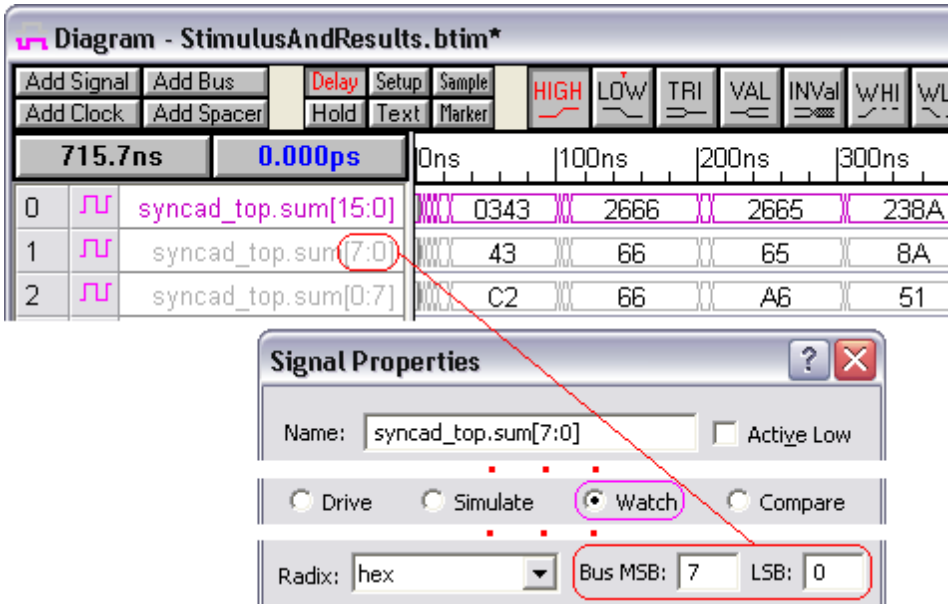
3.4 Bit-Slicing a Watched Signal

After a signal has been simulated, that signal or another signal can display a bit-sliced portion of the signal by changing the MSB and LSB settings. You can also reverse the bits of the slice, by reversing the MSB and LSB. For drawn signals, bit-slices can be displayed by using the Waveform Library feature.

Bit-Slicing a Simulated Signal

Bit Slicing can be done on the original simulated signal without losing data, or on a copy of the original signal. Below we are working with two copies of the original signal so that it is easier to compare the bit-slices with the original signal.

- Either run a simulation or load a previously archived ***Stimulus & Results*** diagram file. For this technique to work the signal must be of type **watch** or **simulate**.
- If you want the bit-slice to be shown on a different signal than the original signal, copy and paste the signal by selecting the signal name and pressing the **CTRL-C** then the **CTRL-V** keys.
- Double click on the signal to be sliced, and set the MSB and LSB to set the slice range.



- The bits can be reversed by making the MSB smaller than the LSB. In the above diagram the [7:0] slice has a segment that is 'h43 ('b0100 0011), and the [0:7] slice has a segment that is 'hC2 ('b1100 0010).

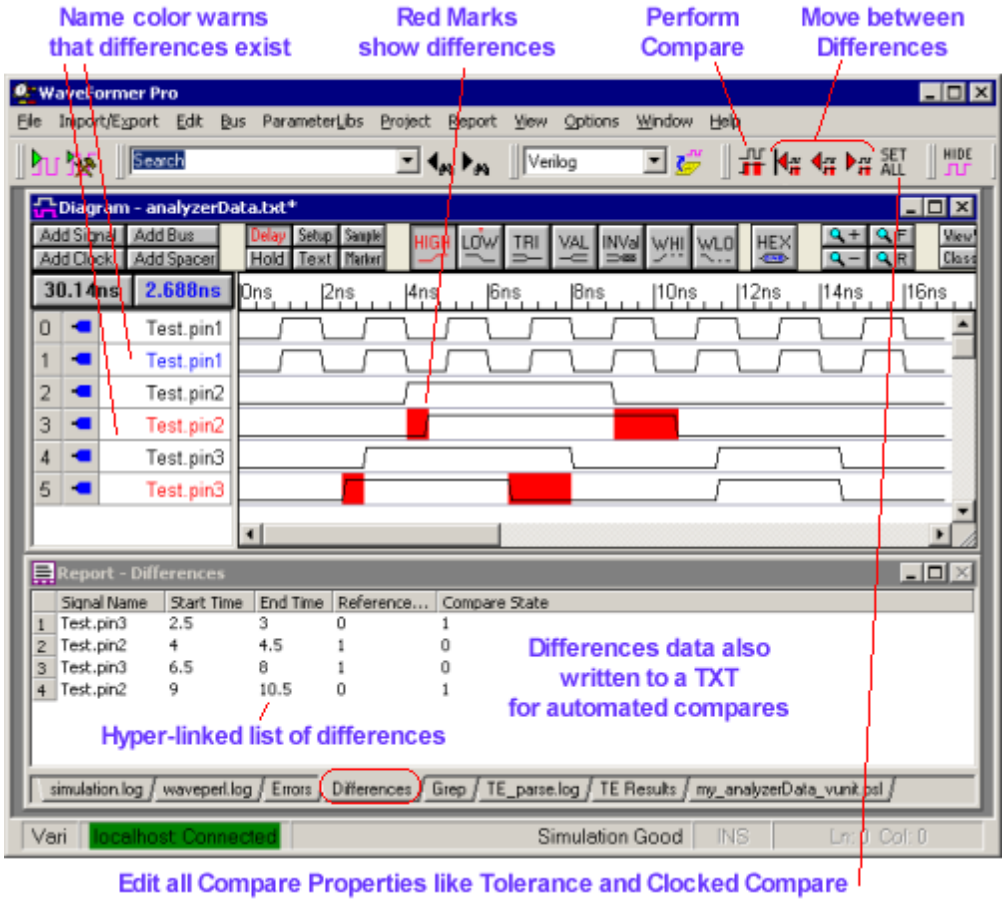
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Bit Slicing a Drawn Signal (non-simulated signal)

If a signal is not part of a simulation (of type **drive** instead of **watch**) then you cannot use the above technique to bit-slice it. This is because a bit-slice operation requires two MSB/LSB ranges: the actual range and the bit-slice range, but a regular signal only has one MSB/LSB range. When you bit-slice a simulated signal, the simulator sets the actual size of the signal when the simulation is performed (and the diagram remembers it from that point onwards) and the user-editable MSB/LSB sets the bit-slice range. However, you can bit-slice a non-simulated signal by creating an additional signal and checking the **Use Waveform from Library** check box in the *Signals Properties* dialog. Set the Library signal to the original signal to be sliced, and then specify the bit-slice MSB and LSB on the new signal. This technique is covered in **Section 1.8: Referencing Waveforms from Libraries** in the ***Timing Diagram Editors*** manual.

3.5 Waveform Comparisons (Optional Features)

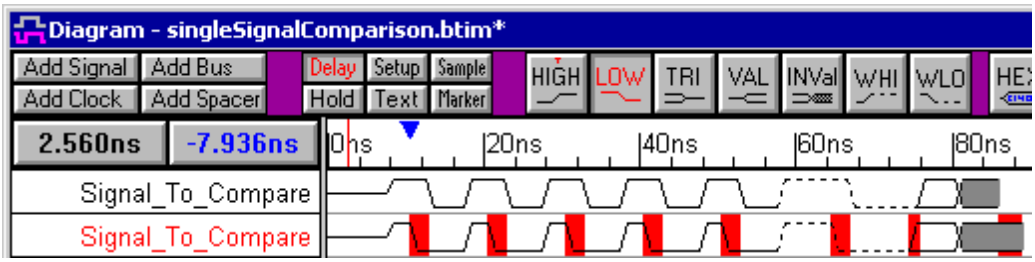
If you have purchased the Waveform Comparison option, then VeriLogger can graphically display the differences between compared waveforms for two timing diagrams (like two different simulation runs) or between individual signals. The specific regions where waveforms differ will turn red when the two waveforms are compared. By using the navigation buttons on the compare toolbar, you will be able to jump to the first difference and browse to each subsequent difference. When comparing two waveforms, the signal names must match. The full compare instructions are located in the Timing Diagram Editor Manual Chapter 9: Compare and Transaction Tracker but below are some quick tips that can get you started.



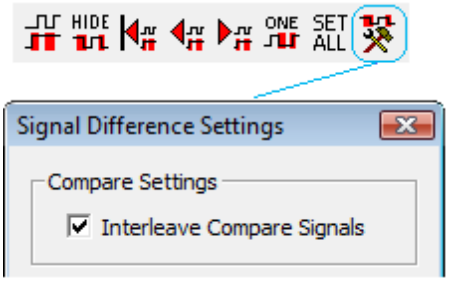
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Comparing whole timing diagrams or simulation files:

- Run a simulation to generate a *Stimulus and Results* diagram, or load the first timing diagram with the **File > Open Timing Diagram...** menu or double click on an archived *Stimulus and Results* to open a diagram.
- Next, load the second timing diagram using the **File > Compare Timing Diagram...** menu. This second file must be a timing diagram file with a btim extension, so you may need to first import this file normally and save it as a btim file prior to performing the comparison. You can also load an archived *Stimulus and Results* diagram, which is located in a subdirectory of the Project directory.
- Closing the File Compare dialog (1) loads the second set of signals into the first timing diagram, (2) sets their signal type to **compare**, and (3) performs a comparison between any two signals that have ***matching names***.



- Normally the compare signals are ***interleaved***, that is arranged so that they appear directly below the original signal. However, if you uncheck the **Interleave Compare Signals** setting in the *Signal Difference Settings* dialog, the compare signals will be displayed as a group below all of the original signals. Press the **Signals Difference Settings** button to open the dialog to change this option.

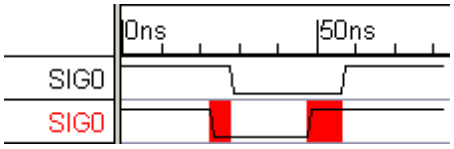


The Compare Display and moving to comparisons:

- If there are no differences within the tolerance range, then the compare signal will have a **blue** name and the waveform will be all black.



- If there are differences, then the compare signal will have a **red** name and the waveform will have red highlighted regions showing the differences

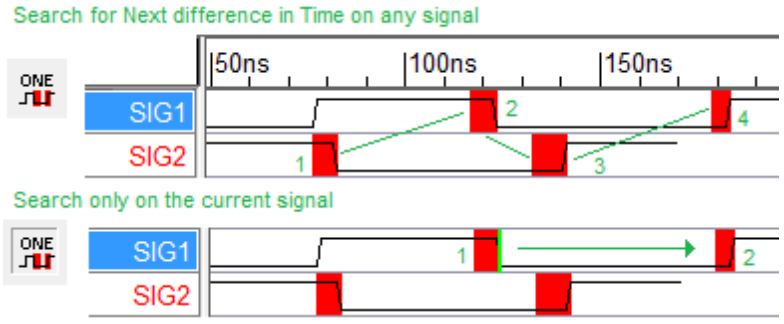


- The arrow buttons on the compare tool bar move between the next and previous differences.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- The **One** button determines how the next and previous searches are done. Normally searches find the next difference in time on any signal. If the **One** button is depressed, then the searches will only be done on the current signal.

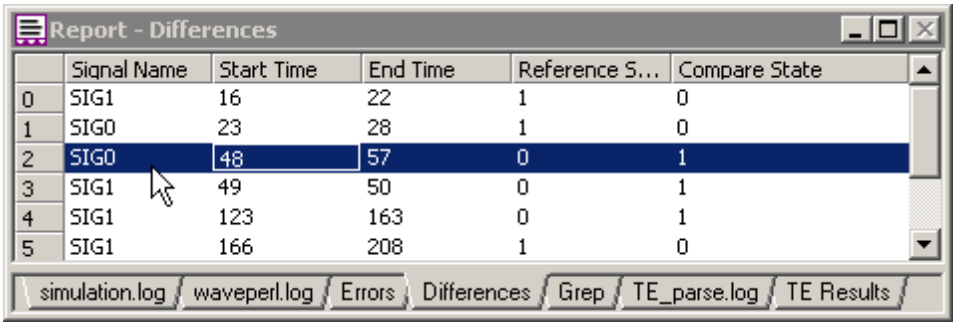


- The **Hide** button will hide any signal pairs that do not have any waveform differences. Once signals are hidden, the **View > Show and Hide Signals** menu can be used to re-show the hidden signals.



Text Displays of the Differences:

- The differences are also listed in the Report Window **Differences** tab. Double clicking will take you to the difference.



- The differences data is also written to a written to a tab-delimited text file named ***TimingDiagramName*_diff.txt** and saved to the project directory. This file can be used by external programs to do batch processing on the compares.

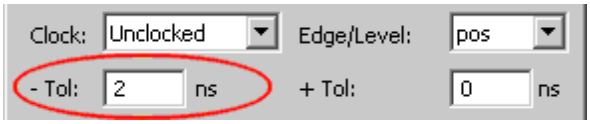
Adjusting Comparison Tolerances using the Signal Properties dialog:

- To modify the tolerance ***for all the compare signals*** click on the **Set All** button, to open the *Signal Properties* dialog in group mode.



- To modify the tolerance ***for one compare signal***, just double click on the signal's name to open the *Signal Properties* dialog in individual mode. You can similarly modify the settings for a selected set of signals by highlighting the signal names and right clicking to edit those signals.

- For unclocked signals, the **-Tol** and **+Tol** boxes specify the region to *IGNORE differences* before and after the edge on the reference signal. The



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

default is 0ns (flag all differences).

Forcing a comparison:

- The comparison regions are calculated once when either the compare file is loaded or when a signal changes type to Compare. To re-compare the signals, press the **Compare All Compare Signals** button on the main button bar.

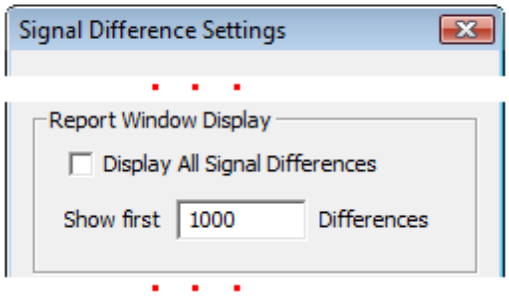


Control the number of differences displayed:

To avoid slowdowns in the comparison calculation when there are an unexpected number of differences, the compare feature by default will only show the first 1000 differences in the **Differences tab** window. To change this default:

- Press the **Signal Difference Settings** button to open the dialog.
- Either type in the number of differences to display or check the **Display All Signal Differences** box.





3.6 Generating and Reading VCD and BTIM Files

The VCD format is a standard Verilog file format that can be used with external waveform viewers, static timing analyzers, or VeriLogger's graphical display. Watched signals in VeriLogger are displayed graphically, and by default are NOT dumped to a VCD file. Two check boxes in the *Project Simulation Properteis* dialog control the output of data gathered by watched signals.

BugHunter also supports saving simulation results into a compressed binary timing diagram format (the BTIM format). This format is used by default for saving off the waveform results of simulations. BTIM files are typical 200-1000x compressed compared to an equivalent VCD file. This means that dumping to a BTIM file instead of a VCD file will enable a simulation to run quicker, because less file IO is required to save the data. BTIM dumping capability is enabled via a PLI application that is passed on the simulator command line when it is launched, so it is also possible to create BTIM files when running a simulation standalone without the BugHunter graphical debugger. Just as there are system tasks for creating VCD files (e.g. $dumpvars), there are similar system tasks that can be placed into Verilog source code to manually generate BTIM files.

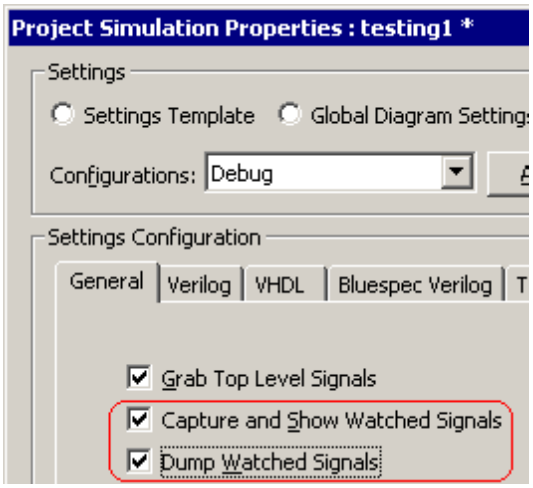
To determine the output of watched signals:

- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Check the **Capture and Show Watched Signals** checkbox to view watched signals in the *Diagram* window. Saving the resulting timing diagram will save a BTIM file.
- Check the **Dump Watched Signals** checkbox to insert a $dumpvars statement into the test bench code that will dump data from watched signals to a VCD file.



To import and view a VCD file:

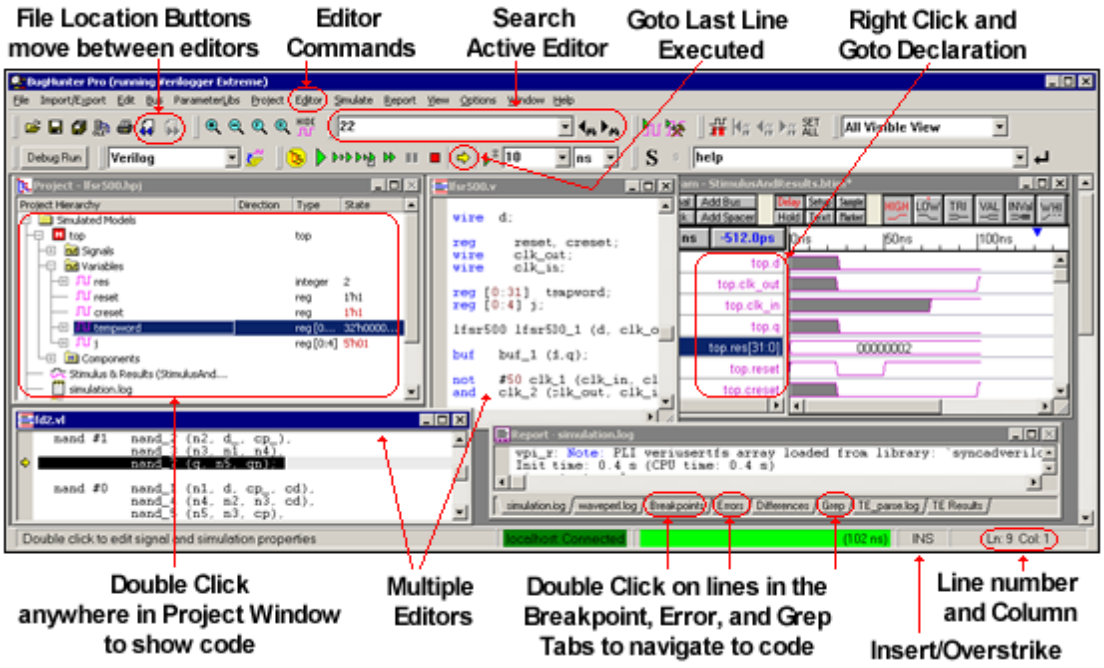
- Select the **Export > Import Timing Diagram From** menu option. This *Open* dialog is special in that it remembers the file type of the last file imported.
- Type the name of the VCD file you wish to open in the **File name:** edit box.
- Click the **Open** button to load the file. The waveforms are now visible in the *Diagram* window.

If you are using Verilog, VCD files can also be generated by using the Verilog system tasks **$dumpvars**, **$dumpfile**, **$dumpall**, **$dumpon**, and **$dumpoff** to save waveform data. See the **Verilog Language Overview** for more information on the syntax of these statements.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 4: Editor Functions and Code Navigation

BugHunter's editor windows are an integrated part of the simulation environment. Double-clicking in the *Project*, *Errors*, or *Breakpoints* windows will open an editor and display the relevant source code. The editor windows are also used to display the current execution line for **single-step** debugging. All editor windows provide color-syntax highlighting, search, single-click breakpoint placement, jumping to a specified line in a file, and font control. The simulator automatically recognizes when a file is modified in an editor window, and will warn you when it needs to be saved.

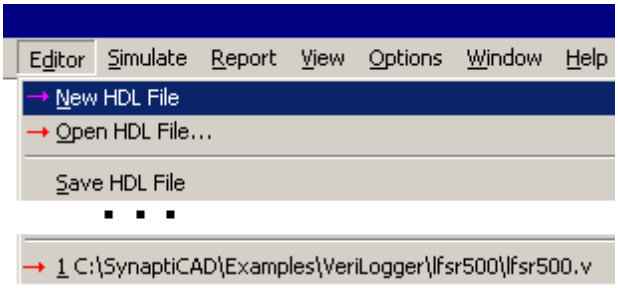


4.1 Opening, Saving, and Creating New Source Code

Source code files are opened and saved using the **Editor** menu options. Any files that have been opened and modified in a source editor are automatically saved when you build a simulation.

Commands to Open an existing source code file:

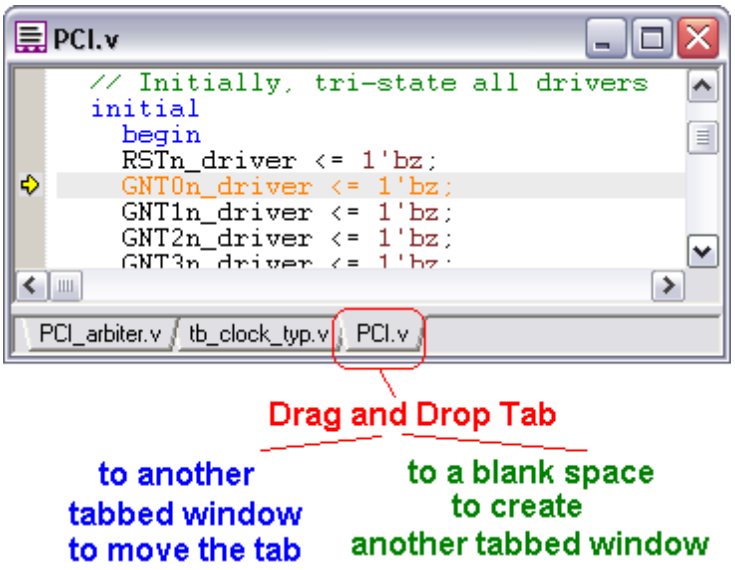
- Double-click on the *filename* in the *Project* window,
- Or, choose the **Editor > Open HDL file** menu option,
- Or, choose a file name from the recently open file list at the bottom of the **Editor** menu.



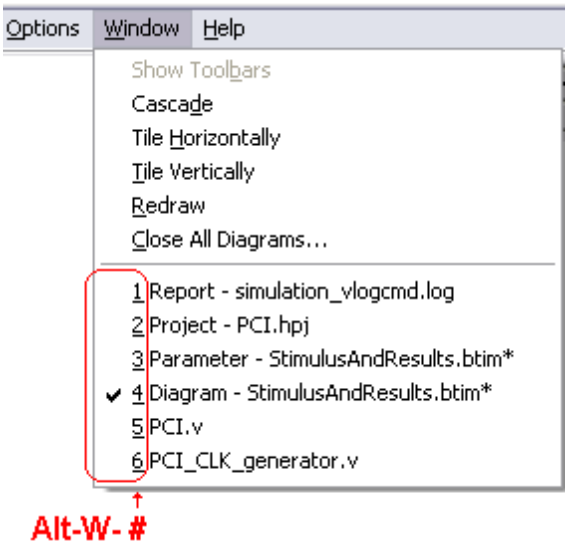
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Managing Editors During Single-Stepping:

- While stepping through the code, new editors will open in a new tab within the most recently active editor window.
- ***To move a tab to another tabbed window*** or the *Report* window, drag and drop the tab to that window.
- **To open a tab in a new tabbed window,** drag and drop the tab to a space outside any other tabbed window.



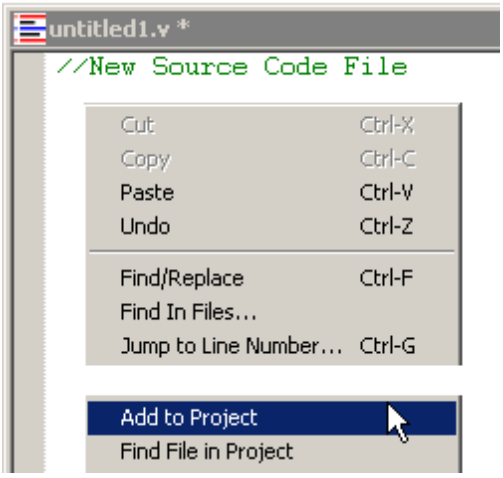
- Use the **Window** menu, to quickly move between different tabbed windows. Also the **Alt-W-#** will bring up the window quickly. Only the active tab's file name will be visible in this list.
- Also remember that double clicking in the Project window will bring up the relevant source code.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Create a new source code file:

- Select the **Editor > New HDL file** menu option to open the editor file and type in source code.
- Then right-click and choose **Add to Project** from the context menu to open a File Save As dialog.
- Pick an name for the file and save it to the project directory (or anywhere else that you want).



Saving files:

- Select the **Editor > Save HDL file** menu option to open a *Save* dialog. By default, Verilog file names have an extension of **v**, VHDL file names have an extension of **vhd,** and C++ files have an extension of **cpp**.

Close the editor window and save the source code:

- Select the **Editor > Close** menu option. If the file has been altered, you will be prompted to save the file.

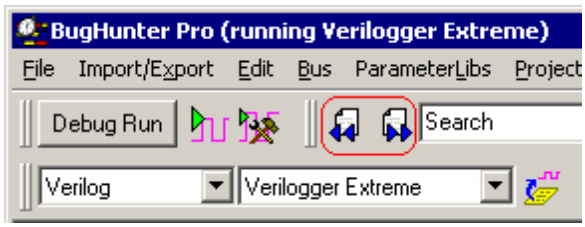
4.2 Navigating Code with Buttons and Report Tabs

Several buttons on the main button bar are linked to the Editor Window code. The Error and Breakpoint tabs in the report window can also be used to open editor windows to associated sections of the source code.

Find previously viewed code with the File Location Buttons:

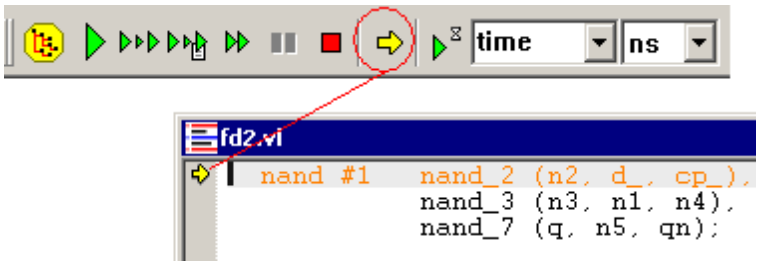
As you browse the source code by clicking in different editor windows, BugHunter remembers the places you have viewed.

- Press the Next and Previous **File Location** buttons to hop between locations that you have viewed.



Find last executed line of code with the Goto Button:

- During simulation, press the **Goto Current Execution Statement** button on the button bar to display the last executed line of code in an editor window. This line will be marked with a

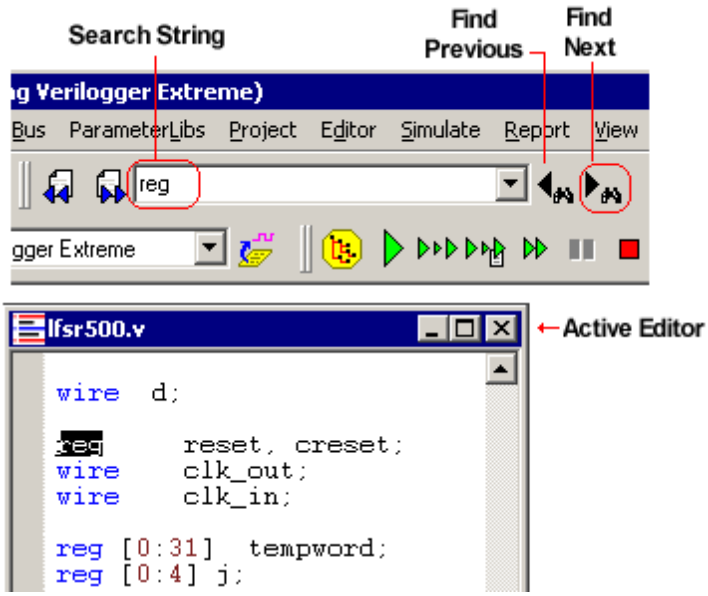


Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

similar yellow arrow symbol.

Find in Active Editor:

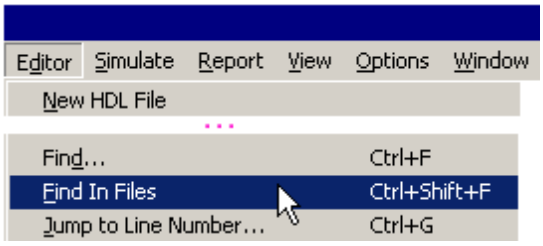
- Click in an Editor window to make it the active editor.
- Enter a string into the search box on the button bar.
- Press the **Find Next** button to find the next instance of the search string in the active editor.
- This is the same as using **Editor > Find** menu and **F3** button to search again.



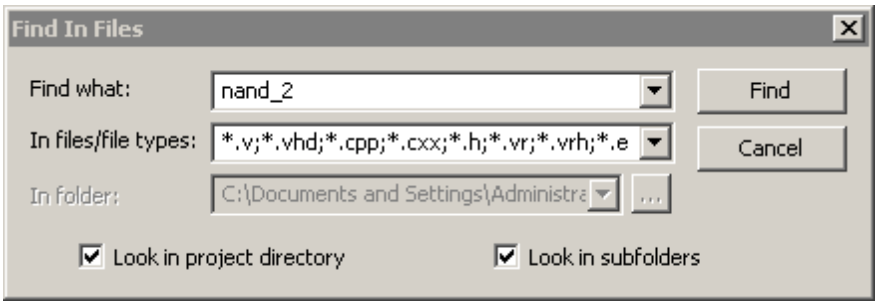
Find in Files menu searches through multiple files:

The Find in Files feature allows you to search through a specific directory, with or without its subdirectories, in search of a particular text string in a file. This feature can be used to search all files in the directory, or files with a particular file extension.

- Select the **Editor > Find in Files** menu option to open the *Find In Files* dialog.

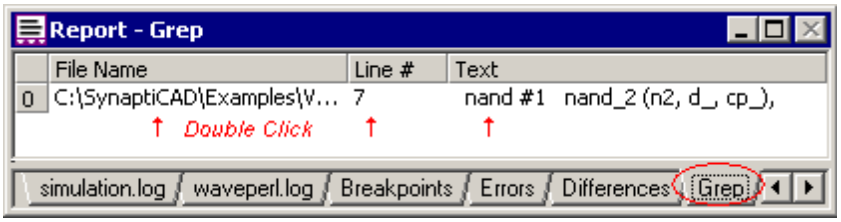


- Fill out the dialog and press **Find** to perform the search.



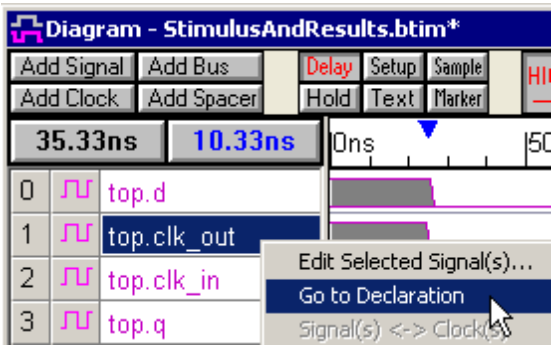
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- The search results are displayed in the *Report* window ***Grep*** tab. Double-click on a row to open an editor showing the code.



Find Signal Declarations from the Drawing Window

- In the Stimulus-and-Results diagram, right-click on a signal label and choose **Go to Declaration** to open an editor that displays the line of source code where the signal is declared.



Find Errors using the Report Window Error Tab:

- The *Errors* tab in the *Report* window displays compilation errors. Double-click on an error to open an editor and display the line where the error was found.

Find Breakpoint locations using the Report Window Breakpoint Tab

- The *Breakpoints* tab in the *Report* window displays all the breakpoints in the current project. Double-click on a breakpoint to open an editor and display the line where the breakpoint is located.

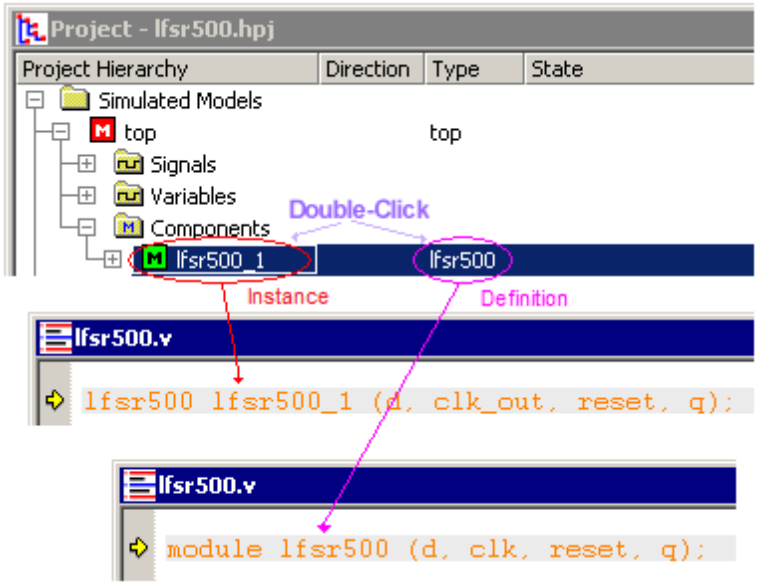
4.3 Navigating Code with the Project Window

One of the most powerful features of BugHunter is the ability to quickly find code using the *Project* window. Try double clicking anywhere in the Project tree and investigate which code windows will open.

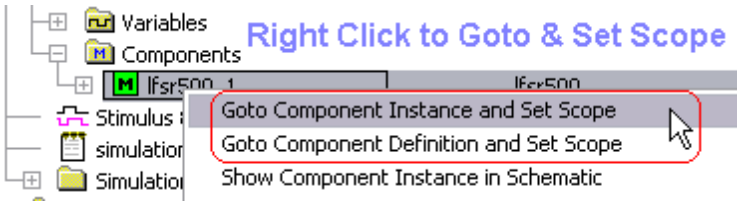
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Find Definitions and Instances of Signals, Variables, or Components:

- Double click on the instance name in the *Project* window to open an editor that is scrolled to the location where the instance is declared.
- Double click on the **Type** name in the *Project* window to open an editor that is scrolled to the definition.
- Also if a signal is currently being watched, choosing the watch menu again will scroll the Stimulus and Results diagram to display the signal (see Section 2.3 Watching Signals and Component Waveforms 32).

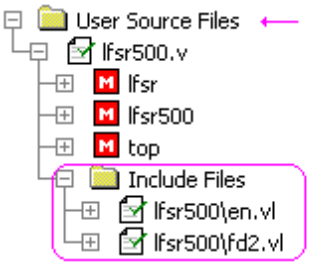


- If you need to also set the scope, then right click on the module instance. The Goto menus set the scope to that instance and then jumps to the requested location.



Find Include Files:

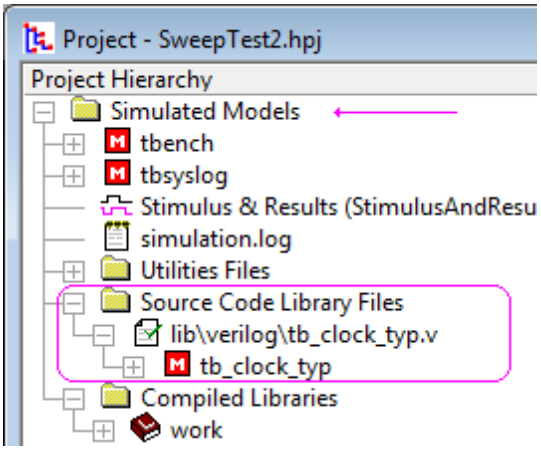
- After the project is Built, the **User Source Files** folder in the Project window shows the components and the files that are included by that file.
- Double clicking on an include file in the project window will open up that file in an editor window.
- Double clicking on a module will bring you to the definition of that component.



Find Files that were brought in through the Library path:

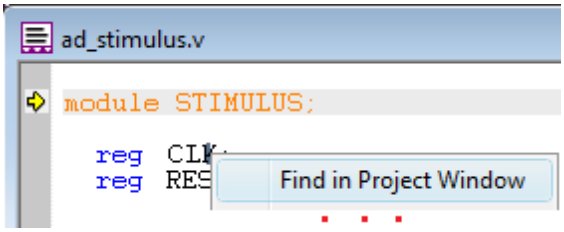
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- When instantiated module definitions are not located in the **User Source Files**, the simulator will search the library path for the missing modules. If such files are found, they will be placed in the **Compiled Library Files** folder under the **Simulated Models** tree.

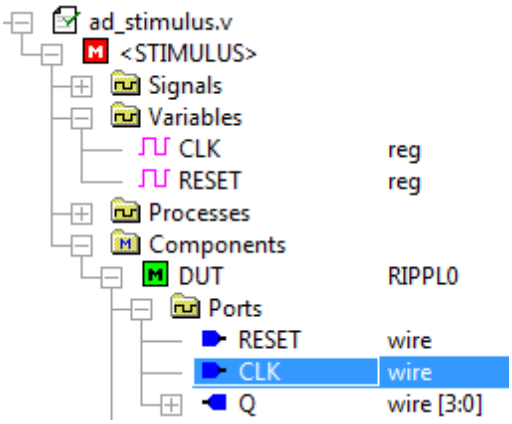


Finding a Project Window object associated with a given code segment

- Right click on an object in a compiled source code editor window and choose **Find in Project Window** from the context window.



- The focus will shift to the Project window and highlight the associated object in the tree.

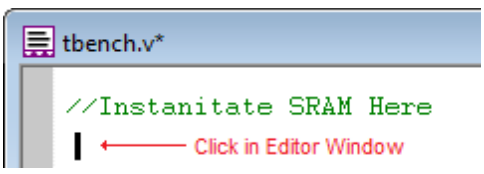


4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing

There are several features that are particularly useful in generating code segments for Verilog and VHDL files.

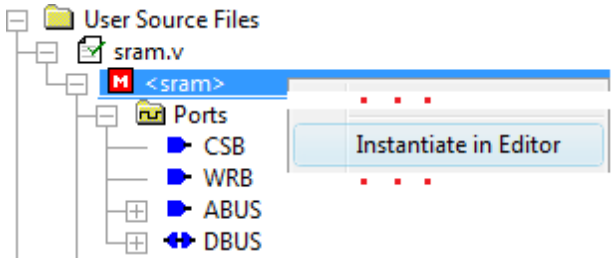
Instantiate a Component into an Editor Window

- Left click into the editor window at the place where the module should be instantiated.

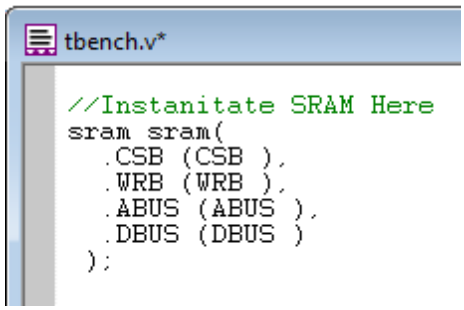


Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- In the Project window, right click on the Component and choose **Instantiate in Editor** from the context menu.

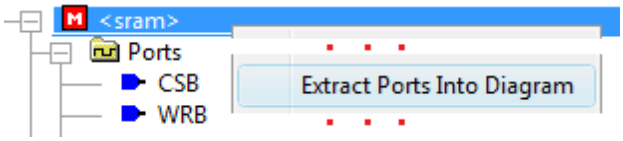


- The code fragment will appear at the cursor point in the current editor.
- Now you can edit the instantiation name or port arguments as desired.



Adding the ports of a Module to a diagram for HDL stimulus creation

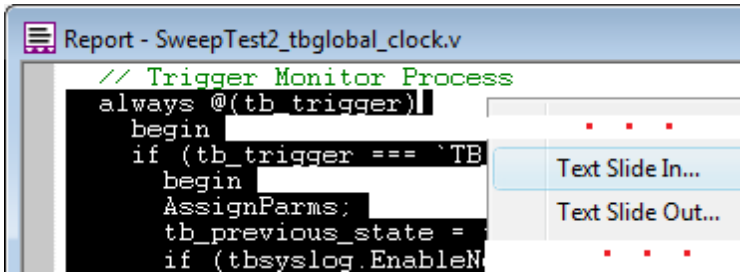
- To extract ports of a particular module into a diagram, right click on a module and choose **Extract Ports Into Diagram** from the context menu. These signals come in as drive signals to which waveforms can be added to create HDL stimulus.



Text Slide In and Out

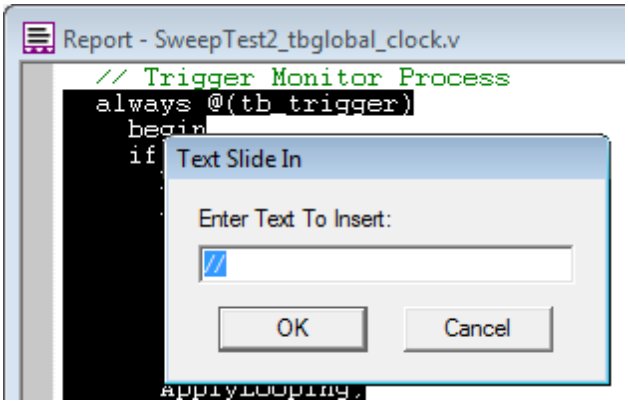
Add or remove a text string to several lines at one time. This is particularly useful in commenting out blocks of code.

- Select several lines of text, then right click and choose one of the **Text Slide In/ Out** menus. The **Slide In** adds text, and the **Slide Out** removes text.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

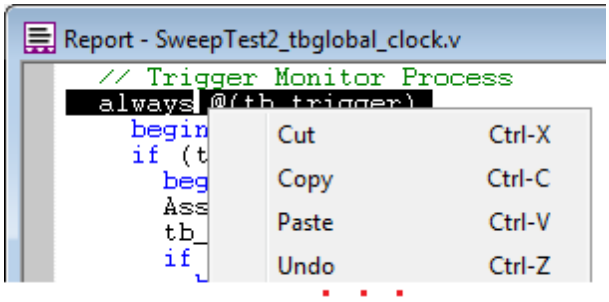
- The Text Slide dialog will open and you can enter the text to add or remove from the selected lines.



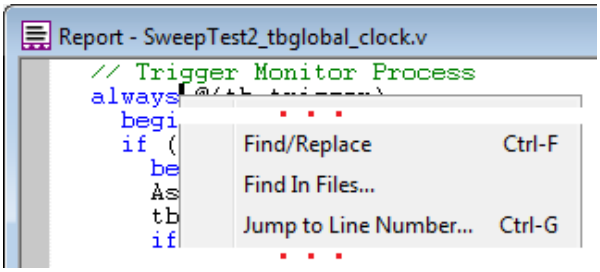
Miscellaneous Context Menu Functions

Many functions are available from the right click context menu

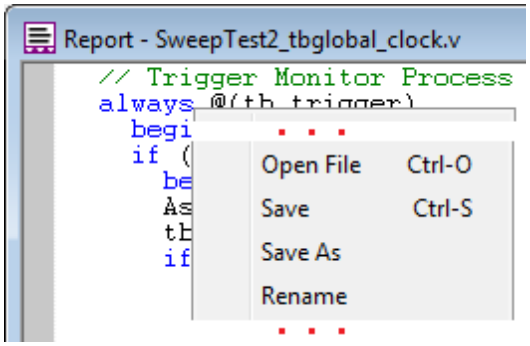
- Select text and then choose **Cut** or **Copy** to insert the text into the buffer.
- **Paste** puts text in the buffer into the text file at the cursor point.
- **Undo** will undo the last edit change.



- **Find/Replace** allows you to find and replace text in the current editor window.
- **Find In Files** searches (greps) for text across multiple files.
- **Jump to Line Number** moves the cursor to a specified line number in the file.

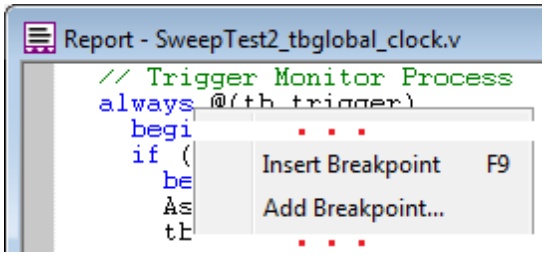


- **Open File** opens the file dialog and lets you choose a file to open.
- **Save** saves the current file.
- **Save As** opens the file dialog to save the current file to a new file name.
- **Rename** changes the name of the current file.

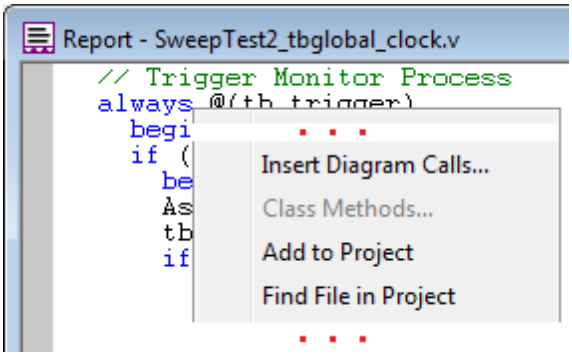


Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- **Insert Breakpoint** adds a line breakpoint at the current cursor position.
- **Add Breakpoint** opens the breakpoint dialog, allowing you to create time and condition breakpoints (2.4 Breakpoints 34).

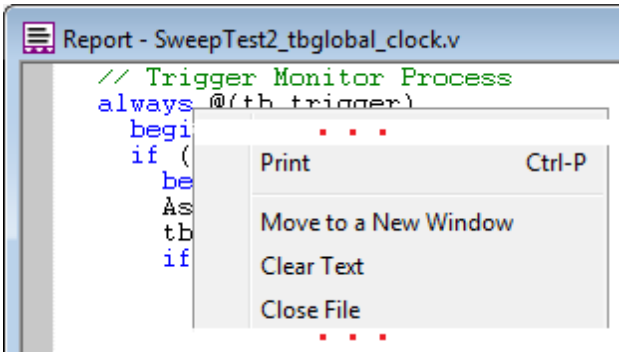


- **Insert Diagram Calls** is a TestBencher feature to add Transactor Apply calls into the text file.
- **Class Methods** is a TestBencher feature to open the Class Methods dialog.
- **Add to Project** adds the file to the User Source Files folder of the current project.



- **Find File in Project** will search for the file in the project window.

- **Print** sends the current file to the printer.
- **Move to a New Window** opens the text file in a different window than the tab of the current window.
- **Clear Text** deletes all the text in the file. This is particularly useful in clearing out log files.
- **Close File** closes file and removes the tab that it was displayed in.

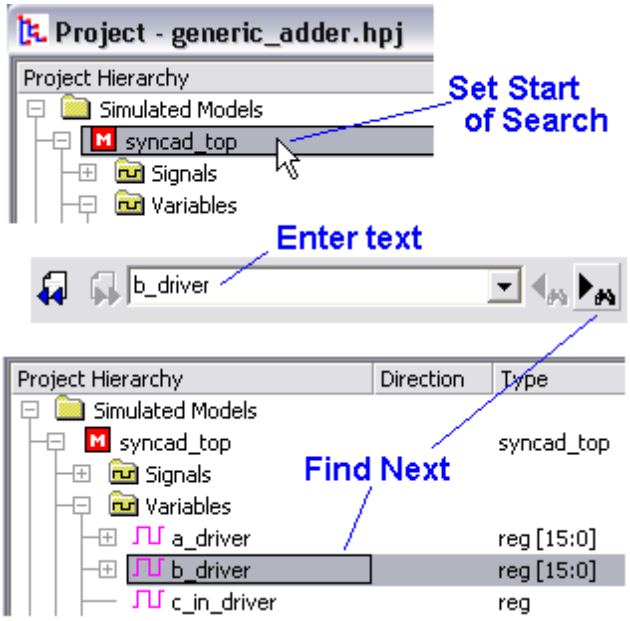


4.5 Searching in the Project Window

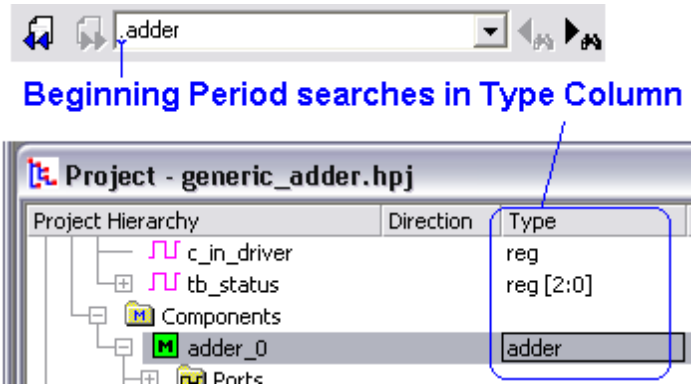
The Project window can be searched to find text strings (search string without periods), all instances of a particular type (search string prefixed with period), and full hierarchically named objects (search string containing embedded periods).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

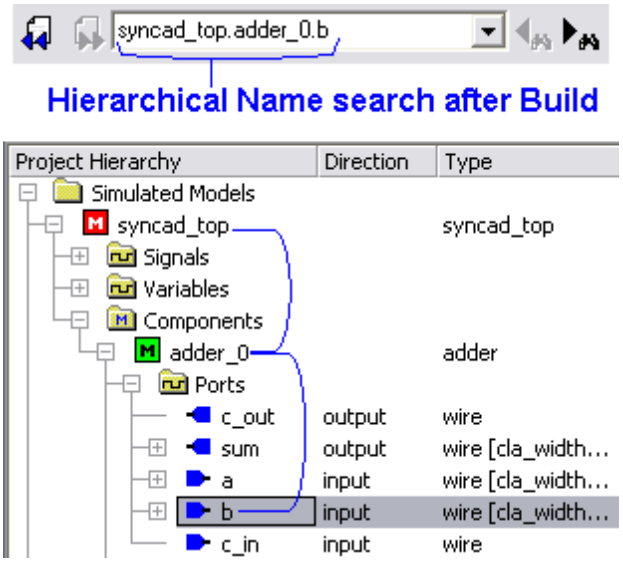
- Click on a node in Project window to indicate where to start searching from.
- For a **pure text search**, enter some text into the search box and press the enter key or the black next search button. The text should not contain periods. This is the slowest form of search because it searches through every node in the tree.



- To **search for all instances** of a component put a period at the beginning of the search string. This search is faster because it only searches in the type field.



- Use **hierarchical names** to search for a specific object. This only works in the **Simulated Models** folder after the project has been built. This is the fast form of search, because it specifies exactly where in the tree to find the object.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Keyboard Shortcuts for Navigating the Project Tree (and other tree views)

<Ctrl>-<Home>	Goto top of tree
<Ctrl>-<End>	Goto bottom of tree
<Home>	Goto first column in a row
<End>	Goto last column in a row
<Page Up>	Scroll up a page
<Page Down>	Scroll down a page
<up arrow>	Goto previous row
<down arrow>	Goto next row
<left arrow>	Goto previous column in row
<right arrow>	Goto next column in row
<Tab>	Goto next column (even across rows)
<Shift>-<Tab>	Goto previous column (even across rows)

Keyboard Shortcuts for Collapsing/Expanding Tree Rows

<Ctrl><left arrow>	Collapse current row if expanded, else goto parent row
<Ctrl><right arrow>	Expand current row if not expanded, else goto first child row

Keyboard Shortcuts for Editing the Project Tree (and other tree views)

<Ctrl>-A	Select all rows in tree
<Del>	Delete row in tree (if deletable)
<F2>	Edit cell in tree (if editable)
<Ctrl>-C	Copy text of selected cell
<Ctrl>-V	Paste text into selected cell (if opened for editing)

4.6 Editor and Report Window Commands

The Editor Windows and code opened in the *Report* window tabs respond to the following keyboard and mouse commands.

Jump To, Searching, and Printing:

Key	Purpose
Ctrl+G	Jump to line#
Ctrl+F	Search and Replace in the selected file
F3	Search Again
Ctrl+Shift+F	Search an through an entire directory, use the **Editor > Find in Files...** menu. The results are displayed in the *Report* window **Grep** tab.
F4	Print from window

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Shift+F4	Print options

Copy and Undo Commands:

Key	Purpose
Ctrl+X	Cut
Ctrl+C	Copy
Ctrl+V	Paste
Ctrl+Z	Undo
Ctrl+Y	Redo

Selection Commands:

Key	Purpose
Ctrl+A	Selects all of the text in the document
Shift+Left	Selects text one character at a time to the left
Shift+Right	Selects text one character at a time to the right
Shift+Down	Selects one line of text down
Shift+Up	Selects one line of text up
Shift+End	Selects text to the end of the line
Shift+Home	Selects text to the beginning of the line
Shift+Page Down	Selects text down one window OR, cancels the selection if the next window is already selected
Shift+Page Up	Selects text up one window OR, cancels the selection if the previous window is already selected
Ctrl+Shift+Left	Selects text to the previous word
Ctrl+Shift+Right	Selects text to the next word
Ctrl+Shift+Up	Selects text to the beginning of the paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+Down	Selects text to the end of the paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+End	Selects text to the end of the document
Ctrl+Shift+Home	Selects text to the beginning of the document

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

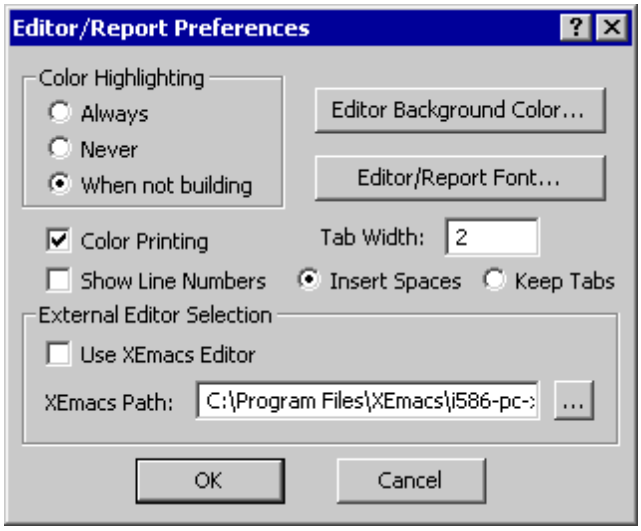
Moving and Editing Commands:

Key	Purpose
Left/right arrow keys	Moves the cursor one space left or right
Up/down arrow keys	Moves the cursor one line up or down
Page Up	Moves the cursor one page up
Page Down	Moves the cursor one page down
Home	Move to the beginning of the current line
End	Move to the end of the current line
Backspace	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor OR deletes the selected text
Delete	Deletes the character to the right of the cursor OR deletes the selected text

4.7 The Editor/Report Preferences Dialog

The *Editor/Report Preferences* dialog controls options for the *Editor* and *Report* windows. This information is stored inside the project **HPJ** file.

- Select the Editor > Editor/Report Preferences menu option to open the Editor/Report Preferences dialog.



- The **Color Highlighting** radio buttons determine when color syntax editing is active. By default, the **When not building** option is selected so that the color syntax editing does not slow the build time of large projects.
- The **Background Color** button opens the Color dialog. From this dialog you can set the background color of the *Editor* and *Report* windows.
- The **Font** button opens the Font dialog. From this dialog you can set the font type, size, and color of the text in the *Editor* and *Report* windows.
- The **Color Printing** checkbox prints the source code in color. If unchecked, all code is printed

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

in black.

- The **Show Line Numbers** checkbox determines whether or not line numbers are displayed in the editor window.
- The **Tab Width** edit box sets the number of spaces that the tab key will generate. The default setting is two spaces, but it can be set to match the tab width of an external editor.
- The **Insert Spaces** and **Keep Tabs** radio buttons determine whether spaces or tab characters are inserted when the <Tab> key is pressed.
- If the **Use XEmacs Editor** box is checked, BugHunter will use the XEmacs editor to edit HDL files instead of its internal editor. For more information on this feature see Section 4.8 XEmacs Integration 83.
- The **XEmacs Path** edit box contains the location of the XEmacs executable to use (when XEmacs is enabled).

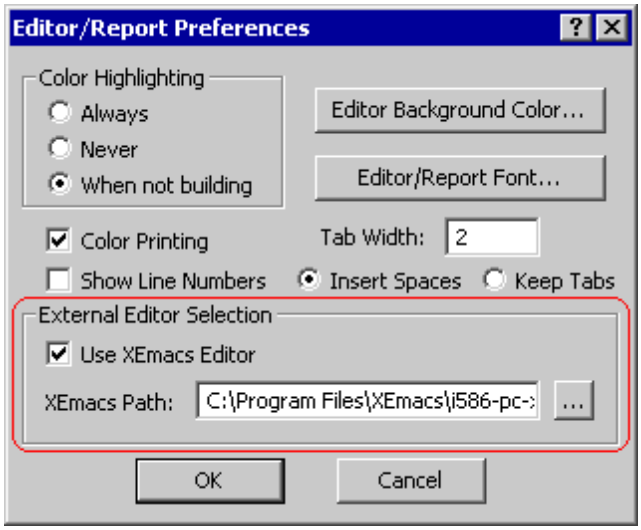
4.8 XEmacs Integration and other External Editors

External editors can be used with BugHunter. If you use an external editor, make sure it is configured to detect when other programs externally modify a file. While simulating and debugging in BugHunter, you will want to use the internal editors to make quick fixes to the code so you can continue simulating. If your editor does not detect that you have modified a file, it may overwrite your fixes.

BugHunter also supports complete editing and debugging integration with the popular XEmacs text editor.

Enabling XEmacs Integration:

- Install XEmacs onto the computer that is running BugHunter. You will need XEmacs version 21.2 or later.
- In BugHunter, select the **Editor > Editor/Report Preferences** menu option to open the *Editor/Report Preferences* dialog.
- Check the **Use XEmacs Editor** checkbox.
- Enter the path to the XEmacs editor in the **XEmacs Path** edit box, or click the **Browse** (**...**) button to locate the XEmacs files.
- Click the **OK** button to enable XEmacs integration and close the *Editor/Report Preferences* dialog.



For information on XEmacs, including installation information, see the official XEmacs website at http://www.xemacs.org/. All the files needed to install XEmacs are available by anonymous FTP from ftp.xemacs.org/.

Windows users will only need to install the basic XEmacs package. Unix users will also need to install two libraries, *annotations* and *derived*, available from ftp.xemacs.org/. Unix users will also need to make sure that global support for the XPM image format is installed before attempting to configure

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

XEmacs. The most recent version of the global XPM support library can be obtained from ftp.x.org/contrib/libraries/. Consult your system administrator if you have any questions.

Using XEmacs with BugHunter

The XEmacs Integration feature allows you to control project functions and simulate the project from within XEmacs. The use of breakpoints in HDL files is also supported. For more information on breakpoints, see Section 2.4: Breakpoints 34.

To add an HDL file created in XEmacs to the active BugHunter project:

- Select the **Syncad > Add to Project...** menu option.

To run a BugHunter simulation from within XEmacs:

- Press the **<F5>** key. (This is identical to selecting **Simulate > Run** from BugHunter's **Simulate** menu.)

To single-step through a BugHunter simulation from within XEmacs:

- Press the **<F10>** key. (This is identical to selecting **Simulate > Step Over** from BugHunter's **Simulate** menu.)

To single-step through a BugHunter simulation from within XEmacs and send a **trace** statement to the **verilog.log** file:

- Press the **<F11>** key. (This is identical to selecting **Simulate > Step Into** from BugHunter's **Simulate** menu.)

Note that simulation from XEmacs can also be carried out by means of the XEmacs simulation bar located at the bottom of the XEmacs editor window. These buttons function identically to the buttons on the Simulation Button Bar 29 in BugHunter.



To add or remove a breakpoint in XEmacs:

- Click in the margin of the XEmacs editor to the left of the line that the breakpoint should be added to or removed from.

OR

- Right-click in the margin of the XEmacs editor to the left of the line that the breakpoint should be added to or removed from.
- Select **Insert/Remove Breakpoint** from the context menu.

OR

- Place the cursor in the line that the breakpoint should be added to or removed from.
- Press the **<F9>** key.

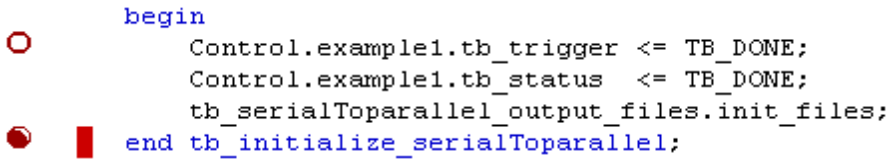
To enable or disable a breakpoint in XEmacs:

- Right-click in the margin of the XEmacs editor next to the breakpoint that should be enabled or disabled.
- Select **Enable/Disable Breakpoint** from the context menu.

OR

- Place the cursor in the same line as the breakpoint that should be enabled or disabled.
- Press the **<Ctrl>** and **<F9>** keys.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



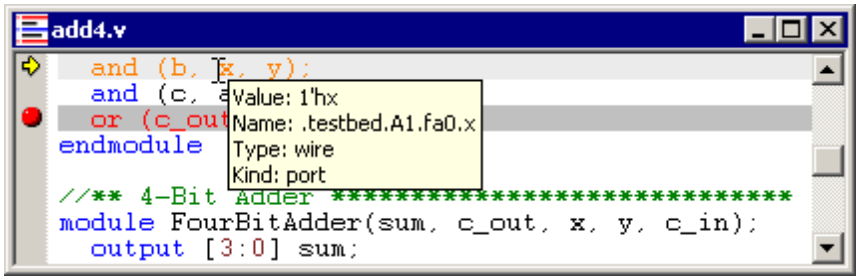
An enabled breakpoint is represented by a red dot in the left margin, and a red circle represents a disabled breakpoint.

4.9 Editor Window Overview

This is an overview of the Editor Window features and links to the associated help.

Debugging during Simulation

- Add source line breakpoints by clicking to add red dots in the left column of the editor (2.4 Breakpoints 34)
- View and edit signal state values by hovering with the mouse (2.5 Inspect And Edit Values 36)



- Go from the Editor to the object in the Project window by right clicking and choosing **Find in Project**. From the project window, you can analyze the drivers for this object. (2.6 Find Drivers 39)
- Managing editor windows during single stepping with editor Tabs and drag and drop windows (4.1 Opening, Saving, and Creating New Source Code 69)

Normal Editing Functions

- Open, Save, and Create new text files (4.1 Opening, Saving, and Creating New Source Code 69)
- Search in an editor window (4.2 Navigating Code with Buttons and Report Tabs 71)
- Text Slide In and Out to quickly add or remove comments and strings to selected lines (4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing 75)
- Many editor functions like Find, Jump To, and Breakpoints are available as right click menu (4.4 Fast HDL Code Editing 75)
- Keystroke commands for editor windows (4.6 Editor and Report Window Commands 80)

Setting up and controlling Editor Windows

- Editor Preferences (4.7 The Editor/Report Preferences Dialog 82)
- Using XEmacs as a replacement editor (4.8 XEmacs Integration and other External Editors 83)

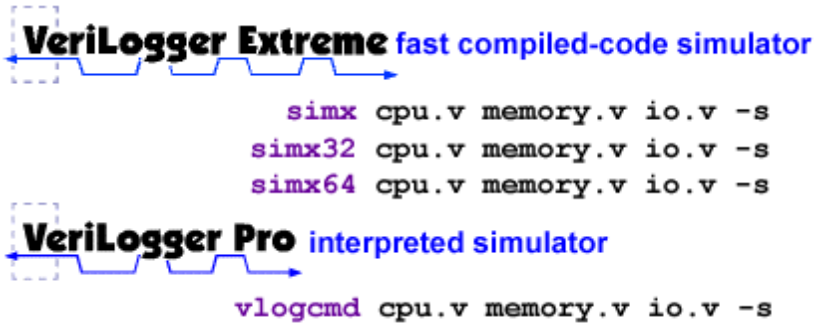
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 5: VeriLogger Command Line Tools

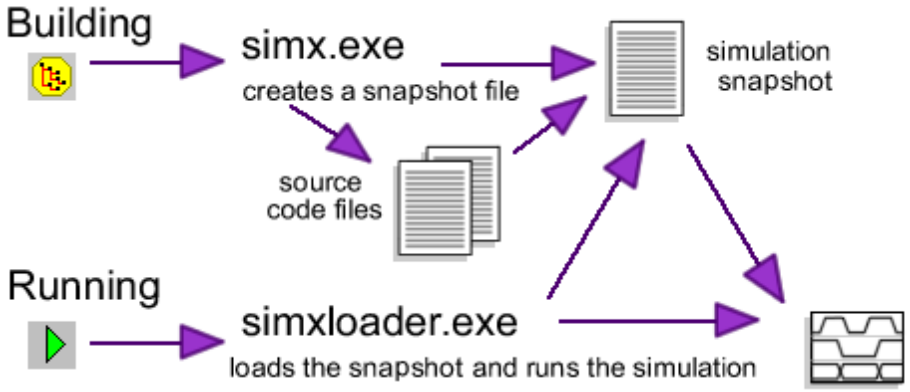
This chapter describes how to launch the VeriLogger command line simulators (simx and vlogcmd) and the command line options available. Simx is the compiled-code simulator that comes with VeriLogger Extreme. Vlogcmd is the interpreted simulator that comes with VeriLogger Pro. This chapter also describes simxloader (the program that runs compiled simulation snapshots) and simxlib (a command line tool for creating/maintaining compiled libraries).

If you are using BugHunter as the graphical interface for another simulator, you can glance through this chapter to get an idea of what kinds of features might be available in your simulator. The exact syntax for the command line options will depend on the simulator you use.



5.1 VeriLogger Extreme tools: Simx and Simxloader

The command line simulation compiler for VeriLogger Extreme is called **simx**. Simx compiles the user's source files into a simulation snapshot. By default, simx then launches **simxloader** which loads the snapshot and runs the actual simulation. Simxloader can subsequently be run again standalone with different runtime simulation options without re-running simx, when there is no need to change the HDL source code or compile-time simulation options. Running **simxloader -h** will display a list of the command line options for controlling how a simulation snapshot is run.



VeriLogger Extreme will run either in 32bit mode or 64bit mode depending on your OS version (e.g. 32bit or 64bit OS). To force 32bit operation use **simx32** and to force 64bit operation use **simx64**. Note that the 32bit simulator will work on both 32bit and 64bit systems.

Special Instructions for using the 64bit simulator on Windows

In order to enable the 64bit simulator on Windows systems, you must download and install Microsoft's free Windows 7/7.1 Platform SDK which includes a 64-bit C++ compiler (works with all

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Windows versions) or Visual Studio Express for Desktops 2012 and set an environment variable to point to it.

- Download and install the Platform SDK from http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/ (search for ***Windows 7 Platform SDK***).
- Set the environment variable **SYNCAD_CPP_COMPILER** to your compiler so that the simulator can locate the 64bit C++ compiler installed during previous step.. For example, for Windows 7 Platform SDK, use **C:\program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 9.0\VC**, for Windows 7.1 Platform SDK, use **C:\program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC**, and for Visual Studio Express for Desktops 2012, use **C:\program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 11.0\VC**.
- **IMPORTANT NOTE:** do not place quotes around the path to the compiler, even if there are spaces in the path, or the quotes will be considered part of the path.

To run the command line simulator:

- Open a console window on your operating system. Windows users should open a DOS prompt.
- Next, invoke the command line simulator with one or more source files and any desired simulation options. The following example starts the simulator, and compiles and simulates the source file *model.v (*For this to work, you must have the simulator's binary directory in your path):

```
simx model.v
```

If there is more than one file, then each file needs to be specified on the command line. The order that the files are entered in the command line is the order in which they are compiled. In most cases the order is irrelevant, but there are some cases where it is significant, particularly when using the same macros (`**define**) across files.

```
simx cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

Using Command files

To avoid retyping the same source files and simulation options every time you perform a simulation, you can create a command file. A command file is a simple text file that contains a list of source files and simulation options used in the simulation. To call a command file, use the **-f** simulation option (all simulation options are listed in Section 5.4 Simx Commonly-Used Command Line Options 90) followed by the name of the command file. The use of a command file is demonstrated below:

```
simx -f command.vc
```

A complete list and description of the commands available for command files can be obtained by entering `simx` at the command prompt without any options.

Command files are user-created text files with a ***.vc** file extension. They consist of Verilog source files, simulator options, and other command files. When creating a command file, list only one file or simulation option per line. The following is an example of a command file with three Verilog source files and two simulation options:

```
cpu.v
memory.v
io.v
-s
-t
```

Automatically generate a command file that contains all project settings project files:

After you've finished debugging a design with the GUI, you may want to setup regression tests to automatically run the simulation periodically using just simx, the command line simulator. BugHunter

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

can create a command file for you automatically that allows you to build and run a simulation strictly from the command line with the same options, files, etc specified in your BugHunter project file:

- Select the **Project > Project Settings** menu option to open the *Project Settings* dialog.
- Click the **Generate Command File** button. This takes all the project options and file names contained in the **Command Line Options** edit box and the file names listed in the User Source Files list and other related source files lists in the project window and creates a command file.

5.2 Preparing Verilog Source files

Before using the command line simulator you may want to add statements to the Verilog source code to generate simulation display statements. Signals that were watched in the graphical simulator will not automatically generate output in the command line simulator.

There are several Verilog statements that will generate output:

- The **$monitor** system task is used to continuously monitor a signal and produce an output message every time the signal changes.
  ```
  $monitor("Counter = %d", count);
  ```
- The **$display** system task is used to print text messages and look at values on signals. The **$display** statements write the results to the **verilog.log** file. This statement is similar to a debug statement used to debug program flow in a standard programming language. See the **Verilog Language Overview** for more information on the syntax. An example of a display statement used inside a module is:
  ```
  $display("Counter = %d", count);
  ```
- The **$dumpvars**, **$dumpfile**, **$dumpall**, **$dumpon**, and **$dumpoff** system tasks are used to save waveform data in to a value change dump (**VCD**) file. The VCD format is a standard Verilog file format that can be used with external waveform viewers, static timing analyzers, or VeriLogger's graphical display. See the **Verilog Language Overview** for more information on the syntax of these statements.

5.3 Batch Files for Command Line Simulators

Whenever you do a build or a run from the BugHunter GUI, it also creates batch files with all the commands needed to build, elaborate, and run the current simulator from the command line. These files can be used to create regression test suites that run on different computers.

Build, Elaborate, and Run batch files

The names of the created files are based on the simulator name and type of command to run. The table below shows the UNIX batch files. Windows batch files have a **bat** file extension instead of an **sh** extension.

SynaptiCAD Simulators	build_simx.sh run_simx.sh build_vlogcmd.sh
Cadence Verilog	build_ncvlog.sh elab_ncvlog.sh run_ncvlog.sh
Cadence VHDL	build_ncvhdl.sh elab_ncvhdl.sh run_ncvhdl.sh
Mentor ModelSim Verilog	build_vlog.sh run_vlog.sh
Mentor ModelSim VHDL	build_vcom.sh run_vcom.sh

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Synopsys	build_vcs.sh run_vcs.sh

Library mapping files for Cadence NCsim simulator

When compiling using Cadence Incisive (i.e. ncsim), BugHunter automatically creates a file called **cds.lib** in the project directory that tells Incisive how to map symbolic library names to physical directories on disk. This file also includes a link to a file called **cds_project.lib** (also in the project directory) where a user can add additional symbolic to physical mappings if needed.

- Open the **cds_project.lib** file located in the project directory and add the logical-library-to-physical-directory mapping.

```
DEFINE lib1 ./lib1_ncsim
```

- For example, the above would map a logical library named lib1 to a directory called lib1_ncsim. **Note:** If a directory called lib1_ncsim doesn't already exist, you will also need to create this directory from the shell.

5.4 Simx Commonly-Used Command Line Options

The VeriLogger command line simulator supports several simulation options that can be used to control and debug simulations. Most (but not all) simulation options may be added in any order and anywhere on the command line. To the simulator, the following statements are identical:

```
simx -s cpu.v memory.v io.v
simx cpu.v memory.v io.v -s
simx cpu.v memory.v -s io.v
```

Note that **simx** can be replaced with **vlogcmd** in the commands above to run SynaptiCAD's interpreted simulator instead of the compiled code simulator.

Listed below are some commonly used simulation options supported by VeriLogger:

-s

The Stop option, **-s**, compiles the source code then enters the interactive console shell before the execution begins.

```
simx -s cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

-v <LibraryFilename>

Deprecated: Specify the name of a library filename using the **-v** option. If this option is used, VeriLogger will try to match any undefined modules to modules inside this library file. This option is deprecated in simx, since it's generally more efficient to compile library files into a compiled library instead.

-y <LibraryDirectory>

Specify a directory path to search for source code library files. Multiple source code library paths can be specified using multiple -y options. If this option is used, the simulator will attempt to match any undefined modules with files that have one of the file extensions set with the **+libext** option. The simulator does not look inside a file unless the undefined module name exactly matches the filename. The simulator will not look at any files unless file extensions have been set using the **+libext** option. The following examples show how to specify a directory path, a directory path with spaces, and how to use the **+libext** option (UNIX users should use a backslash):

```
simx model.v -y\mylibs +libext+.v
simx model.v -y"\My Libraries" +libext+.v
```

+define+macroname

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Define a macro name with a blank value for use in conditional compilation. For example:

```
+define+mymacro
```

+define+macroname[=macrovalue]

Define a macro name as a string. For example: +define+mymacro=1

Note: Simx automatically predefines a macro called **__syncad**. This macro can be used by user code to conditionally compile simx-specific source code. For example, to conditionally compile code that creates a btim dump file:

```
`ifdef __syncad
initial begin
  $btim_dumpfile("mysim.btim")
  $btim_AddDumpSignal("top");
  end
`endif
```

+tcl+filename

Read TCL simulator control commands from a file.

--work <worklib>

Specifies the destination library name (3rd party documentation sometimes refers to this as the "working library"). If this option is not specified, the compiler will store compilation results to a default destination library called **work**. If no directory mapping is specified for **work** in the **scd.lib** file that normally defines library to directory mappings, a sub-directory called **scd_work** will be created in the current directory and **work** will be mapped to this new directory. See 2.10 Compiled Libraries 47 for more details.

Specifying the HDL language of source files

To compile a source file properly, the compiler must determine what language the source file is written in. You can explicitly specify how to compile sets of files using a language option: --scd_systemverilog, --scd_verilog, and --scd_vhdl.

--scd_verilog <filename list>: compile files in file list as Verilog files.

--scd_vhdl <filename list>: compile files in file list as VHDL files.

--scd_systemverilog <filename list>: compile files in file list as SystemVerilog files.

Default language determination using source file extension

If the language of a file isn't directly specified using one of the above language options, then by default, the simulator will attempt to determine the language of the file using the file's extension: source files with a .vhd or .vhdl extension are treated as VHDL files, source files with a .sv extension are compiled as SystemVerilog files, and source files having a .v extension are compiled as Verilog files. Also by default, any file with an unrecognized extension will be compiled as a Verilog file.

Overriding language determination to compile files as SystemVerilog files

+sv: If you compile with the +sv option, all files will be compiled as SystemVerilog files, except files that are explicitly specified in an --scd_verilog or --scd_vhdl option's file list.

Examples of source file language determination

Source files passed as explicit arguments of the options --scd_verilog/--scd_vhdl/--scd_systemverilog always compile as the specified language. These options accepts one or more filename arguments that must immediately follow the option. Below are some examples of how these options and the +sv option

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

interact:

```
simx32 --scd_vhdl a.v b.v +linedebug
```

The above compiles both files as VHDL, even though they have a Verilog extension.

```
simx32 --scd_vhdl a.v +linedebug b.v
```

The above will compile ***a.v*** as VHDL and ***b.v*** as Verilog (implicitly determined from .v file extension), because the +linedebug option lies between the file names.

```
simx32 --scd_vhdl a.v +linedebug b.v +sv
```

The above will compile ***a.v*** as VHDL (because of the --scd_vhdl option) and ***b.v*** as SystemVerilog (because the +sv option says any file whose language isn't explicitly specified should be compiled as a SystemVerilog file).

5.5 Simx: Compiler/Elaborator

By default, simx compiles, elaborates, and runs a simulation snapshot in one step. In this mode, the options for each of these stages can be passed together to simx. But simx can be run as a two-step tool, compiling source files into a library in one step and elaborating a simulation snapshot in a separate step.

Running Simx in "Compile-Only" Mode to Compile Cells

Skipping the elaboration stage can be useful if you just want to use the simulator to check the files for correct syntax. To compile files into a compiled library without creating a simulation snapshot (i.e. to run simx in "compile-only" mode), use the **+compile** option.

For example, to compile two files test1.v and test2.v which contain the definitions of models named mod1 and mod2, type:

```
simx --work mylib +compile test1.v test2.v
```

The cells mod1 and mod2 inside files test1.v and test2.v will be added to the library mylib, but mod1 and mod2 will not be elaborated and no snapshot will be created in mylib.

By comparison, if you had typed:

```
simx --work mylib test1.v test2.v
```

the compile and elaboration of the design would both be performed, so mod1 and mod2 would be elaborated and a snapshot named after the first top-level module found in these files (mod1) would also be created in mylib. Next, **simxloader** would be launched to run the snapshot. So with this command, the design would be compiled, elaborated, and simulated in one step.

Running Simx in "Elaborate-Only" Mode to Create a Snapshot

Running Simx in elaborate-only mode can be useful if you have previously compiled source code files into a compiled library with multiple top-level models, some of which you want to now elaborate to create one or more snapshots. Since the source files have already been compiled into cells, there's no need to compile them again.

To run simx in elaborate-only mode, simply specify the desired top-level models for the snapshot, without specifying any source code files to compile.

For example, to elaborate mod2 from the example discussed above and create a snapshot called mod2, type:

```
simx --work mylib --scd_top mod2 --scd_nosim
```

The --scd_nosim option prevents the elaborator from launching simxloader to run the newly built mod2 snapshot. To run the mod2 snapshot later, the simxloader command-line tool can be executed as a separate command:

```
simxloader -r mylib.mod2
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Simx Elaboration-Specific Command-Line Options

Below is a list of the mostly commonly-used elaboration options to simx.

--scd_top [unitname]

Specifies a top-level instance to elaborate. This is equivalent to right clicking on a module in the Project window and choosing **Set as Top Level Instance** from the context menu menu (see Chapter 1: Step 6: Build the Project and Set the Top 18). This command can be used multiple times to select multiple components to elaborate as top-level instances in a snapshot. By default, all uncontained modules in a regular source file are elaborated as top-level modules. The following example will elaborate exactly two top-level instances, one called mytop1 and one called mytop2, into a snapshot called mytop1 in the **work** library:

```
simx64 --scd_top mytop1 --scd_top mytop2
```

+name+<snapshot_name>

Use the specified name when creating the simulation snapshot. If this option is not specified, the snapshot will be named after the first top-level module elaborated.

--scd_nosim

Generate a simulation snapshot, but do not start the simulation. The simulation can later be started by running simxloader from the command line.

--work [worklib]

Specify the working library where the compilation and elaboration will be performed. This is the first place cell definitions will be searched during elaboration and the newly created snapshot will be placed in this library. If this option is not used, the default library called **work** will be used for elaboration.

--scd_libmap_file [library_map_file]

Specify a library map file that define mappings to compiled libraries used by a design. If this option is specified multiple times, only the last map file specified is used. This option must be used to tell simx the location of any compiled library whose mapping is not contained in the global mapping file (global_mappings.lib) or in the default local library mapping file (scd.lib in the current working directory). See sections 2.10 and 5.13 for more details on creating and using compiled libraries.

--scd_global_libmap_file [library_map_file]

Use a different global libmap file (if this command is not specified, the default global map file (located in %LOCALAPPDATA%\Synapticad\global_mappings.lib) will be used. This option is similar to using the --scd_libmap_file option described above, but the global map file is "read-only", so no mappings will be created in it. Note that if multiple global libmap files are specified, only the last one specified is used. So at most, two map files can be specified on the command line: one "read-only" global one and one "writable" local one, although other map files can be included indirectly from these two map files.

Simx C++ Compilation-Specific Options:

Near the end of design elaboration, the elaborator will launch a C++ compiler to compile the snapshot. The options below affect how this C++ compilation is performed:

--scd_cleanup_objs

This performs a cleanup of the C++ object generated files from a simulation build. This is primarily useful for reclaiming space when finished working with a simulation.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

--scd_jobs=n

Compile simulation executable with n jobs. Default value is 0 which sets the number of jobs to the number of processor cores. For example, on a dual core both processors will be used by default to compile the simulation executable as quickly as possible. To reduce the load on a dual core machine, n could be set to 1 to keep one processor free.

--scd_usemake

Use make as the build tool. By default, simx uses Scons as the build tool, as Scons will typically reduce the amount of files that need to be recompiled after edits of the HDL source code.

5.6 Debug and Logging Options

These options control debugging and logging capabilities available during simulation. By default, many debugging capabilities are disabled when running from the command line simulator to ensure maximum runtime performance. When simx is run from the BugHunter graphical interface, many of these options are enabled to allow features such as single-step debugging and watching net values.

+access[+][-]access_specification

Sets the visibility access for all objects such as nets and variables in the simulation for PLI/VPI (also required when using the debugger). The **access_specification** options are **r** (read access), **w** (write access), **c** (connectivity access), and **f** (allow value forcing access). Use the **plus** sign to turn on the specified access. Use the **minus** sign to turn off the specified access. If no plus or minus sign is used, + is the default. By default, objects do not have read, write, connectivity, or force access, so the default operation is **+access-rwcf**.

Note: Objects that are given write access are also given read access. Objects that are given connectivity access are also given write access, and, therefore, read access.

Examples:

- Read access only: **+access+r**
- Write access: **+access+w** (this also enables +r)
- Force access: **+access+f**
- Read/Force access: **access +r+f**
- Read/Write/Connectivity access: **+access +r+w+c**
- You can also use multiple +access options: **+access +r +access -w**

+afile+accessfilename

Use the specified file, *accessfilename*, to set the visibility access for particular instances or portions of a design. You can also use the +access option to specify global visibility access for all objects in the design.

+append_log

Append log information from multiple runs of simx into one log file. Use this option if you are going to run simx multiple times and you want all the log information in one log file. If you do not use this option, the log file is overwritten each time you run simx. If you use both +append_log and +nolog on the command line, +nolog overrides +append_log.

+linedebug

Enable line debugging capabilities (for example, single stepping with a debugger).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

+nostdout

Turn off output to the screen (terminal).

+scd_dbgsymbols

Generates symbolic information for all HDL objects from simulated design.

+scd_msg_enable+msg_level=0|1

Enables or disables printing messages at the specified message level. The allowed msg_levels are: +failure, +error, +warning, +note, +diagnostic.

5.7 Specify Block and SDF Timing Options

Below is a discussion of the timing-related command line build options. For a full description of these options, please consult the Specify blocks chapter of the Verilog LRM.

Simx supports two methods of pulse filtering: On-Event and On-Detect. On-event filters pulses so that transitions to and from X occur after the delay for the originally scheduled transition and the new output state respectively. On-Detect is more conservative; it filters pulses so that the transition to the X state occurs immediately on detection of the pulse error. This X state then remains until the originally calculated delay for the new output state.

The On-Detect method allows more pessimism when filtering pulses to the X state, producing a longer X region. On-Detect filtering allows for a better understanding of the outputs caused by two or more changing inputs that result in output scheduling conflicts, but has more impact on simulation speed and yields more pessimistic results.

The next two options below control which method of pulse-filtering is used:

+epulse_ondetect

Enables On-Detect filtering of error pulses. This option extends the e state back to the edge of the event that caused the pulse to occur. See section 5.12 for the differences between on-detect and on-event pulse filtering.

+epulse_onevent

Enables On-Event filtering of error pulses. See section 5.12 for the differences between on-detect and on-event pulse filtering.

+epulse_neg

Filter canceled events (negative pulses) to the e state. This option makes canceled events visible. Using this option overrides any showcancelled and noshowcancelled settings in specify blocks.

+epulse_noneg

Do not filter canceled events (negative pulses) to the e state. Using this option overrides any showcancelled and noshowcancelled settings in specify blocks.

+notimingchecks

Do not execute timing checks

+notchkmsg

Do not display timing check warning messages.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

+no_notifier

Ignore notifiers in timing checks.

+nospecify

Ignores timing checks, path delays, and $sdf_annotate calls.

+pathpulse

Enable PATHPULSE$ declarations. These declarations set the module path pulse control on a specific module or on specific paths within modules.

+mindelays, +typdelays, +maxdelays

Selects minimum, typical, or maximum delays for simulation. +typdelays is the default option. If more than one of these flags is specified, only the last will be used.

Pulse and Reject Percentage Options

To maintain compatibility with other simulators, the pulse options specify the flag name and a percentage separated by a **/** rather than a space (e.g. **+pulse_e/10**).

+pulse_e/*error_percent*

Set the percentage of delay for the pulse error limit for both module paths and interconnect. In Cadence ncsim, this option applies only to module paths if the -pulse_int_e option is also used. To achieve the same timing using simx, use instead the +pulse_path_e option described in the ModelSim-compatibility section below.

+pulse_r/*reject_percent*

Sets the percentage of delay for the pulse reject limit for both module paths and interconnect. In Cadence ncsim, this option applies only to module paths if the -pulse_int_r option is also used. To achieve the same timing using simx, use instead the +pulse_path_r option described in the ModelSim-compatibility section below.

+pulse_int_e/*error_percent*

Sets the percentage of delay for the pulse error limit only for interconnects.

+pulse_int_r/*reject_percent*

Sets the percentage of delay for the pulse reject limit only for interconnects.

Flags for ModelSim-Compatible Timing

+pulse_path_e/*error_percent*

Sets the percentage of delay for the pulse error limit only for specify paths.

+pulse_path_r/*reject_percent*

Sets the percentage of delay for the pulse reject limit only for specify paths.

+transport_path_delays

Specify path delays will operate as transport delays (shorter pulses will be propagated).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

5.8 Overriding Parameter Value Options

The following three simx options allow the values of parameters in your source files to be overridden at compile time. These options support both absolute paths to a particular parameter and relative paths that match to all instances in the design hierarchy. If an option has an invalid value literal or wasn't found in the hierarchy, a warning message will be issued.

-gparameter_path=value

Overrides the parameter value only if it is not overridden in the source by a parameter mapping or a defparam (i.e. this option will only override the initial value of the parameter).

-Gparameter_path=value

+defparam+parameter_path=value

The above two options are equivalent. These two options always override the parameter value (and blocks other value sources such as Verilog defparams and parameter mappings).

5.9 Loading a PLI application

PLI applications can be used to add functionality to the simulator. PLI applications can be provided by a third-party vendor or you may wish to write your own. See Section 2.11 Using VPI applications to interface to the simulator 50 for an example of how to write a VPI-based PLI application.

Note that using either of the options documented below will also implicitly enable the **+access+w+r** option as these are needed for correct operation of most pli/vpi applications. If your application uses **vpi_put_value()** with the **vpiForceFlag**, you will also need to enable object forcing using the option **+access+f**.

+loadpli1=pli_shared_lib_name:boot_function_name[,boot_function_name ...]

Dynamically load the specified PLI application and optionally specify a boot_function that will execute when the simulation is started. The argument to this option is the name or full path of the shared library that contains the PLI application followed by the name of the function or functions that registers the new system tasks. This function, called the boot function, is part of the PLI application, and is defined in the shared library. Any number of applications can be loaded in the same statement by separating the names of the bootstrap functions with a comma. No spaces are allowed in the argument. The file extension of the shared library is optional.

As an example, to load the shared library syncadverilogx.dll, execute the boot function register_default_tasks, then execute the boot function register_syncad_tasks, use the following option to simx or simxloader:

```
+loadpli1=syncadverilogx.dll:register_default_tasks,register_syncad_tasks
```

+loadvpi=vpi_shared_lib_name

Dynamically load the specified VPI application.

5.10 Simx Miscellaneous Options

This section contains miscellaneous command line options to simx that do not fit into any of the previous categories.

+protect

Processes the given source files and generates Verilog-2005 protected envelopes. For each input file

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

filename.v, it will generate a new source file *filename.vp* containing the source file with the marked sections encrypted. You must use ***`pragma*** protect directives in the input file to delimit which portions should be encrypted and which sections should remain plain text. When the ***+protect*** option is specified, simulation will not be done. See 6.2 Verilog Protected Envelopes (Encrypted Models) 110 for more details.

+version

Displays simulator version number.

5.11 Simxloader: Simulator

Simxloader loads and runs a simulation snapshot (a compiled simulation). Below is a complete list of the options can be passed to simxloader to control how the simulation is run. Note that all these options can also be passed to simx when simx is being used to automatically run simxloader.

Usage:

```
simxloader [options]...
```

Supported Dash options:

-h

Print this help message

-l <filename>

Set log file name

-s

Enter interactive mode immediately

-f <filename>

Read command line arguments from file

-r <snapshot>

Load specified simulation snapshot

-R

Load recent snapshot

--scd_msg_enable <msg_level>=0|1

Enables or disables printing messages at specified msg_level. Accepted msg_levels:

- failure,
- error,
- warning,
- note,
- diagnostic

--scd_ncsimliketchkmsg

Prints timing violation messages in NCSim format.

--scd_no_prefix

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Allows to avoid printing a `SIM: ' prefix before simulator stdout output

--scd_source_info_at_reference

Properties accessed with vpiFile and vpiLineNo are taken from reference expressions. By default these properties are taken from referenced objects declarations.

--scd_source_info_at_declaration

Properties accessed with vpiFile and vpiLineNo are taken from referenced objects. Overrides prior --scd_source_info_at_reference.

--scd_max_delta=<limit>

By default, simulation will be interrupted if more than a 1000 iterations occur during a single time step. This limit can be changed using the --sdc_max_delta=<limit> option where limit is a the number of iterations. If +linedebug is enabled, the simulator will print the location where the last process executed prior to the interrupt. The simulation can be continued from the interruption using a run command, if desired.

Options changing event queue order: (supports race detection)

--scd_invert_queue

Inverts default order of executed processes. May impact performance negatively .

--scd_randomize_queue

Randomizes default order of executed processes. May impact performance negatively.

Modelsim compatibility options:

--scd_mtilike_queue

Executes events in similar order as Modelsim does.

+mti_compat

Enables all Modelsim compatibility options listed above.

Supported plus options:

+append_log

Append the log to an existing logfile

+loadpli1=<arg>

Specify the library_name:boot_routine(s) to dynamically load a PLI1.0 application

+loadvpi=<arg>

Specify the library_name(s) to dynamically load a VPI application

+nostdout

Turn off output to screen(terminal)

+tcl+<file>

Read TCL commands from file

+version

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Prints the version number

+nocopyright

Suppress printing of copyright/version information

5.12 Simxloader Race Detection Options

If your design works on one simulator but is failing with another simulator, a race condition is a likely cause of the error. Races can occur in Verilog simulations because the Verilog Language does not fully specify event ordering between concurrent processes in a design, so this ordering will vary vary between simulators. This was intentional, as a valid design should not rely on a particular ordering of these events, but it's very easy to introduce a race in a design if Verilog coding standards aren't strictly followed.

When you want to check for race conditions in your code, VeriLogger supports several options that can be used to change the event queue order. If your design passes with one ordering, but fails with another, this indicates there is probably a race condition in your design. If this happens, the optional waveform comparison feature can be useful in pinpointing the location of the race condition.

Options changing event queue order (supports race detection):

--scd_invert_queue

Inverts default order of executed processes.This option may negatively impact simulation speed, so it should only be used when checking for races.

--scd_randomize_queue

Randomizes default order of executed processes. This option may negatively impact performance, so it should only be used when checking for races.

--scd_mtilike_queue

Executes events in similar order as ModelSim does. This option is particularly useful if you have a design that passed on ModelSim and is failing on other simulators and you're trying to determine if the problem is a race.

Modelsim-compatibility options:

+mti_compat

Enables all three ModelSim compatibility options (*--scd_mtilike_dist_functions*, *--scd_mtilike_queue*, *--scd_immediate_sensitivity*).

--scd_immediate_sensitivity

Makes Verilog event control statements at the beginning of a process immediately sensitive after simulation initialization. This option will generally be used in combination with the *--scd_mtilike_queue*, in order to match ModelSim's operation as close as possible.

An example of an event control at the beginning of a process is a statement like:

```
always @(posedge CLK)
```

--scd_mtilike_dist_functions

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Enables ModelSim compatibility for the Verilog system functions that control random number distribution ($dist_ functions).

5.13 Simxlib: Compiled Library Utility

Simxlib is a command-line utility program that enables viewing and editing the contents of symbolic libraries (compiled libraries). Either Simxlib or BugHunter must be used to create any symbolic library other than the work library. For example, if you wish to write a batch script that creates a common symbolic library to store compiled source code that is used by multiple design projects, you can use simxlib to create the physical library and specify the symbolic name for that library. An example script called **make_xilinx_libs.pl** that compiles Xilinx's Verilog libraries using simxlib and simx is documented at the end of this section.

Simxlib can perform the following library operations:

- Create physical libraries (physical representation of a compiled HDL library on disk)
- Delete physical libraries
- Map an existing physical library to one or more symbolic library names
- Unmap symbolic libraries
- List all symbolic to physical library mappings defined in a mapping file

Library Mapping Files

Simxlib reads/modifies a 'mapping file' (text file) as it performs the above operations. Mapping files are text files used by simx to map from the logical names of libraries to their physical path locations during design elaboration. Library mappings and include statements can also be manually added to mapping files using a text editor.

Simxlib operates only on a mapping file explicitly-specified using the **--map_file** option or the implicitly-specified **scd.lib** file located in the current working directory. If the specified mapping file doesn't exist, it is created when any option is passed to simxlib that requires writing to the mapping file. Only a mapping file directly passed via the command line (or the implicit scd.lib file if no mapping file is specified) can be potentially modified. Mapping files referenced by INCLUDE/SOFTINCLUDE statements are always opened in real-only mode by simxlib.

Simxlib has the following command line options:

-f <filename>

This allows options to be passed to simxlib from inside a text file (like in simx and simxloader).

--map_file <path>

Specifies a path to a mapping file to be read/modified by simxlib. If the specified mapping file doesn't already exist, simxlib will create it. If this option is omitted, simxlib will use **scd.lib** as the name of the mapping file.

--map (-m) <symbolicName> <path>

Creates a symbolic library name that maps to a physical library located at 'path'. Any existing library mapping having the same symbolic library name will be replaced by the new mapping. If there is no physical library at the given path location, a warning will be printed and the mapping will be skipped.

--unmap (-u) <symbolicName>

Removes the library mapping associated with the specified symbolic library. If no mapping exists, a

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

warning is printed.

--create (-c) <path>

Creates a new physical library and creates a library mapping with the symbolic library name taken from the last part of the physical library path.

--delete (-d) <path>

Physically removes (erases from disk) the specified physical library. All library mappings leading to the physical library are removed too.

--list

Prints all mappings defined in the specified mapping file (and in files included by this mapping file).

--dump [library_name]

Dump library_name contents to the console. If no symbolic library name is specified, the contents of the default **work** library will be displayed. To work properly, make sure this is the last option passed to simxlib.

-l [logfile]

Log the results of simxlib operations to a logfile.

+append_log

Append the log results to the end of the logfile specified by -l option.

--help (-h)

Displays command-line options for simxlib.

Simxlib's Global Mapping File

By default, Simx and Simxlib will always try to read a special library map file called **global_mappings.lib** in **%LOCALAPPDATA%\SynaptiCAD**. This map file is primarily intended to be used for storing mappings to 3rd party ASIC/FPGA libraries that should not be modified by the user. For example, the script discussed below uses this map file by default to store the locations of the Xilinx Verilog libraries it compiles.

Pre-compiling Xilinx's Verilog libraries (using Simxlib and Simx)

BugHunter ships with a perl script for compiling Xilinx's verilog libraries into compiled libraries that can be used across multiple designs, saving the step of recompiling these libraries for each new design. Note: This script is for Verilogger Extreme users, so if you are using a different simulator with BugHunter, you will need to follow that simulator's instructions for creating/using a compiled library.

Before you run the script, you must install Xilinx's ISE tools which contain the Verilog source files to compile. Next, to build the compiled library, open a DOS command prompt and type the following commands:

```
cd synapticad\bin\win32
perl make_xilinx_libs.pl c:\xilinx\14.4\ise_ds\ise\verilog\src
```

Note that the argument to the script needs to reflect the actual location where you installed Xilinx ISE on your system (the example above assumes the default location where ISE 14.4 installs the Verilog source libraries). The compiled libraries will be stored in %LOCALAPPDATA%\SynaptiCAD\xilinx and the mappings will be put in the **global_mappings.lib** file.

With minor modifications, this script could also be used to compile libraries from other ASIC/FPGA vendors.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Pre-Compiling the Xilinx libraries to a non-default location

If you would prefer to build the compiled libraries in a different location such as c:\xlibs, you can pass an additional argument to **make_xilinx_libs.pl** to specify where to store the compiled libraries and where to place the map file that points to the compiled libraries. For example:

```
perl make_xilinx_libs.pl c:\xilinx\14.4\ise_ds\ise\verilog\src c:\xlibs
```

In this case, c:\xlibs will contain each physical library (e.g. unisim, simprims, XilinxCoreLib, etc.) and a map file (**c:\xlibs\scd.lib)** will be created (instead of using the default global_mappings.lib as the previous example did).

Using a Xilinx Compiled Library in your Design

To use a Xilinx compiled library in your design, simply add an appropriate -L option for the library. For example, to compile a design that instantiates Xilinx's unisim primitives when you built the Xilinx libraries to their default location, compile the file like this:

```
simx -L unisim mydesign.v
```

Note: If you built the libraries to a non-default location, you will also need to tell the simulator where the map file is located (since the mappings are not stored in the global_mappings.lib file in this case). For example, if you built the libraries to c:\xlibs, use a command like:

```
simx --scd_global_libmap_file c:\xlibs\scd.lib -L unisim mydesign.v
```

Simx will add new mappings to the local map file when the --work option is specified with a logical library name that is not defined in either the global or local lib map file. In the example above, we used the option **--scd_global_libmap_file** so that the map file is "read-only" and any new mappings required will be written to the local default map file (./scd.lib) in the current working directory instead. However, we could also have used the option **--scd_libmap_file** c:\xlibs\scd.lib, in which case simx would treat the map file as a local map file, so any new mappings would be added to it and ./scd.lib would not be accessed).

Using Xilinx Compiled Library with the BugHunter GUI

When using the BugHunter GUI, the -L option needs to be added to the Project Simulation Properties dialog:

- Select the **Project> Project Simulation Options** menu to open the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog.
- In this dialog, select the **Verilog** tab.
- Add the following option to the **Elaborator** option list:

  ```
  -L unisim
  ```
- This tells the simulator to search the symbolic library called unisim for xilinx library primitives.

5.14 VeriLogger Pro tools: Vlogcmd

Vlogcmd (old VeriLogger Pro) is an interpreted simulator. When **vlogcmd** starts, it reads the source models, compiles them into internal data structures, and then executes them from these structures. The structures contain enough information that the source can be reproduced from the structures (minus formatting and comments.)

While the model is running, the simulation can be interrupted at any time by pressing **<Ctrl>+C**. This puts the simulator in an interactive command mode. From here VeriLogger commands and Verilog statements can be entered to debug, modify, or control the course of the simulation.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Command Line Options specific to vlogcmd

- Trace, **-t** enables a tracing mode that returns a trace history of each line executed into the log file.

```
simx -t cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

  - Log filename, **-l <log filename>** changes the name of the log file that contains all output generated during a simulation. By default, the log file is called **verilog.log**.

```
simx -l mylog.log -c cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

  - No log, **-l nolog** disables the log file.

```
simx -l nolog -c cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

  -

- Compile only, **-c** compiles the source code and exits without performing a simulation.

```
vlogcmd -c cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

  - Key filename, **-k <key filename>** changes the name of the key file that contains a log of all keystrokes entered during the simulation run. By default, the key file is called **verilog.key**.

```
vlogcmd -k mykey.key -c cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

  - No Key, **-k nokey** disables the key file.

```
vlogcmd -k nokey -c cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

- Interactive Command filename, **-i <filename.vi>** allows the simulator to accept interactive commands from a file. Any legal interactive mode command can be included in the interactive command file. The file is submitted to the simulator before the simulation begins and starts to execute as soon as the simulator enters an interactive simulation mode. Therefore the **-i** command must be paired with a statement that stops the simulator and enters the interactive mode. There are two ways to do this:
  - Use the **-s** option to stop VeriLogger and enter the interactive mode before execution begins,
  - OR, embed the **$stop** system task into a Verilog source code file and use it with a delay to stop the system at a later time. For example, assume the file **cpu.v** contains the following code fragment to stop the system 1000 time units after the simulation begins:

```
#1000 $stop;
```

  This file is submitted with the following command:

```
simx -i interactive.vi cpu.v memory.v io.v
```

Compilation Process

VeriLogger uses a three-phase compilation process:

- **Phase 1:** The files are read and converted into an internal data structure. Syntax errors and semantic errors regarding undeclared variables or illegal use of variables are reported in this phase.
- **Phase 2:** In this phase the model hierarchy is built, module ports are connected, and storage for variables is allocated. If any module is instantiated more than once, its structure is copied as many times as needed. Also, module parameters are propagated. Errors reported in this phase deal with missing modules, irregularities of the parameters, and out-of-memory errors during the allocation. The project tree is built during this phase.
- **Phase 3:** The entire structure is re-parsed during which time-forward references to tasks and functions are resolved, hierarchical names are resolved, and expression sizes are determined. Errors detected in this phase include semantic errors dealing with hierarchical references that could not be detected in Phase 1, illegal references to functions and tasks, port size discrepancies, and illegal expression sizes.

Note: Most memory is allocated in the first two phases of the compilation.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

User-Defined Primitives and Memory Usage

User-Defined Primitives (UDPs) are used to define combinatorial primitives and two-state devices. In VeriLogger, UDPs are optimized for performance. This is accomplished by creating a table in memory for each UDP definition. Only one such table is used for each UDP definition; every instance of the definition uses the same table. When there are more than six inputs, the size of the table is very large. For this reason, the maximum number of inputs is ten (nine for state UDPs). The maximum table size is approximately 256K.

Notes on Using Specify Blocks

Specify blocks are used to define pin-to-pin timings and setup-and-hold checks. In VeriLogger, specify blocks function similarly to those described in the Verilog Language Reference Manual. However, there are some differences. In VeriLogger, there is no concept of expanded nets. Nets that are defined as vectors are not split into individual nets and cannot have their own timing information. Therefore, certain combinations of timing specifications will be ignored. Specifically, there are two ways to describe module paths. One is the parallel case (=>), and the other is the full case (*>). In VeriLogger, both cases are treated as if they were defined as the parallel case. This does not pertain to scalar nets. VeriLogger supports all of the defined setup and hold systems tasks.

IEEE-1364 LRM Standardization

Except for the following discrepancies, VeriLogger behaves exactly as specified by the IEEE-1364 LRM and Verilog-XL standards.

Port Collapsing

In certain versions of Verilog, if two nets are connected together via a port, the port is **collapsed** (combined to form one net). In VeriLogger, module ports are connected using transparent continuous assignments. If a register is connected to a net, then the port propagation does not occur immediately after the port changes. Instead, the port propagation is scheduled for later in the same simulation time. However, when a net is connected to a net, then a collapsed port is emulated by forcing the propagation to occur instantly. The effect of this implementation does not affect the functionality of the model being simulated, but becomes visible during trace.

Port Connections of Different Net Types

VeriLogger does not check the legality of the connections of different net types in the hierarchy. For example, if a parent module instantiates a child module, and the net on the parent's side of a port is a **tri1** while the net on the child's side of a port is a **tri0**, an oscillation will result. To use **tri1**, **tri0**, **triand**, and **trior** as ports effectively in VeriLogger, they should be declared only in the top-most level in the hierarchy. All lower-level connections should be declared as **wire** or **tri**.

Working Around Pullup/Pulldown Gates

When modeling an open-collector bus, a common technique is to have a **pullup** or **pulldown** gate drive a **wire** net and have drivers pull the bus in the opposite direction with a greater strength when asserting a signal. In VeriLogger, drive strengths are not implemented. Therefore, this technique will generate an unknown value (X) when a driver attempts to drive a signal in the opposite direction as the pull. The preferred method for modeling open-collector buses is to use the **triand** nets for pullup buses, and the **trior** nets for pulldown buses. This net type should only appear in the highest level of the hierarchy in which the bus exists.

Using Trace Implementation

Trace is an indispensable tool for debugging Verilog programs. It displays each statement as it is executed, as well as any results returned from the statement. There are three ways to enable a trace:

1) Specify the **-t** option at the command line.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

2) Execute the system task **$settrace** from either the program or the interactive command line.

3) Execute and trace a single statement by entering a comma (,) at the interactive command line. Enter multiple commas to execute the respective number of statements.

If a model uses continuous assignments or ports, VeriLogger displays the activation of these as part of the trace as soon as the activation occurs. For example, given the continuous assignment **assign test = bar;** when bar changes, the continuous assignment is executed immediately and displayed in the trace. The continuous assignment represents one of possibly many drivers to the net **test**; the net itself is scheduled for updating for sometime later in the current simulation time unit.

Because port connections are implemented as continuous assignments it may take several steps for a signal to propagate from an output port to an input port, especially in cases where there are several ports connected to a net. Trace shows part of this propagation. A signal emanating from an output port travels upward to its parent module; it then travels back down to other connected ports. Each time a signal reaches a new port, the net connected to that port is evaluated and the results are displayed in the trace.

Predefined Macro __VERIWELL__

The macro **__VERIWELL__** is predefined so that statements such as:

```
`ifdef __VERIWELL__
```

are used for VeriLogger-specific code, such as for waveform display.

Simulation Statistics

The non-standard system task, **$showstats**, displays statistics about the current simulation, including the amount of memory used and available. Some of the information is provided for diagnostic purposes only.

Displaying the Location of the Last Value Edited

The **$showvars** system task optionally displays the current location in the module and the simulation time at which the module variables were last changed. This information is updated even if the value did not change (that is the new data is the same as the old data). Tracking this update information may affect the performance of the simulation slightly. If this is a problem, this feature can be disabled with the **+noshow_var_change** command line option.

User Interrupt

Pressing **<Ctrl>+C**, **COMMAND+C**, or **<Ctrl>+BREAK** (in MS-DOS) during simulation will put the command line version of VeriLogger into interactive mode. Pressing any of these during compilation will halt the process and exit to the operating system.

Implementation Differences from XL

This section describes the differences between the way VeriLogger works and the way Verilog-XL works. Note that these differences are subtle and will not affect the execution of well-written Verilog models.

Event Ordering

The order of event scheduling and execution is consistent with Verilog-XL in every extent possible. The reason for doing this is not so that models are guaranteed to work under both VeriLogger and Verilog- XL but rather because VeriLogger was designed so that users can trace models in both VeriLogger and in Verilog- XL with little noticeable difference. However, it should be noted that models that depend on the order of execution are considered to be unwisely written because they reflect race conditions and may perform unpredictably in other vendors' Verilog, or even in future releases of VeriLogger (or Verilog- XL). In some cases, the order of net scheduling may be different. This is

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

because Verilog- XL schedules nets differently depending on the type of net, whether it is sourced by a continuous assignment, a net assignment, or a port, and whether a port is collapsed. In most cases, net scheduling will track that of Verilog- XL.

Module Ports and Port Collapsing

Port connections are implemented as continuous assignments in VeriLogger. Rules for port connections are similar to those of Verilog-XL, but there are some differences. In Verilog-XL, under certain circumstances, ports are **collapsed**, that is, if each side is a net, then one of the nets disappears and only one is used. This is a performance enhancement. VeriLogger emulates port collapsing by immediately propagating values across ports that have been **collapsed**. This is unlike Verilog-XL, which actually combines nets that have been collapsed. Verilog-XL will expand vector nets into arrays of scalar nets if a port connects two different sized nets, or if one or both sides are concatenations or part selects. VeriLogger does not implement expansion of nets, so it could not handle these cases by building continuous assignments. VeriLogger will **collapse** a port if both sides of a port are scalar nets or if both sides are vector nets. Therefore, there are some cases when VeriLogger will not collapse a port, but where Verilog-XL will. This may cause a disparity in the way nets are scheduled in the two simulators.

Control Expressions are Limited to 32 Bits

Expressions used by VeriLogger for control are limited to 32 bits. This includes repeat counts, delay values, part- and bit-select and array index expressions, and shift counts. A compile-time error will result if the expression attempts to evaluate a number greater than 32 bits.

The $monitor System Task

Unlike Verilog-XL, the $monitor system task will be triggered if any variable in the argument list changes. In Verilog-XL, $monitor changes only when an argument expression changes. For example, in Verilog-XL the following statement will not be triggered if both a and b changes, and the sum stays the same. In VeriLogger, the statement will be triggered if both a and b change in this case.

```
$monitor (a + b);
```

5.15 Vlogcmd Simulator Control Commands

In addition to the standard Verilog commands, there are also several vlogcmd specific commands that can be used to control the simulation:

- To ***continue*** the simulation, type the period (**.**) character.
- To ***step*** to the next statement in the code, type the semicolon (**;**) character.
- To ***step-and-trace*** to step to the next statement in the code and generate a trace message in the **verilog.log** file type the comma (**,**) character.
- To ***display the current code line*** execution, type the colon (**:**) character.
- To ***terminate*** the simulation, type the **$finish;** command, or press **<Ctrl>+C**.

5.16 Vlogcmd Predefined Plus Options

The VeriLogger simulator supports the following Verilog run time simulation options:

+maxdelays | +mindelays |+typdelays determines which delay used in the **min:typ:max** expressions. In the graphical simulator this command is set using the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu option. In the command line simulator add the option to the command line:

```
vlogcmd cpu.v memory.v io.v +mindelays
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

+define+<macro name>+<macros name> ... defines macro names from the command line, generally for use with conditional compilation directives. Any number of macros can be defined by adding another +<macro name> to the list. For example, the *count.v* Verilog source code file had the following code fragment:

```
'ifdef EXTEND
     $display("Using extended mode");
'else
     $display("Using normal mode");
```

Then the following command will execute the first **display** statement:

```
vlogcmd count.v +define+EXTEND
```

+synopsys (vlogcmd only) displays warnings for constructs that are either not supported or ignored by the Synopsys HDL Compiler.

+noshow_var_change (vlogcmd only) disables the tracking of variable changes. By default, VeriLogger keeps track of the location and simulation time where variables are last written. This information can be displayed using the **$showvars** directive. This feature may cause slight performance degradation, so it can be disabled with this option.

+libext+<ext>+<ext> ... specifies the filename extension used when searching for libraries in the library directory. This is most often used with the **-y** option. The following example will search the directory \design\libs for libraries whose filename ends with **.vl** and **.vv**:

```
vlogcmd cpu.v -y \design\libs +libext+.vl+.vv
```

+incdir+<directory1>+<directory2>+... specifies the directories that VeriLogger will search for included files. All the characters between the pluses are used in the directory name.

```
vlogcmd cpu.v +incdir+\design\project1+ -y \design\libs +libext+.vl+.vv
```

+loadpli1=<pli_library_name.dll>:<register_function1>, <register_function2>, ... Specifies the PLI library name that contains a list of PLI tasks and functions to execute. VeriLogger is expecting the library to contain a **s_tcell** array called **veriusertfs** that contains a list of PLI user tasks and functions. You can also group related PLI commands into register functions so that you can partially load commands from the PLI library. The register function should contain a **veriusertfs** array and return a pointer to that **veriusertfs** array. Here are some examples of using the option:

```
vlogcmd +loadpli1=myplilib.dll
vlogcmd +loadpli1=myplilib.dll:register_my_tasks
vlogcmd +loadpli1=myplilib.dll:register_my_tasks1,register_my_tasks2
```

Here is a code example of a register function containing the **veriusertfs** array:

```
s_tfcell* register_syncad_tasks()
 {
 static s_tfcell veriusertfs[30] =
   {
   /*** Template for an entry:
   { usertask|userfunction, data, checktf(), sizetf(), calltf(),
     misctf(), "$tfname", forwref?, Vtool?, ErrMsg? },
    Example:
    { usertask, 0, my_check, 0, my_func, my_misctf, "$my_task" },
     ***/
    /*** final entry must be 0 ***/
     {0}
    }
 return veriusertfs;
 }
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 6: SDF, Encrypted Models, and SmartModels

This chapter covers advanced simulation techniques that are useful when working with FPGA layout tools and FPGA encrypted models. First, VeriLogger Extreme supports SDF timing simulations. Most FPGA tools will generate an SDF timing file after placing a design and this chapter describes how to use the SDF timing during simulation. Also VeriLogger Extreme supports the two most common encrypted model support: Protected Envelopes from IEEE Standard 1364-2005 and the older SmartModel SWIFT standard.

6.1 Using a Standard Delay File (SDF)

In the initial stages of your design you will be performing "functional" simulations to ensure the logic in your circuit operates correctly. After your FPGA or ASIC tools generate a layout for your gate-level design, you may want to perform a final simulation with back-annotated timing information generated during the layout process to account for real world interconnect and gate delays. This "timing" simulation is often used as a final check to ensure that unexpected delays generated during the layout process don't create timing violations in your design. The layout tools will create a Standard Delay File (SDF) that includes this timing information. By including this timing information, the model can be tested based upon these propagation delays. Note, this type of timing simulation is often unnecessary if you use a static timing analysis tool to verify the critical paths in your design meet the timing constraints of your design.

Including an SDF file using VeriLogger

An SDF can be produced for any module in the hierarchy of your project. For example, if you are modeling a board-level design that contains an FPGA, your FPGA tools will probably produce an SDF file for the laid out gate level model of the FPGA. To include the timing from this file into your design, add an **$sdf_annotate** command in the FPGA module whose timing is to be modified. Include the bolded lines in the example FPGA module shown below to tell the simulator to read the SDF timing information:

```
module MyFPGA(ports…)
//port declarations…
initial
    begin
    $sdf_annotate("mydesign.sdf");
    end
//other code…
endmodule
```

(Note: If you have an **initial** block already in the module to be annotated, you can include the **$sdf_annotate** line in the existing block. Also note that **"mydesign.sdf"** shown above should be replaced with whatever filename your tool generated. The file extension **.sdf** should be used.)

Annotating with Multiple SDF files

More than one SDF file can be annotated. Each call to the **$sdf_annotate** task annotates the design with timing information from an SDF file. Annotated values either modify (INCREMENT) or overwrite (ABSOLUTE) values from earlier SDF files. Different regions of a design can be annotated from different SDF files by specifying the region s hierarchy scope as the second argument to **$sdf_annotate**.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

6.2 Verilog Protected Envelopes (Encrypted Models)

The Verilog 2005 standard introduced a new feature to support protected intellectual property (IP). This feature allows IP vendors to deliver models in encrypted form. Vendors may choose to encrypt entire files, or only encrypt parts of a model. More information on protected envelopes can be found in section 28 of the IEEE Standard 1364-2005. VeriLogger Extreme supports the Protected Envelopes feature of Verilog 2005. Encrypted Verilog source files traditionally have the extension .vp.

Before encrypting your source, test the unencrypted source code with VeriLogger Extreme to ensure that it compiles without errors. Since the end-user of your IP will not have access to the source code, they will be unable to fix any problems, and error messages in encrypted sections of code will be useless.

Creating a Protected Envelope

The simplest and most common way to use protected envelopes is to encrypt your source code with VeriLogger Extreme's public key. This will allow any VeriLogger Extreme user to compile and use the encrypted model by simply adding the file to their project. VeriLogger Extreme will compile and simulate using the encrypted code, but the user will not have access to any of the encrypted source code.

To create an encrypted model file, perform the following steps:

- Add **`pragma protect** directives to the source to delimit which sections to encrypt. Anything between a **`pragma protect begin** line and a **`pragma protect end** will be encrypted. Anything outside these directives will be copied verbatim to the output file. Here is a source file ***sram.v*** with the `pragma directives added to protect the contents of the sram module:

```
`timescale 1 ns/1 ps
module sram(CSB,WRB,ABUS,DBUS);

input CSB;            // active low chip select
input WRB;            // active low write control
input [11:0] ABUS;    // 12-bit address bus
inout [7:0] DBUS;     //  8-bit data bus

`pragma protect begin
reg  [7:0] DBUS_driver;
wire [7:0] DBUS = DBUS_driver;
reg [7:0] ram[0:4095];  // memory cells

integer i;
initial                 // initialize all RAM cells to 0 at startup
   begin
   DBUS_driver = 8'bzzzzzzzz;
   for (i=0; i < 4095; i = i + 1)
     ram[i] = 0;
   end

specify
  $setup(ABUS,posedge WRB,10);
endspecify

always @(CSB or WRB or ABUS)
  begin
    if (CSB == 1'b0)
      begin
      if (WRB == 1'b0) //start to sram, data will be latched in on
                       //rising edge of CSB or WRB
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
        begin
        DBUS_driver <= #10 8'bzzzzzzzz;
        @(posedge CSB or posedge WRB);
        $display($time," Writing %m ABUS=%h DATA=%h",ABUS,DBUS);
        ram[ABUS] = DBUS;
        end
      else if (WRB == 1'b1) //reading from sram (data becomes valid after 10ns)
        begin
        #10 DBUS_driver =  ram[ABUS];
        $display($time," Reading %m ABUS=%h DATA=%h",ABUS,DBUS_driver);
        end
      end
    else //sram unselected, stop driving bus after 10ns
      begin
      DBUS_driver <=  #10 8'bzzzzzzzz;
      end
  end
`pragma protect end
endmodule
```

- Next, run **simx** using the ***+protect*** command to encrypt the source file.

  `simx +protect sram.v`

- This will generate a file called sram.vp with contents like the code below. Notice that the code outside the `pragma protect directives is still readable, but the code between the directives is now encrypted:

```
`timescale 1 ns/1 ps
module sram(CSB,WRB,ABUS,DBUS);

input CSB;                // active low chip select
input WRB;                // active low write control
input [11:0] ABUS;        // 12-bit address bus
inout [7:0] DBUS;         // 8-bit data bus

`pragma protect begin_protected
`pragma protect encrypt_agent = "SynaptiCAD VeriLogger Extreme"
`pragma protect encrypt_agent_info = "13.20a"
`pragma protect data_method = "aes128-cbc"
`pragma protect key_keyowner = "SynaptiCAD"
`pragma protect key_keyname = "syncad", key_method = "rsa"
`pragma protect key_block encoding = (enctype = "base64")
K0c+W1GDd9YcMBiX3ZqvpyTdb9sTWK06w75CLxQWVrmc3L9rzWMKgZ8vZhFcBsMT
t9K7aZTd7cJidH5kbBZbCRAZmn1xvTgmkTY7OZYtejMKStrp2bweOCxNgujIrPqo
S7Sn8oFlbG9tPn7jMCdKpyWg+20EH74G9ss7MXAJey8=
`pragma protect data_block encoding = (enctype = "base64", bytes = 1059)
Y1XAstZb24qy35cVbs13JwZp8GncAXhU4FpR2dX1rBlg0zECK0A1CNN6sPhox8ty
ZJZucCjN8EE5cbAhhw16W230HmPtWM8mQu5PwIUN/Te5Cd9CJSjIGvgJWFqJStUk
a+YBiWOT3cYXjh15krCRpeZvvqdRwvfa+yY57UeLyggomvqPScSGtmnS3S+5hQur
...
yP4QT/S4ATdx2eku9kx0Sew9EVMCA69huZN1ZIfpsKQXPMvIb/DSZnsnZhlQicCK
wqPfzxcOB1x9OK5yvgaxUf6XVvW2IFk2+kLqwL5Uc5IT/BF1fRmQQh63Bo/XA6Eu
M6sxuyIlXqvHkcZROqkyg52e/pq6yaVd0JvXkQBlaIdaa5Ebu4WkBWkPtk368KIc
2HEBVaus9ZQyGYVleOZbQA==
`pragma protect end_protected
`pragma reset protect
endmodule
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

About Encryption Keys

Public Key Encryption (RSA Keys)

VeriLogger Extreme uses RSA public key encryption to protect the source code. Each RSA key is composed of a ***public key***, which is used for encrypting the model, and a ***private key***, which is used for decrypting the model. VeriLogger Extreme keeps a database of keys, each uniquely identified by a "key owner", "key name", and an encryption method. VeriLogger Extreme's default RSA key is identified with the key owner string "SynaptiCAD" and the key name string "syncad". As in the first example, if you don't specify a key to use for encryption, VeriLogger Extreme will automatically use its own encryption key. So you could generate the same result as above by explicitly giving the key owner, name, and method, replacing the ***`pragma protect begin*** directive with:

```
`pragma protect key_keyowner = "SynaptiCAD"
`pragma protect key_keyname = "syncad"
`pragma protect key_method = "rsa"
`pragma protect begin
```

Optionally Encrypt Models with Your Own RSA Keys

You can also use your own encryption keys. VeriLogger Extreme will load RSA keys from the directory pointed to by the environment variable SYNCAD_KEY_DATABASE. Keys are stored in the Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. First-level directories under SYNCAD_KEY_DATABASE give the "key owner" string. Each key file is named with its "key name" plus the extension **.pem**.

For example, if you set the SYNCAD_KEY_DATABASE environment variable to **C:\key_database** and placed the key you wish to use in the file **C:\key_database\my_key_owner \my_key_name.pem**, you could encrypt your Verilog source code with the directive below (note that the key_method string must be lowercase):

```
`pragma protect key_keyowner = "my_key_owner"
`pragma protect key_keyname = "my_key_name", key_method = "rsa"
`pragma protect begin
```

Creating a New RSA Key

To generate a key pair in the (PEM) format, you will need the OpenSSL toolkit available at **http:// www.openssl.org**. Generate the public/private key pair with the command:

```
openssl genrsa -out my_key_name.pem 1024
```

which will print out something like:

```
Generating RSA private key, 1024 bit long modulus
.....................................................++++++
...........++++++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
```

and generate the key file that looks something like:

```
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
MIICXQIBAAKBgQDHSC73QceXs2jtCXKXLqZPB0FdgXIT6mUBoZconAovVjBZ2UD7
YnZUU2rxrF0bfC5nRuiqcCOZ0umtGG1NpfgGdzjNjyu+URMM32s6s+IhVGks415I
...
eaMVjzPxBb4JEtSKEUgRAkAvBV+RWvlmRrMJXPUEQVlWDnHcMvrQrMdvxc+sZIBE
DTKQd2vIbM5UyP/rcc2EUxKKmjT2OLfAYBmyrLc9tUHZ
-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
```

If you wish to separate out the public key into a separate file, run the command:

```
openssl rsa -in my_key_name.pem -out my_key_name_pub.pem -pubout
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

which will generate a file like:

```
-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQDHSC73QceXs2jtCXKXLqZPB0Fd
gXIT6mUBoZconAovVjBZ2UD7YnZUU2rxrF0bfC5nRuiqcCOZ0umtGG1NpfgGdzjN
jyu+URMM32s6s+IhVGks415IelY0aEXmerTq/cdLxOvqQ09m5W0X+1RazZaSSYfS
WToFbukyhUoyztwlUQIDAQAB
-----END PUBLIC KEY-----
```

This public key can be used for generating protected envelopes, but it cannot be used for decrypting these files.

Symmetric Encryption

VeriLogger Extreme supports several ciphers to be used for encrypting Verilog source code: DES, triple-DES, AES (in three key lengths), Blowfish, and CAST. If you do not specify an algorithm with the **`pragma protect data_method** directive, VeriLogger Extreme will default to encrypting with ***aes128-cbc***. To select a specific encryption method, you would begin the protected section with something like this:

```
`pragma protect data_method "3des-cbc"
`pragma protect key_keyowner = "SynaptiCAD"
`pragma protect key_keyname = "syncad", key_method = "rsa", begin
```

Supported Encoding and Encryption Methods (Implementation details)

Encoding Methods

VeriLogger Extreme supports ***base64*** encoding of encrypted data. The ***uuencode*** format is not supported.

Ciphers

VeriLogger Extreme supports the following symmetric ciphers (a symmetric cipher uses the same key for encryption and decryption, whereas an asymmetric cipher uses two keys, one for the encryption process and another for the decryption process):

- ***des-cbc***: Data Encryption Standard in CBC mode
- ***3des-cbc***: Triple-DES in CBC mode
- ***aes128-cbc***: Advanced Encryption Standard with 128-bit key
- ***aes192-cbc***: Advanced Encryption Standard with 192-bit key
- ***aes256-cbc***: Advanced Encryption Standard with 256-bit key
- ***blowfish-cbc***: Blowfish in CBC mode
- ***cast128-cbc***: CAST-128 in CBC mode

and the following asymmetric cipher:

- ***rsa***: RSA

VeriLogger's Encryption/Decryption Process

For improved security, VeriLogger actually encrypts protected source code blocks using a symmetric cipher (which is stronger than RSA-based encryption for long blocks of text), then encrypts the symmetric key using an asymmetric RSA public key. During internal decryption of a protected block for compilation purposes, VeriLogger first decrypts the symmetric keys for the protected code blocks using the appropriate RSA private key, then it uses these symmetric keys to decrypt their associated source code blocks. Therefore, when you view the encrypted version of a protected block, you will see two separate encrypted sections, a "key block" containing the encrypted symmetric key and a "data

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

block" containing the symmetrically encrypted source code.

Unsupported Directives

The `pragma directives related to message digests are not supported. These include digest_keyowner, digest_key_method, digest_keyname, digest_public_key, digest_decrypt_key, digest_method, and digest_block.

Advanced licensing directives that alter the available functionality of the encrypted models are NOT supported. Unsupported directives include: ***decrypt_license*** (which allows creation of encrypted models whose source code could be viewed by an end user with the proper key), ***runtime_license*** (which allows creation of models that can be compiled but not simulated), and ***viewport*** (which allows users to more advanced debugging access to protected envelopes of the code such as the ability to view or set values of signals defined in the protected envelope). Currently, encryption is an all-or-nothing proposition and the encrypted source code will never be visible to the end-user.

6.3 SmartModels (Swift Models)

SmartModels (also known as Swift models) are behavioral simulation models distributed as binary object files to hide their internal representation from end users. The SWIFT standard was created by Synopsys as a way of creating and distributing binary models so that they can be simulated by any simulator licensed to support the SWIFT standard. Theoretically, Synopsys has declared the Swift standard obsolete, but many FPGA vendors currently distribute Swift-based simulation models for their IP.

To use a SmartModel, you first need to create a Verilog or VHDL wrapper module (currently only Verilog wrapper modules are supported) for the model using smartmodel_wrapper_generator.exe and then you can instantiate instances of this module in your design. For most users, its generally best to create wrappers for all of your SmartModels at one time.The section below discusses the process of creating wrapper modules in more detail.

Generating SmartModel Wrappers and Using SmartModels with VeriLogger Extreme

- To incorporate a SmartModel into a simulation, first set the environment variable LMC_HOME to point to the directory containing your SmartModels.

```
set LMC_HOME=c:\tools\swift
```

- Then generate a Verilog wrapper module for each SmartModel using the **smartmodel_wrapper_generator.exe** the program located in **SynaptiCAD/bin** directory. The example below generates a Verilog file called DCC_FPGACORE.v that contains the Verilog wrapper module for the SmartModel called dcc_fpgacore.

```
smartmodel_wrapper_generator -verilog -u dcc_fpgacore
```

  - You can optionally hand-edit this module to reorder ports, select different defaults for the parameters of the module, etc.
  - smartmodel_wrapper_generator usage:

    smartmodel_wrapper_generator -verilog|-vhdl [-bit2bus] [-u] [<sm_name>]

    -verilog - Verilog generation;

    -vhdl - VHDL generation;

    -bit2bus - generate additional parent wrapper with buses;

    -u - use uppercase letters for naming modules;

    <sm_name> - name of SmartModel to generate (by default wrappers for all found

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

SmartModels will be generated into appropriate output files)

- Next, declare instances of these wrapper modules in your design using normal Verilog module instantiation rules, and parameterize the instance as desired.
- Compile the wrapper files along with the rest of your design files using VeriLogger Extreme. These wrapper files can only be used with VeriLogger Extreme.
  - If you are using BugHunter, just add the wrapper files to the **User Source Files** folder in the Project window (see Step 4: Add Source files to the Project 14).
  - If you are using the command line version of VeriLogger Extreme just add the wrapper files to the **simx** command line. Unlike VCS, VeriLogger Extreme can detect a SmartModel wrapper file and does not need the **-lmc_swift** directive.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 7: Speed Tricks and Techniques

How you debug and use the simulator can have a huge effect simulation times. For small and medium designs you probably do not need to use these techniques. However, if you start to notice your simulation seem to be slow you may want to try some of the techniques in this chapter.

7.1 Dumping Simulation Waveforms

Verilog simulation waveforms are typically written to a VCD file (Verilog Change Dump). This standard Verilog output file format is very slow because it is an uncompressed text file. In large simulations with lots of data to dump, the VCD file write times can dominate over the simulation time it takes to calculate the event transitions. To reduce overall simulation time, use SynaptiCAD's compressed binary waveform file BTIM to dump the data instead of dumping to a VCD file. BTIM files are about 100 times smaller than a VCD and can greatly reduce simulation times. After the simulation is complete, you can use the BTIM file to generate a VCD file if you need to use the data in another tool.

Dumping using BugHunter's waveform windows

When you are displaying waveforms in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram, the waveforms automatically being dumped into a BTIM file and then streamed across to the waveform window. If this interface is slow, then one faster thing you can do is to dump directly to the BTIM file without displaying any data in the waveform window until you are done with the simulation.

Command Line dumping to a BTIM file (rather than a VCD)

The fastest way to dump simulation data is to send it directly to a file by inserting dump code into your source code. In Verilog, you have probably used the **$dump** system task to dump simulation information directly to a VCD file. With BugHunter Pro, there are three additional system tasks that perform functions similar to standard $dump task but that dump to a compressed btim format instead of a VCD file. Dumping these files is much quicker than dumpting to a standard VCD file.

The first task, **$btim_dumfile,** creates a btim file so that it is ready to accept data (see Appendix A: btim_dumpfile 190). Next, add one or more **$btim_AddDumpSignal** task calls to register the signals with the open btim file (see Appendix A: btim_AddDumpSignal 190). During simulation, any event transitions on the registered signals will be written to the btim file. The dump file can be closed by calling the **$btim_closedumpfile** task at any time during simulation (see Appendix A: btim_closedumpfile 190).

```
$btim_dumpfile( filename )
$btim_AddDumpSignal(levels?, [signal | scope]+)
...
$btim_closedumpfile( )
```

7.2 What not to Watch

After you start your simulation, watch the green bar that shows up in the status bar at the bottom of the main window. Initially this will say "Simulation Running", then every 5 seconds thereafter it will show the current simulation time. This readout is very useful for determining how fast your design is being simulated and how long it will take to complete the simulation run. It can also be used as a simple method of profiling your design's simulation performance.

For example in one design, with a bunch of Watch signals, we saw around 600,000 nanoseconds of simulated time every 5 seconds of real time. But without any signals watched, we saw roughly 1 million nanoseconds of simulation time every 5 seconds of real-time. So capturing the waveform data

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

slowed down the simulator by about 40%. We got very close to the same speed as dumping no waveforms just by reducing the number of clocks we were dumping and removing a few of the non-essential signals that changed most frequently during the simulation.

Disable the capture of some of the clocks:

If your design has many related clocks, consider removing as many of the clocks from the dump file as you can.

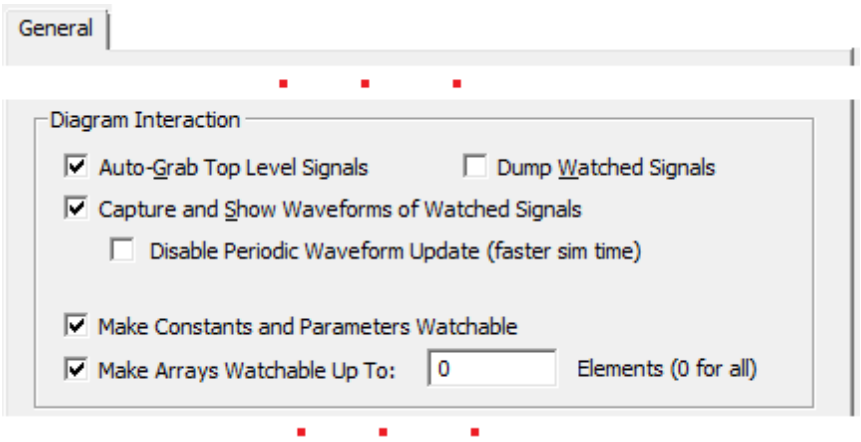
Disable or choose which of the top-level signals to watch:

By default the GUI assumes you want to watch all the signals in the top-level model(s). But this can be annoying in cases where you don't need to watch all these signals (like when you are trying to disable the capture of the clocks).

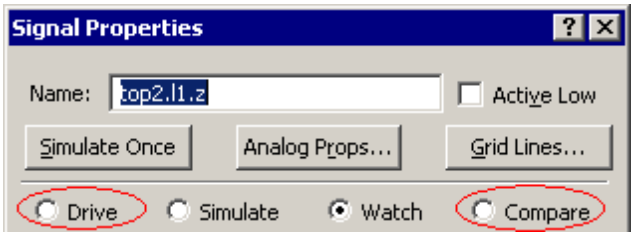
- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog.



- In the General Tab, uncheck the **Auto-Grab Top Level Signals** box so that the top level signals are not automatically watched in the *Stimulus and Results* diagram



- To **temporarily stop watching** a signal, double click on the signal name to open the *Signal Properties* dialog and change the signal type from ***watch*** to ***drive*** or ***compare***.
- You can also select several signals before opening the dialog so that the setting affects all of the selected signals.

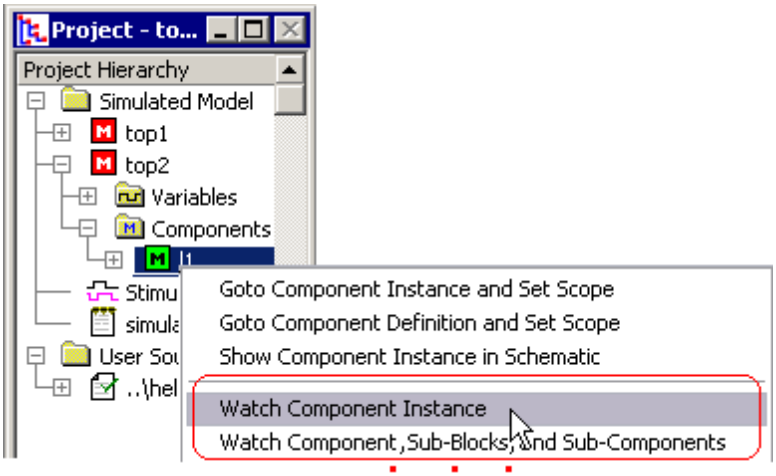


- Note that if you haven't disabled **Auto-Grab Top Level Signals**, any top-level signals will come back as soon as you recompile, so be sure to disable it first.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Watching specific signals:

- Expand the ***Simulated Model*** folder until you locate something that you would like to watch.
- Right-click on the node and choose one of the **Watch** menus, which will vary according to what type of object is selected.



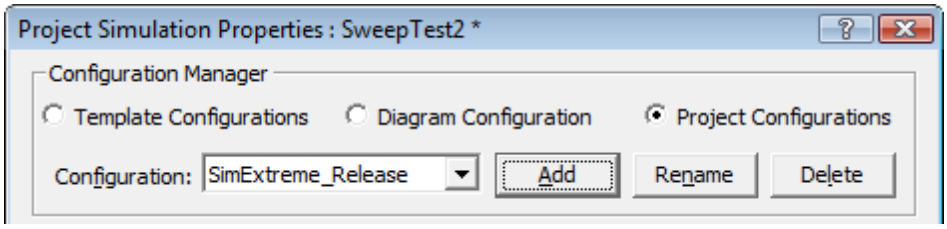
7.3 Eliminate 5 Second Waveform Updates

Normally watched signals update at one of three times during a simulation run: 1) every 5 seconds all watched signals are updated to the current simulation time, 2) whenever a sufficient number of events occur on a given signal, and 3) whenever the simulator stops (e.g. a breakpoint is encountered or the simulation finishes).

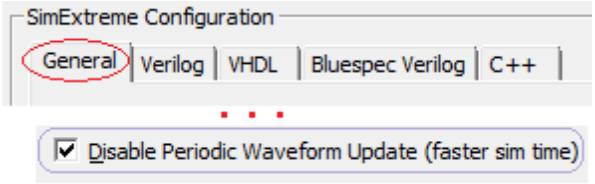
When watching many thousands of signals, the 5 second update can increase overall simulation runtime. This overhead can be eliminating by checking the **Disable Periodic Waveform Update** checkbox in the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog.

- Press the **Project Simulation Properties** button or choose the **Project > Project Simulation Properties** menu to open the dialog.





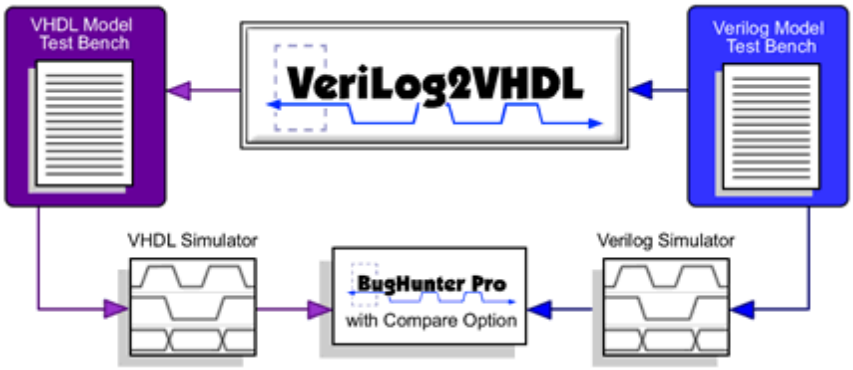
- Check the **Disable Periodic Waveform Update** checkbox under the **General** tab, then close the dialog. During the next simulation, the waveforms will only update asynchronously until the simulation stops. This effect can also be useful for determining which signals are changing most often during the simulation.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 8: Verilog2VHDL Translation

BugHunter Pro can also act as a graphical interface for SynaptiCAD's V2V code translators. To use the features in this chapter you will need a license for Verilog2VHDL in addition to your BugHunter Pro license. The translator can also be run from the command line, but the graphical interface makes it a lot easier to setup the options and see the results.



Verilog2VHDL translates hierarchical Verilog HDL to VHDL by using an HDL object kernel. The present form of the tool performs translation of all structural and RTL Verilog, as well as a large subset of behavioral Verilog. It uses a combination of IEEE and tool-specific VHDL packages to perform the translation. Both VHDL-87 and VHDL-93 compliant VHDL can be created by the tool. Any VHDL produced by this system is compatible with a VHDL simulator that accepts IEEE 1076 VHDL.

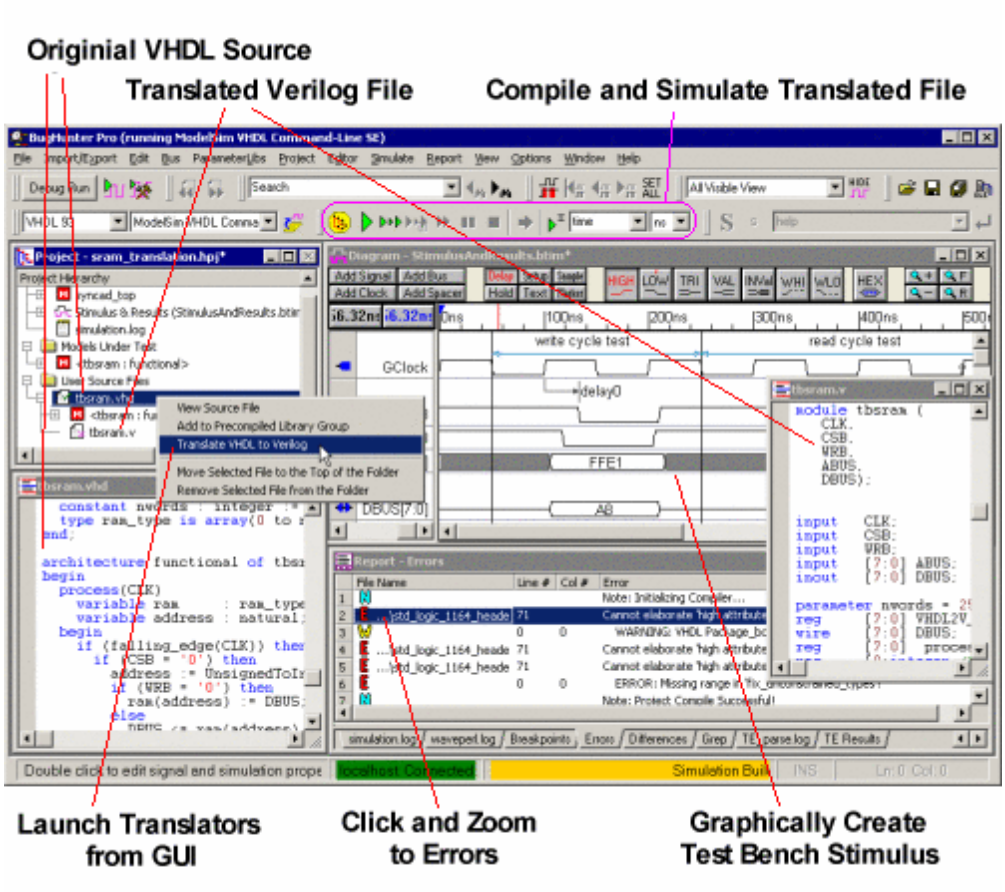
Verilog2VHDL can:

- be useful to designers working in a Verilog/VHDL environment,
- be integrated into VHDL-only based tools,
- provide library translation capability, and
- automate the model generation procedure.

8.1 Graphical Interface for Translation

If you have purchased BugHunter Pro or VeriLogger Extreme along with the Verilog2VHDL translator, you can use BugHunter as a graphical interface to the command line translator. BugHunter makes it easy to run the translator, fix errors in both the generated and the original code, verify the translated code with a simulator, and create language-independent test bench code to help test the translated code and compare its functionality against the original code. If you are running VeriLogger2VHDL from the command line, use the options in Section 8.2: Verilog2VHDL Translation Options 122 to control the translator.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

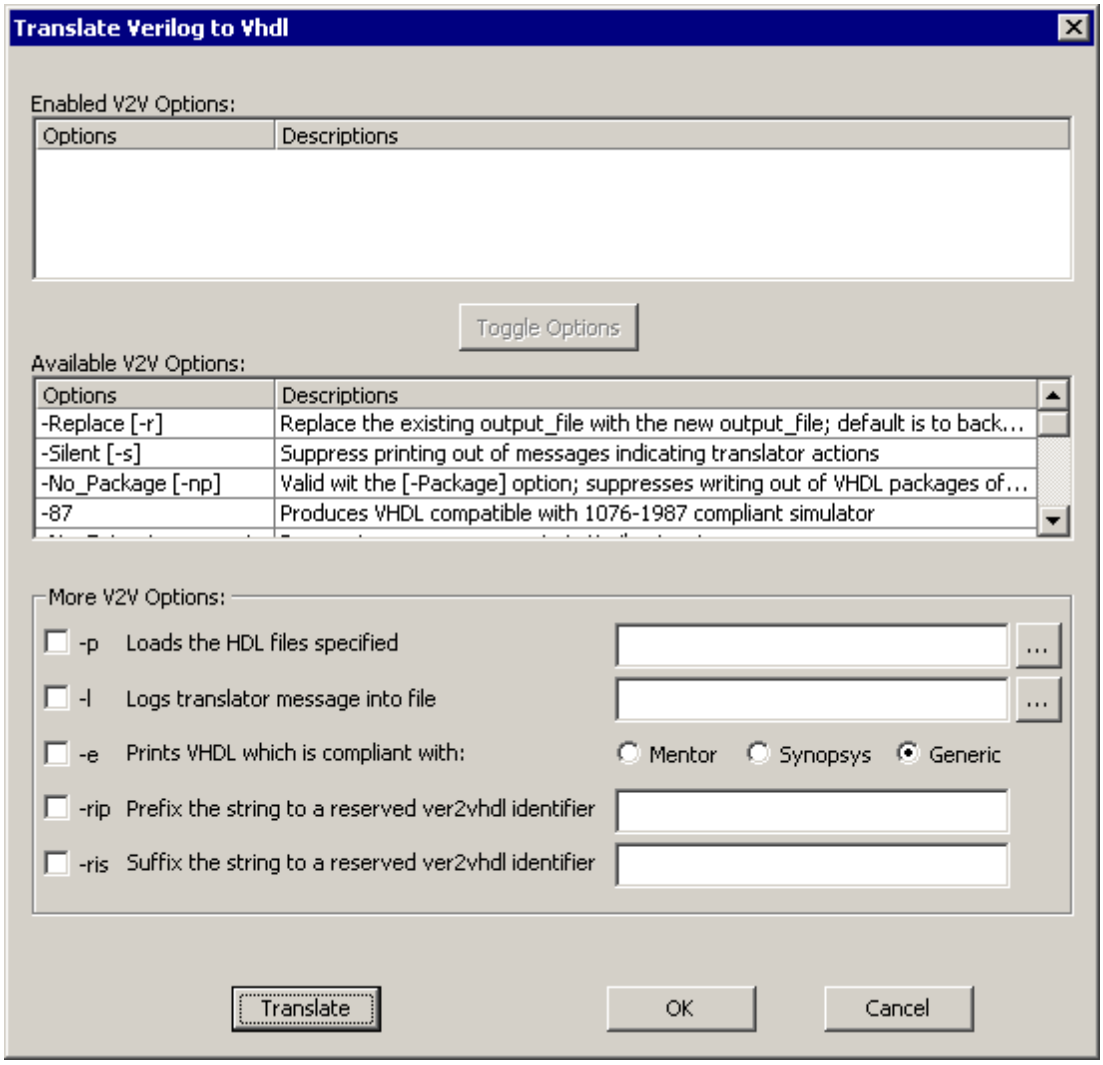


Using BugHunter Pro's Graphical Interface

BugHunter Pro stores the translation options and list of files using a project file (*.hpj). Before starting a translation, create a project in BugHunter and add the HDL files to be translated.

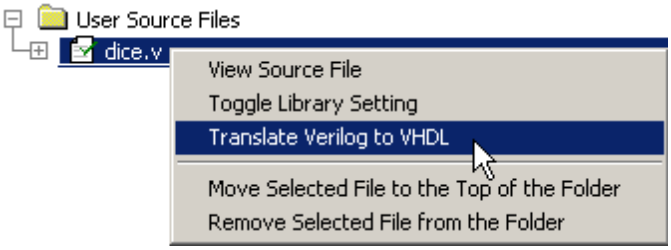
- Open a project or create a new one using the **Project > New Project** menu option as discussed in Step 3: Create a Project 119.
- Add HDL source code files to the project by right clicking on the ***User Source Files*** folder in the Project Window and choosing either **Add** or **Copy Files to Source File Folder** menus to open a *file* dialog as discussed in Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project 14.
- Set the translation options by choosing the **Project > Translate Verilog to VHDL** menu. This opens the translate options dialog. If you press the **Translate** button in this dialog, all the HDL source files in the project will be translated.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- Verilog2VHDL provides several options that allow you to tailor the operation of the tool. To enable an option, select it in the **Available V2V Options** list and then click the **Toggle Options** button in the middle to move it to the **Enabled V2V Options** list at the top of the screen.

- To translate a single source file in your project, right click on one of the source files and choose a **Translate** function from the context menu. The options set in the previous step will be used to translate the file. We generally recommend you translate one file at a time.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- The translated file will appear underneath the original file. Double click on either file to view the source code it contains.



Fix errors in the original model code:

Once a new file is generated there may be translation errors because the mapping between languages is not a perfect match. Errors found in the generation file will be listed in the simulation log tab of the Report window. Double clicking on an error will open the original code in an editor window so that you can quickly work through those errors.

Also in the generated code, when there is a decision that the translator could not resolve, the translator will leave some placeholder code. The intention of the placeholder code is to throw a compile error if you try to simulate and to also give you a hint as to what needs to be added at that particular point. Below is an example where the translator could not find the definition for the **'high** attribute so it inserted some placeholder code and reported an error.

Original VHDL code

```
subtype natural is integer range 0 to integer'high;
variable address : natural;
```

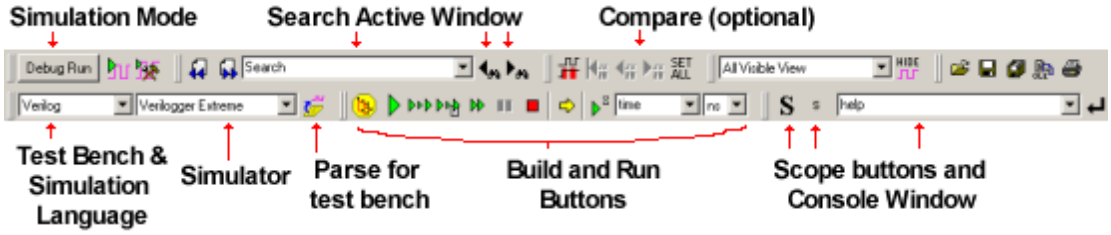
Translated Verilog with Place Holder error "integer /* ignored attribute: 'high */"

```
reg [0:integer /* ignored attribute: 'high */]  process_1_address;
```

Verify the translation with a simulator

BugHunter can also act as a graphical debugger for your own simulators. First you will need to set up BugHunter to work with your simulators by using the **Options > Simulator / Compiler Settings** to open a dialog and fill out the simulator information. See Chapter 1: Getting Started with BugHunter 8 for information on setting up an external simulator.

Next, you can simulate using the Build and Run buttons. The compiler that runs will be determined by the settings in the Test Bench Language and Simulator dropdown boxes in the main toolbar. See Chapter 2: Simulation and Debugging Functions 22 for more information.



Create language independent test bench code

BugHunter Pro can also take simulation results from one language and create a testbench with the other language. See Chapter 3: Waveforms and Test Bench Generation 56 for more information on drawing and managing test benches.

8.2 Verilog2VHDL Translation Options

If you are using the command line version of the translator, you can control the translator by adding command line arguments after listing the file(s) to be translated:

```
verilog2vhdl input_file [output_file] [options] [-Help]
                        [-Usage] [-Version]
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

where options can be a combination of:

[-Replace] [-Silent] [-No_Package] [-No_Extract_comments]

[-Environment {Mentor|Synopsys|Generic}] [-Package {HDL files}]

[-Log {logfile_name}] [-87|-93] [-No_Component_check]

[-Component_check] [-SYNTH] [-Map_Regs_to_Variables]

[-No_Synth] [-No_Zero_wait] [-Make_Defines_Constants] [-Make_Parameters_Constants]

[-Reserved_Identifier_Prefix {prefix string}] [-Reserved_Identifier_Suffix {suffix string}]

[-Preserve_Order] [-Verilog_PreProcessing] [-Architecture_Name] [-No_header]

Translation Option Summary

-Replace (-r):

Replace the existing output_file; default is to backup the output_file to <output_file>.old

-Silent (-s):

Supress printing out of messages indicating translator actions

-No_Package (-np):

Valid with the [-Package] option; suppresses writing out of VHDL packages of Verilog files supplied with [-Package] option; default is to create VHDL package with filename <pkgfilename_without_extension>_pack.hdl

-Environment {Mentor|Synopsys|Generic} (-e {m|s|g}):

Prints VHDL which is compliant with specified option, default is Generic

-Package {HDL files} (-p {HDL files}):

Loads the HDL files specified with this option into database

-Log {logfile_name} (-l {logfile name}):

Logs translator messages into file <logfile_name>; default log file is 'v2v.log'

-87:

Produces VHDL compatible with 1076-1987 compliant simulator

-No_Extract_comments (-ne):

Does not preserve comments in Verilog input

-No_Component_check (-ncc):

Does not look for module declarations for modules instantiated in instantiations. This is useful for translating designs which use large libraries

-SYNTH (-synth):

Produces synthesizable VHDL

-Map_Regs_to_Variables (-mrv):

Produces synthesizable VHDL with procedural assignments being mapped to variable assignments

-No_Zero_wait (-nz):

Does not print 'WAIT FOR 0 ns;' overridden by -synth option

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

-Make_Defines_Constants (-mdc):

Makes all `defines encountered in the input file constants in the Architecture; default is to create Generics in Entity

-Reserved_Identifier_Prefix <prefix string> (-rip <prefix string>):

Prefixes specified string to a reserved verilog2vhdl identifier. (See User's Manual, Chapter 3) for VHDL compliance

-Reserved_Identifier_Suffix <suffix string> (-ris <suffix string>):

Suffixes specified string to a reserved verilog2vhdl identifier. (See User's Manual, Chapter 3) for VHDL compliance

-Preserve_Order (-po):

When printing VHDL, retain the order of concurrent constructs in the Verilog input; default is to format the output VHDL

-Verilog_PreProcessing (-vpp):

Preprocess the Verilog files before translation them so that the Verilog compile directives can be elaborated and therefore supported

-Architecture_Name (-an):

Set the name of the generated VHDL architecture. The default name is "VeriArch"

-No_header [-nh]

Do not print SynaptiCAD header in the output file

-No_Verilog_PreProcessing [-novpp]

Disable the Verilog preprocessor (disables compiler directives) By default, the preprocessor is enabled.

-do_macro_substitution

Forces macro substitution for defines during preprocessing (prior to translation). This allows the processing of files when defines are used as more than simple constant expressions (for example, using a define as a range (e.g. `define RANGE 3:1) or to represent a delay value (e.g. `define DEL #(4)). The disadvantage of enabling this option is that the translator can no longer create a more readable VHDL constant as a replacement when defines are simply used as constant expressions.

8.3 Compiling and Simulating VHDL Output

The VHDL produced by Verilog2VHDL needs to be run through a VHDL simulation and/or synthesis tool. This chapter describes the compilation order for the VHDL files, followed by some examples illustrating the concept.

Compiling Original and Translated Code Using BugHunter

If you're using BugHunter to compile your code, it's frequently useful to create two compile configurations in your project (one for compiling the original source code, and one for the translated source code). You can set the **Compile Source Files Of Type** check boxes in the **General** tab of the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog so that one configuration only compiles Verilog files and the other configuration only compiles VHDL files (See Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23).

Compiling Verilog2VHDL packages

In order to facilitate translation, SynaptiCAD provides several VHDL packages along with the tool.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Often times these packages are used in translated files. User must compile these packages into a VHDL library called ASC before compiling the translated files.

If the translated output VHDL files do not use any of these packages, then there is no need to compile any of the packages supplied with Verilog2VHDL. You can directly proceed to compiling the VHDL output file in this case.

Compiling Verilog2VHDL packages inside BugHunter

It's extremely easy to compile the Verilog2VHDL packages if you use the BugHunter GUI to launch your simulator. All you need to do is press the **Compile Syncad Libraries** button in the *Simulator and Compiler Settings* dialog as shown in Step 1: Setup the Simulator Path 8.

Location of Verilog2VHDL packages

In the ensuing discussion, **v2v_location** will be used to denote the location of the translation software on the host machine. When v2v is installed via the SynaptiCAD tool suite installer (i.e.**allproducts.exe**), the translation software is placed in a subdirectory of the main installation directory called **v2v**. For example, on Windows this directory will typically be **c:\SynaptiCAD\v2v** and on Unix this directory will typically be **/usr/local/synapticad-*version*/v2v**. The phrase **vhdl_sim** will be used to refer to the user's VHDL compiler.

Verilog2VHDL comes with the following packages: **timing**, **buffers**, **numeric_std**, **v2v_types**, **utils** and **functions**. The timing package resides in the location v2v_location/lib/timing. vhd , buffers package in v2v_location/lib/buffers. vhd , numeric_std package in v2v_location/lib/numeric_std.vhd, v2v_types package in v2v_location/lib/types.vhd, utils package in v2v_location/lib/utils.vhd and the functions package in v2v_location/lib/functions.vhd. (If the `-87' switch is used, the related packages files are v2v_location/lib/numeric_std_87.vhd for the numeric_std package and v2v_location/lib/ functions_87. vhd for the functions package.)

Order of Compilation for Verilog2VHDL Packages

Verilog2VHDL uses tool-specific packages to perform the translation. In the output VHDL, these packages are compiled into a VHDL logical library called ASC. The user needs to map the physical location of the compiled packages to this logical library by using VHDL compiler specific commands. Please refer to your VHDL simulator manual for tool-specific information on library mapping. Additionally, for using IEEE STD 1076-1993 compliant VHDL, some VHDL compilers need extra command-line switches.

As a representative example of the steps needed to create an ASC library using ModelSim VHDL or Active VHDL, you would need to perform the following commands:

1) cd **v2v_location\v2v**

If this is a read-only directory, you should first copy this directory to a location where you have write privileges and work from there instead.

2) Initialize an ASC library directory for your VHDL compiler

vlib ASC_*mycompilername*

3) Map this physical directory to the logical library name ASC

vmap ASC ASC_*mycompilername*

4) Finally, compile the packages into the newly created ASC library. The compilation order for the VHDL packages is shown below. Packages whose compile order is not important are grouped together below. **vhdl_com** is used as the shell invocation command for the VHDL simulator/compiler. One package is contained in each file and the filename matches the name of the package it contains (except in the case of a few packages where the filename to compile depends on whether you are using either a VHDL-87 or VHDL-93 or later compiler).

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

a) Compile the image_functions, timing, and buffers packages into the ASC library

% vhdl_com -work ASC image_functions.vhd

% vhdl_com -work ASC timing.vhd

% vhdl_com -work ASC buffers.vhd

b) Compile the numeric_std package into the ASC library

% vhdl_com -work ASC numeric_std.vhd OR % vhdl_com -work ASC numeric_std _87.vhd

c) Compile the v2v_types, utils, functions, and readmem packages into the ASC library

% vhdl_com -work ASC types.vhd

% vhdl_com -work ASC utils.vhd

% vhdl_com -work ASC functions.vhd OR % vhdl_com -work ASC functions_87.vhd

% vhdl_com -work ASC readmem.vhd

RTL Translation Example

Input file: example.v

```
////////////////////////////////////////////////////
// dir_cell component description
////////////////////////////////////////////////////
module dir_cell (so,shift,clock,si,idcode); output so;
input shift, idcode, si, clock;
reg cq;
wire d, shift, idcode, si, clock;
assign d = (shift & si) | (~shift & idcode); assign so = cq;
always
@(posedge clock) cq = d;
end module
```

Verilog2VHDL Invocation and Transcript

% v2v example.v

```
// Copyright(c) Alternative System Concepts Inc. 1992-2002, All Rights Reserved.
//                 UNPUBLISHED, LICENSED SOFTWARE.
//        CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION WHICH IS THE
//       PROPERTY OF ALTERNATIVE SYSTEM CONCEPTS OR ITS LICENSORS.
//
//
//Running..
// NOTE: Adding VHDL entity 'dir _cell' to output file
// NOTE: Adding VHDL architecture 'VeriArch'for entity 'dir _cell'
// NOTE: Adding port 'so' to entity 'dir _cell'
// NOTE: Adding port 'shift' to entity 'dir _cell'
// NOTE: Adding port 'clock' to entity 'dir _cell'
// NOTE: Adding port 'si' to entity 'dir _cell'
// NOTE: Adding port 'idcode' to entity 'dir_cell'
// NOTE: Adding Process in architecture 'VeriArch' belonging to entity 'dir _cell'
//
<<<<<< VHDL translation of Verilog file 'example.v'
being written to 'example . hdl' >>>>>>
```

Output file: example.vhd

```
-- File Type: VHDL
-- Tool Version: Verilog2VHDL v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
-- Date Created: Mon Feb 13 15:08:29 1995
--
LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY dir_cell IS
  PORT (SIGNAL so : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL shift : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL clock : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL si : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL idcode : IN std _logic);
END dir_cell;

ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF dir_cell IS
  SIGNAL cq : std _logic REGISTER ;
  SIGNAL d : std _logic;
BEGIN
  d <= (shift and si) or (not shift and idcode);
  so <= cq;

PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT UNTIL posedge(clock);
  cq <= d;
END PROCESS;

END VeriArch;
```

VHDL Compilation

% vhdl _sim example.hdl

The above command will compile the VHDL code in file example.vhd in the current directory. If it is required to compile in a separate directory, check the simulator manual for options.

Gates and Parametric Delay Example

Input File : example.v

```
/*****************************************************************
Verilog example illustrating gate instantiations
***************************************************************** /
`timescale 1ns/10ns
module gates (q, qb, d, clk, rst); parameter delay _val=3;
output q,qb;
input d,clk,rst;
wire a,b,c,d; /*wire declarations*/
wire e,f,g,h;
nand #delay_val (qb,cf,clk,rst); /*nand gate instantiation*/
or #(1:2:3)(qb,cf,clk,rst); /*nand gate instantiation*/
xor #10 (q,a,b,e,f,g); /*xor gate*/
xor #1 (q,a,b,e,f,g); /*xor gate*/
and #2 (b,d,e,f,g); /*and gate*/
buf #4 (e,f); /*buf*/
not #4 (d,g,h); /*not gate*/
notif0 firstnot (d,g,h); /*not gate*/
end module
```

Verilog2VHDL Invocation and Transcript

% verilog2vhdl example.v

```
// Verilog2VHDL v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
// Copyright  (c) Alternative System Concepts Inc. 1992-1995, All
Rights Reserved.
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
// UNPUBLISHED, LICENSED SOFTWARE.
// CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION WHICH IS THE

// PROPERTY OF ALTERNATIVE SYSTEM CONCEPTS OR ITS LICENSORS.
//
//
// Running..
// NOTE: Found compiler directive 'timescale'
// NOTE: Adding VHDL entity 'gates' to output
file
// NOTE: Adding VHDL architecture 'VeriArch' for entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding port 'q' to entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding port 'qb' to entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding port 'd' to entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding port 'clk' to entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding port 'rst' to entity
'gates'
// NOTE: Adding VHDL generic 'delay _val' of type NATURAL to entity 'gates'
// NOTE: Adding equivalent VHDL signal assignment for gate instantiation 'firstnot'
//
<<<<<< VHDL translation of Verilog file 'example.v' being written to 'example.hdl' >>>>>>>
//
```

Output File : example.vhd

```
-- File Type: VHDL
-- Tool Version: verilog2vhdl v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
-- Date Created: Mon Feb 13 15:11:35 1995
--
LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY gates IS
  GENERIC (CONSTANT delay _val : natural := 3);
  PORT (SIGNAL q : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL qb : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL d : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL clk : IN std _logic;
         SIGNAL rst : IN std _logic);
END gates;

LIBRARY ASC;
ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF gates IS
  SIGNAL e : std _logic;
  SIGNAL f : std _logic;
  SIGNAL g : std _logic;
  SIGNAL h : std _logic;

  COMPONENT notif 0
    GENERIC (CONSTANT bufdelay : time);
    PORT (SIGNAL output : OUT std _logic;
          SIGNAL input : IN std _logic;
          SIGNAL enable : IN std _logic);
  END COMPONENT;

  USE ASC.buffers .all;
  FOR ALL : notif0 USE ENTITY Verilog.notif0;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
  USE ASC.timing.all;
  USE ASC.functions.all;
  SIGNAL cf : std _logic;
  SIGNAL a : std _logic;
  SIGNAL b : std _logic;
  SIGNAL c : std _logic;
BEGIN
qb <= ((cf nand clk) nand rst) AFTER parameter _delay(delay _val, ns);
qb <= ((cf or clk) or rst) AFTER delay(1, 2, 3, ns);
q <= ((((a xor b) xor e) xor f) xor g) AFTER 10ns;
q <= ((((a xor b) xor e) xor f) xor g) AFTER 1ns;
b <= (((d and e) and f) and g) AFTER 2ns;
e <= f AFTER 4ns;
g <= not h AFTER 4ns;
d <= not h AFTER 4ns;
d firstnot : Verilog.buffers.notif0 PORT MAP (d, g, h);
END VeriArch;
```

VHDL Compilation

% vhdl _sim buffers.vhd

% vhdl _sim timing.vhd

% vhdl _sim numeric_std.vhd

% vhdl _sim functions.vhd

% vhdl _sim example.hdl <map logical library `Verilog' to the location where the compilation results of `buffers', `timing' , `numeric _std' and `functions' package(s) lie>

Since these packages are used extensively in Verilog2VHDL, it is suggested that the user pre-compile these packages. This will allow skipping the first few steps in the compilation for every run of Verilog2VHDL that uses these packages.

'-Package' switch usage Example

Input File: adders.v

```
// Base F-T 2-bit adder design with internal scan
module adders(a1, b1, a2, b2, s, test_clk, scan_en, scan_in0, scan_out, scan_in1);
input [ 1:0] a1, b1, a2, b2; input scan_in0, scan_in1; input test_clk, scan_en;
output s;
output [ 1:0] scan_out;
parameter wire_width = 2;
parameter scan_out_width = 1;
reg s;
reg [ scan_out_width:0] scan_out;
wire [wire_width:0] s1, s2;
half_adder add1 (.s(s1[ 0]), .co(add1co), .a(a1[ 0]), .b (b1[ 0])),
           add3 (.s(s2[ 0]), .co(add3co), .a(a2[ 0]), .b(b2[ 0]));
aha add2 (.s(s1[ 1]), .co(s1[ 2]), .a(a1[ 1]), .b(b1[ 1]), .c(add1co)),
    add4 (.s(s2[ 1]), .co(s2[ 2]), .a(a2[ 1]), .b(b2[ 1]), .c(add3co));
sc_mux cell1 (.D(s1[ 2]), .Q(cell1out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(scan_in0),
              .S_en (scan_en) ),
       cell2 (.D(s1[ 1]), .Q(cell2out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(cell1out),
              .S_en (scan_en) ),
       cell3 (.D(s1[ 0]), .Q(cell3out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(cell2out),
              .S_en (scan_en) ),
       cell4 (.D(s2[ 2]), .Q(cell4out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(scan_in1),
              .S_en(scan_en) ),
       cell5 (.D(s2[ 1]), .Q(cell5out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(cell4out),
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
               .S_en(scan_en) ),
       cell6 (.D(s2[ 0]), .Q(cell6out), .clk(test_clk), .S_in(cell5out),
              .S_en(scan_en) );
always @ (cell3out)
  scan_out[ 0] = cell3out;

always @(cell6out)
  scan _out[ 1] = cell6out;

// voter
always @(cell1out or cell2out or cell3out or cell4out or cell5out or cell6out)
begin
  if ((cell1out == cell4out) & (cell2out == cell5out) & (cell3out == cell6out))
    s = 1'b1;
  else
    s = 1'b0;
  end
end module
```

Input files (2): files.v

```
// Verilog file for bit-wide adders
module aha(a,b,c,s,co);
input a,b,c;
output s,co;
parameter s_delay_min = 3,
          s_delay_typ= 4,
          s_delay_max = 5;
xor(a,b,c);
assign #(s_delay_min:s_delay_typ:s_delay_max) s = a;
assign #4 co = (a & b) ^(a & c) ^ (b & c);
endmodule

module half_adder (a,b,s,co);
input a,b;
output s,co;

parameter delay = 2;

assign #delay s = a ^ b;
and(a,b);
assign #delay co = a;

endmodule

// Verilog model of a muxed scan cell
module sc_mux(D, Q, clk, S_in, S_en);
input D, clk, S_in, S_en;
output Q;
reg Q;
wire dff_d;

mux2 mux (S_in, D, S_en, dff_d);

always @(posedge clk)
  #1 Q = dff_d;

endmodule

module mux2 (a,b,en,y);
input a,b,en;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
output y;
reg y;
always @(a or b or en)
begin
  if (en == 1)
    y = a;
  else if (en == 0)
    y = b;
  else
    y = 1'bz;
  end
endmodule
```

Verilog2VHDL Invocation and Transcript

```
% v2v adders.v -p files.v
// Verilog2VHDL v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
// Copyright(c) Alternative System Concepts Inc. 1992-1995, All
Rights Reserved.
// UNPUBLISHED, LICENSED SOFTWARE.
// CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION WHICH IS THE
// PROPERTY OF ALTERNATIVE SYSTEM CONCEPTS OR ITS LICENSORS.
//
//
// Running..
// NOTE: Adding VHDL entity 'adders' to output file
// NOTE: Adding VHDL architecture 'VeriArch' for entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'a1' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'b1' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'a2' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'b2' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 's' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'test _clk' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'scan_en' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'scan _in0' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'scan_out' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding port 'scan _in1' to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding VHDL generic 'wire_width' of type NATURAL to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding VHDL generic 'scan_out_width' of type NATURAL to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'add1' of module 'half_adder' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'add3' of module 'half_adder' in architecture 'VeriArch'

// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'add2' of module 'aha' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'add4' of module 'aha' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell1' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell2' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell3' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell4' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell5' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding module instantiation 'cell6' of module 'sc_mux' in architecture 'VeriArch'
// NOTE: Adding Process in architecture 'VeriArch' belonging to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding Process in architecture 'VeriArch' belonging to entity 'adders'
// NOTE: Adding Process in architecture 'VeriArch' belonging to entity 'adders'
//
<<<<<< VHDL translation of Verilog file 'adders.v' being written to 'adders . hdl' >>>>>>>
//
//
<<<<<< VHDL package of Verilog file 'files.v' being written to 'files_pack. hdl' >>>>>>>>
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Ouput file: adders.vhd

```
-- File Type: VHDL
-- Tool Version: verilog2vhdl v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
-- Date Created: Mon Feb 13 15:15:31 1995
--
LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY adders IS
  GENERIC (CONSTANT wire_width : natural := 2;
           CONSTANT scan_out_width : natural := 1);
  PORT (SIGNAL a1 : IN std_logic_vector(1 DOWNTO 0);
        SIGNAL b1 : IN std_logic_vector(1 DOWNTO 0);
        SIGNAL a2 : IN std_logic_vector(1 DOWNTO 0);
        SIGNAL b2 : IN std_logic_vector(1 DOWNTO 0);
        SIGNAL s : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL test_clk : IN std_logic;
        SIGNAL scan_en : IN std_logic;
        SIGNAL scan_in0 : IN std_logic;
        SIGNAL scan_out : OUT std_logic_vector(1 DOWNTO 0);
        SIGNAL scan _in1 : IN std_logic);
END adders;

LIBRARY user_defined;
ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF adders IS
  FOR ALL : half_adder USE ENTITY user_defined.half_adder;
  FOR ALL : sc_mux USE ENTITY user_defined.sc_mux;
  SIGNAL s1 : std _logic _vector(wire_width DOWNTO 0);
  SIGNAL cell3out : std _logic;
  SIGNAL cell2out : std _logic;
  SIGNAL cell1out : std _logic;
  SIGNAL add1co : std _logic;

  FOR ALL : aha USE ENTITY user_defined.aha;
  USE user_defined.files_pack.all;

  SIGNAL s2 : std_logic_vector(wire_width DOWNTO 0);
  SIGNAL cell6out : std_logic;
  SIGNAL cell5out : std_logic;
  SIGNAL cell4out : std_logic;
  SIGNAL add3co : std_logic;
BEGIN

add1 : user_defined.files_pack.half_adder
         PORT MAP
          (s => s1(0),
           co => add1co,
           a => a1(0),
           b => b1(0)) ;
add3 : user_defined.files_pack.half_adder
         PORT MAP
          (s => s2(0),
           co => add3co,
           a => a2(0),
           b => b2(0)) ;
add2 : user_defined.files_pack.aha
         PORT MAP
          (s => s1(1),
           co => s1(2),
           a => a1(1),
           b => b1(1),
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
           c => add1co) ;
add4 : user_defined.files _pack.aha
         PORT MAP
           (s => s2(1),
            co => s2(2),
            a => a2(1),
            b => b2(1),
            c => add3co) ;
cell1 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
         PORT MAP
           (D => s1(2),
            Q => cell1out,
            clk => test _clk,
            S_in => scan _in0,
            S_en => scan _en) ;
cell2 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
         PORT MAP
           (D => s1(1),
            Q => cell2out,
            clk => test _clk,
            S_in => cell1out,
            S_en => scan_en);
cell3 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
          PORT MAP
            (D => s1(0),
             Q => cell3out,
             clk => test _clk,
             S_in => cell2out,
             S_en => scan_en) ;
cell4 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
          PORT MAP
            (D => s2(2),
             Q => cell4out,
             clk => test _clk,
             S_in => scan _in1,
             S_en => scan_en) ;
cell5 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
          PORT MAP
           (D => s2(1),
            Q => cell5out,
            clk => test _clk,
            S_in => cell4out,
            S_en => scan_en) ;
cell6 : user_defined.files_pack.sc_mux
          PORT MAP
           (D => s2(0),
            Q => cell6out,
            clk => test _clk,
            S_in => cell5out,
            S_en => scan_en) ;
PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT ON cell3out;
  scan _out(0) <= cell3out;
END PROCESS;

PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT ON cell6out;
  scan _out(1) <= cell6out;
END PROCESS;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT ON cell1out, cell2out, cell3out, cell4out, cell5out, cell6out;
  IF ((cell1out = cell4out) and (cell2out = cell5out) and (cell3out = cell6out)) THEN
    s <= '1';
  ELSE
    s <= '0';
  END IF;
END PROCESS;
END VeriArch;
```

Output File 2: files_pack.vhd

```
-- File Type: VHDL
-- Tool Version: verilog2vhdl v1.0 Mon Feb 6 16:59:45 EST 1995
-- Date Created: Mon Feb 13 15:15:31 1995
--
LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY mux2 IS
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL en : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL y : OUT std _logic);
END mux2;

LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY aha IS
  GENERIC (CONSTANT s_delay_min : natural := 3;
           CONSTANT s_delay_typ : natural := 4;
           CONSTANT s_delay_max : natural := 5);
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL c : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL s : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL co : OUT std _logic);
END aha;

LIBRARY ASC;
ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF aha IS
  USE ASC.timing.all;
BEGIN
a <= (b xor c);
s <= a AFTER delay(s _delay _min, s_delay_typ, s_delay_max, NS);
co <= (a and b) xor (a and c) xor (b and c) AFTER 4NS;
END VeriArch;

LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY half_adder IS
  GENERIC (CONSTANT delay : natural := 2);
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL s : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL co : OUT std _logic);
END half_adder;

LIBRARY ASC;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF half_adder IS
  USE ASC.timing.all;
BEGIN
s <= a xor b AFTER parameter _delay(delay, NS);
a <= b;
co <= a AFTER parameter _delay(delay, NS);
END VeriArch;

LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
ENTITY sc_mux IS
  PORT (SIGNAL D : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL Q : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL clk : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL S_in : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL S_en : IN std _logic);
END sc_mux;

ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF sc_mux IS
  SIGNAL dff_d : std _logic;
  COMPONENT mux2
    PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
          SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
          SIGNAL en : IN std _logic;
          SIGNAL y : OUT std _logic);
  END COMPONENT;
  FOR ALL : mux2 USE ENTITY work.mux2;
BEGIN

PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT UNTIL posedge(clk);
  WAIT FOR 1NS;
  Q <= dff_d;
END PROCESS;

mux : mux2 PORT MAP (S_in, D, S_en, dff_d) ;
END VeriArch;

ARCHITECTURE VeriArch OF mux2 IS
BEGIN
PROCESS
  BEGIN
    WAIT ON a, b, en;
    IF en = '1' THEN
      y <= a;
    ELSE
      IF en = '0' THEN
        y <= b;
      ELSE
        y <= 'Z';
      END IF;
    END IF;
  END PROCESS;

END VeriArch;

LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee. std _logic _1164. all;
PACKAGE files_pack IS
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
COMPONENT mux2
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL en : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL y : OUT std _logic);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT aha
  GENERIC (CONSTANT s_delay_min : natural := 3;
           CONSTANT s_delay_typ : natural := 4;
           CONSTANT s_delay_max : natural := 5);
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL c : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL s : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL co : OUT std _logic);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT half_adder
  GENERIC (CONSTANT delay : natural := 2);
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
  SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
  SIGNAL s : OUT std _logic;
  SIGNAL co : OUT std _logic);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT sc_mux
  PORT (SIGNAL D : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL Q : OUT std _logic;
        SIGNAL clk : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL S_in : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL S_en : IN std _logic);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT mux2
  PORT (SIGNAL a : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL b : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL en : IN std _logic;
        SIGNAL y : OUT std _logic);
END COMPONENT;

END;
```

VHDL Compilation

Verilog2VHDL writes out VHDL packages for the Verilog files read in by the `-Package' switch. The name of the VHDL package is `<pkg_filename_without_extension>_pack' and the VHDL filename is <pkg_filename_without_extension>_pack.hdl. For e.g, if a Verilog file of the name files.v is read into the Verilog2VHDL database, the subsequent VHDL package `files_pack' would be placed in file files_pack.hdl.

% vhdl _sim timing.vhd

% vhdl _sim files _pack.hdl

% vhdl _sim adders.hdl <map Logical library `user _defined' to the VHDL compilation results of `files' package>

In the case when there is more than one logical library in the final VHDL, each logical library needs to be mapped to the physical location of the VHDL compilation results.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

8.4 Frequently Asked Questions: Verilog2 VHDL

What if I have a question that isn't answered on this page?

If you run into a problem that does not have a solution on this page please send the following information, if available, to sales@syncad.com:

- A detailed description of the problem, including under what circumstances the problem occurred, what version of the product you are using and on what platform you are using it.
- The log file: vhdl2v.log or v2v.log.
- The error message: cut and save the screen mesage to a file and attach it to your e-mail.
- The command line
- The input and output files

We will begin investigating the problem immediately, and respond to you as quickly as possible.

Can v2v handle the compiler directive 'include?

Yes. The 'include directive is handled by Vpp, the "Verilog Pre-Processor." It is in the "bin" subdirectory after you install the Translator. The translator will automatically run vpp on your source files.

Vpp deals with some of the compiler directives such as 'include. The output file of Vpp is still a Verilog file, which may be translated automatically by the verilog2vhdl translator.

I received a warning message during translation that I used a reserved word in my code, or the identifier is not a legal VHDL identifier. What does it mean?

v2v has a list of reserved words, such as "input" "output" "mod", etc, that can not be used as identifiers. Also, some legal identifiers in Verilog are not legal in VHDL, such as an identifier like "name_".

The Translator treats this case as a warning. It adds a slash "/" to both ends of the identifier, such as "/name_/", and gives out a warning message to remind the user.

Please look at verilog2vhdl and VHDL2Verilog manuals as a part of this documentation to see a complete list of reserved words.

Can v2v translate modules with multiple levels of instantiation? Yes!

Suppose you have a module A (in file "file1 .v') that instatiates module B (in file "package1 .v') and C ("package2.v'). In this case, you would use the following command line:

```
v2v file1.v file1.vhd -p package1.v package2.v
```

Now consider a situation in which module B also instantiates module D (in file "package3.v'). In this case you would use the following command line:

```
v2v file1.v file1.vhd -p package3.v package1.v package2.v
```

Please note, in the second case, the sequence of the package files matters. You have to put the lowest level module first, then the higher level modules.

In some situations you might not want to check the existence of some lower level modules while you are translating the top level module. Use the -nc option to achieve this. You can see all the options with the command v2v -h or by reading the users' manual.

How does v2v perform error handling?

v2v handles errors in the following ways:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

1. If a syntax error in encountered in the input file, the tool exits immediately after printing out the error message.
2. If an unsupported construct is encountered in the input, a warning message is issued, and v2vcontinues processing.
3. If the unsupported construct is of the type `event', v2v exits after issuing an appropriate error message.

What Verilog constructs are not supported?

- UDPs
- Assign and deassign procedural assignments
- Force and release procedural assignments
- Parallel blocks (such as fork-join blocks)
- Task disable
- Specify blocks
- There are some system functions not supported, such as the ones for timing check.

The supported and unsupported constructs are listed in detail in the user's manual, as well as some workarounds to common problems.

How do I verify the translation result?

v2v keeps functional equivalence of the Verilog design and the translated VHDL design. It is intended to be used to enhance productivity by saving much of the labor of manual translation. Some language constructs may not be translated automatically due to language disparities.

You can use any simulation tool to verify the functionality of a translated file. Equivalence checkers can also be used to detect equivalence errors.

All the library files needed for simulation of the generated code are included in the package. When you compile these library files, please follow the instructions about the sequence in the v2v Manual in the section entitled "post-translation" (DLNFIX).

I use the Synopsys synthesis and simulation environment. Is there anything I need to take into consideration?

Package files compliant with the SYNOPSYS simulation and synthesis environment are located in the $SYNCAD_HOME/libsyn directory. Filenames are almost the same as described below; the only difference being that files in the $SYNCAD_HOME/libsyn have a '_syn' extension. Therefore, the file buffers.vhd in the $SYNCAD_HOME/lib is equivalent to file buffers_syn.vhd in the libsyn directory.

Why do I receive compilation errors when I compile translated VHDL files?

In some cases, the automatic translation cannot complete due to unsupported constructs. Hand modification is required to make the translation compilable.

Sometimes you receive compilation errors because some simulation/synthesis tools have problems with supporting IEEE1 076-1993. Use ***_87 instead. The readmem.vhd, textio_header.vhd, and standard.vhd are compliant with VHDL-93. If you must use them, please refer to the simulation/ synthesis tool's manual and modify the files to make them compatible to the tool.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

8.5 Recommended Modeling Style Verilog

Verilog Supported and Unsupported Constructs

The following constructs are supported by Verilog2VHDL.

Data Types

Supported

- wire, tri, supply0, supply1, memory, integer, time, real, reg, parameter

Not Supported

- net type(s) tri1, wand, triand, tri0, wor, trior, trireg
- expand range, charge strength, drive strength, delay specification for net declaration

Expressions

Supported

- operand types : net, register, bit-select, bit-slice
  - o binary logical operators:
  - o ll, &&, !=, ==
  - o binary relational operators:
  - o <, <=, >, >=
- operand types : number, time, integer, net part-select, register part-select
  - o operators:
  - o {}, arith. operators, mod, !, ===, !==, <<, >>, ?:
  - o unary operators:
  - o &, ~&, l, ~l, ^, ~^ or ^~

Continuous Assignment Statements

Supported

- Left hand side : net (vector or scalar), constant bit select of a vector net, constant part select of a vector net, concatenation
- Delays of type (rising) only, can be of (min/typ/max) type
- Net declaration Assignment

Not Supported

- drive strength
- delays of type (rising, falling, turnoff)
- (force, release continuous assignment

Procedural Assignments

Supported

- Left hand side : register (vector or scalar), constant bit select of a vector register, constant part select of a vector register, memory element, concatenation
- Blocking procedural assignment

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Non-blocking procedural assignment
- Delays of type min/typ/max

Not Supported

- procedural continuous assignment (assign, deassign, force, release)

Gate and Switch Level

Supported

- gate type: and, nand, nor, or, xor, xnor, buf, not, bufif0, bufif1, notif0, notif1
- Delays of type (rising) only, can be of (min/typ/max) type

Not Supported

- gate type: nmos, pmos, cmos, rnmos, rpmos, rcmos, tran, tranif0, tranif1, rtran, rtranif0, pullup, pulldown
- drive strength
- delays of type (rising, falling, turnoff)

Behavioral Modeling

Supported

- always
- initial
- conditional if-else-if
- case, casex, casez
- for
- forever, repeat, while loops
- tasks
- function calls

Not Supported

- named events
- parallel blocks (fork/join)

Hierarchical Structures

Supported

- module
- ports: input, output, inout
- module instantiation
- named port connection with concatenated names
- macromodule

Not Supported

- hierarchical names

System Tasks and Functions

Supported

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- $display
- $fdisplay
- $write
- $fwrite
- $strobe
- $fstrobe

  Supported

  - %b, %d format specification (%h and %o are treated as %b)
  - scalars, vectors of nets and registers, string, time, integer type

  Not Supported

  - Type conversions for scalars, vectors of nets and registers, string, time, integer type
  - Format specification %c
- $readmemh
- $readmemb

  Supported

  - 1 entry per line in data file; only !//! type of comments
  - No address or two addresses in $readmem call
  - constant integer addresses

  Not Supported

  - Multiple entries per line in memory data file; !/* */! type of comments
  - One address in $readmem call
  - vector addresses
- $fopen
- $fclose
- $time
- $realtime
- $timescale
- $rtoi

Not Supported

- all other system tasks
- all other system functions

Compiler Directives

Supported

- `timescale
- `define
- `ifdef / `ifndef (with vpp)

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Not Supported

- all others

Recommended Verilog Coding Style

This section is devoted to making the user conversant with what is best translated by Verilog2VHDL. This is a very useful section for users who intend to use the tool on a continuous basis e.g library model developers. By enforcing the use of the constructs supported by verilog2vhdl in model development, a fully automatic VHDL translation can be achieved.

Verilog2VHDL supports a very large subset of the Verilog language. The user should read the Supported and unsupported section for a complete understanding of supported constructs.

As a rule of the thumb, almost all synthesizable constructs are supported by the tool.

Unsupported constructs

The following constructs are NOT supported by Verilog2VHDL. The user is strongly advised not to use these constructs in the input file. The user is warned via messages when these constructs are encountered in the input description. Comments are also inserted in the output file to pinpoint the relative location of the unsupported construct.

All Verilog2VHDL generated comments have the following format:

```
- *** NOTE: In file <input filename>, at line <line number in input file>:
- *** NOTE: <message indicating the type of construct not translated>
```

If the user has indeed no choice but to use the following constructs, the Known problems section has information on the manual editing required to obtain equivalent VHDL.

Verilog constructs not supported are listed below:

- UDPs
- assign and deassign procedural assignments
- force and release procedural assignments
- parallel blocks
- task disable
- specify blocks

Supported Constructs

The following Verilog constructs are supported. When applicable, each sub-section also has some relevant do's, don'ts and caveats.

- Numbers:

  All forms of numbers are supported. When using numbers in the binary, decimal, hex, or octal format always use sized vectors e.g 4'b 0010 for best results.

- Identifiers:

  All VHDL keywords (see Verilog2VHDL User's and Reference Manual) are included in the Verilog2VHDL reserved list of identifiers.

  o Avoid hierarchical names

  o Avoid using identifiers differing only in case; VHDL is a case-insensitive language

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Avoid using extended identifiers if not generating VHDL-93
- Make sure the Verilog identifier conforms to the following VHDL identifier requirement: letter {_}letter_or_digit

- Data Types: Do not use
  - strengths in net declaration
  - net types other than `wire', `tri0', `tri1', `supply0' and `supply1'.
- Operators and Expressions: Do not use
  - `signed and `unsigned compiler directives
  - delay of the type (mintypmax_expression, mintypmax_expression, mintypmax_expression).
- Continuous Assignments: Do not use
  - strengths in net assignment.
  - delay of the type (mintypmax_expression, mintypmax_expression, mintypmax_expression).
- Procedural Assignments: Do not
  - drive a Verilog register in more than one block. This can result in mismatches between synthesis and simulation models. If there are multiple drivers for a design, Verilog2VHDL inserts the code needed to turn off drivers of inactive processes.
  - use a non-blocking assignment with intra-assignment delay.
- Gate level Modeling:
  - Do not use switches e.g nmos, pmos. All gates are supported.
- Module instantiation:
  - Do not connect output ports using expressions; i.e do not use the concatenation operator in the expression.
  - use parameter value assignment.
- always and initial blocks:
  - If a signal needs to be initialized in the initial block, it needs to be assigned before any VHDL wait statement. In such cases, the initialize is moved up as a signal (or variable) initialization statement.
- Tasks, Functions, Task enables and Function calls: Always
  - Declare tasks before they are called.
  - Declare functions before using them in function calls.
  - In functions, be sure to assign to the function return value or variables declared inside the function; i.e do not write to registers declared at the module level.
- System tasks and functions: Always
  - limit the usage of system tasks and functions to those supported by the tool (see supported System Tasks and Functions).
  - avoid using $monitor{on,off} system tasks.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

8.6 Verilog2VHDL Known Issues

Known issues in verilog2vhdl

1. DR 465

- Description: Non-integer values of time_precision in `timescale compiler directive are not translated.
- Workaround: reduce the time resolution off the `timescale directive so that all values are integers. Example:

```
`timescale 1.5ns/150ps can be rewritten as
`timescale 1500ps/150ps
```

2. DR 486

- Description: $readmem calls with only ONE (start) address specified are not always translated correctly.
- Workaround: always specify both the start and the finish addresses for the system task call. Example:

```
parameter word_length = 8,
mem_size = 8;
reg [word _length-1:0] mem [ 0:mem _size-1]; ...
$readmemb("mem.dat", mem, 3); // this will NOT translate correctly
// modify the $readmemb call to
equivalent
$readmemb("mem.dat", mem, 3, mem _size-1); // this will translate correctly
```

3. DR 488

- Description: Addresses other than integer (i.e. hex and oct) are not supported for $readmem calls.

```
// This call will generate an error message
$readmemb("mem.dat", mem, 4'h2, 4'hB);
```

- Workaround: Specify all addresses for $readmem calls in integer format

4. DR 504

- Description: Memories used in concatenations on the left hand side of assignments do not get expanded to bits

Example:

```
reg[ 7:0] RL[ 1:8];
reg[ 7:0] RH[ 1:8];
reg[ 7:0] E[1:8];
integer ADDRESS;
...
{E[ ADDRESS] ,RH[ ADDRESS] ,RL[ ADDRESS] } = DEC_READ (ADDRESS);
```

translates to:

```
TYPE MEMORY _0 IS ARRAY (1 TO 8) OF std _logic _vector(7 DOWNTO 0);
SIGNAL E, RL,RL : MEMORY _0 REGISTER ;
(E(ADDRESS), RH(ADDRESS), RL(ADDRESS)) <=
              std _logic _vector' (DEC_READ(REG, E, RH, RL));
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

which is incorrect VHDL syntax.

- Workaround: Use a temporary vector to accommodate the return value of DEC_READ(ADDRESS), and then assign parts of the vector to corresponding memories.

5. DR 676

- Description: Case statement with non-constants as case item expressions translates to VHDL case statement with illegal syntax. Example:

```
reg a;
case (1'b1)
a : d = boo[ 0]; default : d = boo[ 3];
translates to: BEGIN
CASE '1' IS
WHEN a => -- wrong VHDL syntax
V2V_d <= to_stdlogic(boo(0));
WAIT FOR 0 NS; WHEN OTHERS =>
V2V_d <= to_stdlogic(boo(3));
WAIT FOR 0 NS; END CASE;
```

- For such cases, verilog2vhdl will print a warning, so that either Verilog input or output VHDL can be easily fixed manually.

6. DR 685

- Description: In certain cases, translations of ternary operators with integer arguments produce wrong outputs during simulation if other arguments to the operator assume values X or Z.

7. DR 692

- Description: Translation of registers to variables (- Make_Registers_Variables switch) does not work for tasks which do not have all parameters explicitly declared. Example:

```
task dummy3;
// this task uses global addressing
// including global referencing of parameters to a procedure call begin
s3 = a ^ b ;
dummy2(a, b, c, s4, out3);
end
endtask
```

- Workaround: Always specify all parameters to tasks explicitly if you want to use -mrv functionality

8. DR 695/697

- Description: Function calls and task enables where actual parameters do not match formal parameters in size are not translated correctly. In such cases, verilog2vhdl will automatically resize the formal parameters with a size conversion function, which cannot be passed as an output or inout parameter. The same will happen if the actual parameter to a function call/task enable is a concatenation. Example:

```
task MAX;
inout [ 3:0] first; input [ 3:0] second; begin
if (first < second) first = second;
end
endtask
...
reg [7:0] a, b; MAX(a, b);
translates to:
PROCEDURE MAX (SIGNAL first : INOUT
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
std _logic _vector(3 DOWNTO 0) BUS;
second : IN std _logic _vector(3 DOWNTO 0))
IS
BEGIN
IF first < second THEN
first <= second; WAIT FOR 0 NS; END IF;
END;
SIGNAL a, b : std _logic _vector(7 DOWNTO
0);
MAX(to_stdlogicvector(a, 4),
to_stdlogicvector(b, 4));
```

- Workaround: Always make sure that formal and actual parameters of tasks and functions match in size.

9. DR 696

- Description: Subprogram calls made from within other subprograms may result in mismatches between formal and actual parameter classes, e.g. a variable may be passed when a signal is required.

10. DR 698

- Description: The Verilog preprocessor supplied with verilog2vhdl for the purpose of providing support for compiler directives presently is in beta version, and does not have any user messaging whatsoever. Usage:

```
vpp <input_file><output_file>
```

11. DR 771

- Description: Translations of decimal constants are not sized properly in concatenations. Example:

```
reg [ 19:0] a;
...
a = { 10'd0, 10'd0};
SIGNAL a : std _logic _vector(19 DOWNTO 0) REGISTER ;
...
a <= std _logic _vector' (0 & 0); -- wrong translation
```

- Workaround: Use binary constants instead of decimal.

12. DR 911

- Description: Verilog identifiers differing only in case are not resolved. Example:

```
reg a;
reg A;
```

  will both correspond to

```
signal a : std _logic;
```

- Workaround: Make sure that your source does not contain such identifiers.

13. DR 953

- Description: In some rare cases, verilog2vhdl will put entities in the output VHDL file in the wrong order, i.e. an entity will be instantiated before defined in the file.
- Workaround: Manually fix the order of entities in the output VHDL file.

14. BZ 21: Problems while translating functions in the output file

- Description: Translator gives an error while translating function from Verilog to VHDL.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Workaround: Function MUST be declared before it is used in the input Verilog file. Please move the function to the top of the module declaration before translating.

8.7 Verilog2VHDL Release Notes

Verilog2VHDL Release Notes: Software Version 6.0 May 2007

Changes in current version (6.0)

1. Added ‘pragma translate_on’ and ‘pragma translate_off’ to the list of synthesis directives, in addition to the existing ones (BZ 10)
2. Added a new switch –no_header. This switch will not print a header in the output file.
3. Made enhancements to the comment placement, to make output file similar to input.
4. Enhanced documentation. New documents added include- quick start guide, a summary of known bugs and workarounds, a brief document on recommended modeling style.

Changes in version 5.6

1. Improved Verilog pre-processor. It can process Verilog file with unlimited size. It is now able to process "defines" with empty macro.
2. The readability of the VHDL output is dramatically improved. The improvements includes proper indentation, better comment positioning, and consistent spacing between statements.
3. The unnecessary type conversion functions are eliminated. The previous version of the tool widely used type conversion functions. In some situations, these type conversion functions are not necessary, although they don't affect the functionality of the output. These unnecessary type conversion functions are eliminated in the new release so that the output code is functional and clean.
4. Shift operations and condition operations in parameter declarations are now supported.
5. License utility is upgrade in this version. The license daemon and utility distributed with the new release is version 8.2.

Changes in version 5.5

1. A new option, "-vpp", is added for integrating Verilog pre-processing. When set, this option instruct the translator to pre-process the Verilog source file, elaborate compiler directives such as "ifdef", "include", etc, and generate an Intermediate File (IF). The translation then proceeds on the intermediate file.
2. A new option, "-an", is added to allow users to rename the generated VHDL architecture. The default name of the generate architecture is "VeriArch".
3. The library name for the packages provided by SynaptiCAD is renamed. The original name was "Verilog". The new name is "ASC".
4. Indentation of the output VHDL code is improved. 5. Library files provided with the translator are revised and upgraded.

Changes in version 5.0

1. The option “-mrv” is re-defined. This option improves the translation of blocking statement without putting “wait for 0 ns” after each translated statement.
2. Verilog POSEDGE/NGEDGE event controls are translated into standard VHDL edge functions : rising_edge/falling_edge, instead of the functions provided by the tool. It increases the compatibility and synthesizability of the translated code.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

3. A bug in provided library files is fixed.
4. A bug in translating definition of variables is fixed.

Changes in version 4.4

1. The distributed package now includes both VHDL2Verilog and verilog2vhdl translator. They are licensed separately.
2. Using signals as delay parameters is supported.
3. A bug in Verilog for-loop is fixed. The translation could be wrong when increment of for-loop is other than 1.
4. A bug on type conversion function is fixed.
5. More ternary functions are added to the library file functions.vhd.
6. A bug in Verilog if-else statement is fixed. The sequence of translated VHDL elsif could be wrong in some cases.
7. Support of test bench translation is improved. A few bugs on FILE I/O translation are fixed.

Changes in version 4.3

1. Case statements with constant expressions are supported. In Verilog, it is possible to use a constant expression for case expression and match the value of the constant expression against case items, while it is not allowed in VHDL.
2. The defparam statements will not be validated if option "-nc" is used. It will allow user to continue the translation without error even if some instance modules are not available.
3. More functions are added to the library file utils.vhd.

Changes in version 4.2

1. SynaptiCAD's products now use FLEXlm License Manager.
2. The verilog2vhdl and VHDL2Verilog are now two features of one SynaptiCAD tool -- V2V translator. The directory structure of V2V translator is different from the old verilog2vhdl or VHDL2Verilog structures.
3. The environment variables $V2 V_HOME and $VHDL2V _HOME (for VHDL2Verilog translator) are merged into a new environment variable $ASC HOME.
4. Y2K compliant.
5. Improved Verilog pre-processor(vpp) to provide better support for 'define, 'include and 'ifdefs/ ifndefs.

Changes in version 3.3 :

5. verilog2vhdl translator now uses Elan License Manager.
6. Two versions of buffers.vhd package - for synthesis and simulation - were merged into one.

3. New -Map_Registers_to_Variables (-mrv) switch allows to translate Verilog registers to VHDL variables. By default, registers are translated to signals. Existing restrictions on using -mrv switch:

   - All parameters to tasks/functions have to be passed explicitly
   - All inout/output task enabling arguments have to match the respective declared task arguments by size
   - Concatenations as inout/output parameters to tasks and functions are not supported

4. A beta-version of a Verilog pre-processor (vpp) is included in $V2V_HOME/bin. This pre-

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

processor is built using the GNU gcc. 'vpp' fully supports `defines, `includes, and `ifdefs/ifndefs. Usage is vpp input_file [output_file] . If no output file is specified, output goes to stdout.

Suggested usage:

```
vpp input_f ile.v temporary_f ile.v
v2v temporary_f ile.v temporary_f ile.hdl [v2v switches]
```

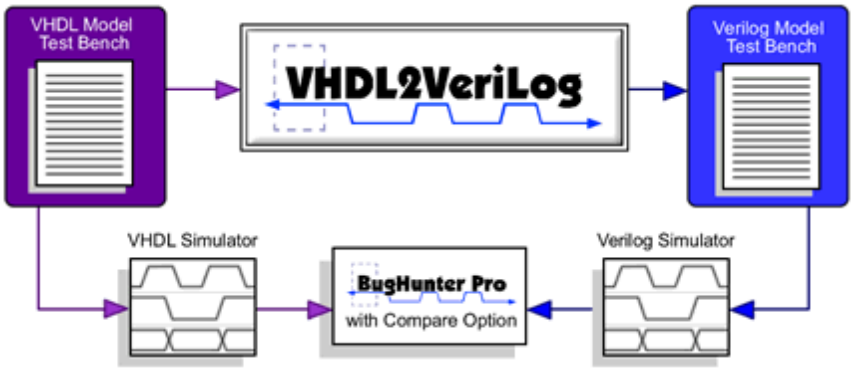
5. Instance names of Verilog primitive gates are preserved as the equivalent assignments' labels.

1. TERNARY functions in functions* .vhd packages were modified to comport with the behavior of the ? operator for X and Z values of the conditional expression, as defined in Verilog LRM.
2. Support for translation to VHDL std_ulogic types was removed. Now, only std_logic types are supported.
3. Support for ranges in parameter declarations was added.
4. A switch - Preserve_order to keep the order of concurrent statements the same as it was in the input Verilog file was added.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 9: VHDL2Verilog Translation

BugHunter Pro can also act as a graphical interface for SynaptiCAD's V2V code translators. To use the features in this chapter you will need a license for VHDL2Verilog in addition to your BugHunter Pro license. The translator can also be run from the command line, but the graphical interface makes it a lot easier to setup the options and see the results.



VHDL2Verilog translates hierarchical IEEE Standard 1076-87 and 93 VHDL to Verilog HDL. It translates all structural VHDL constructs, as well as a large subset of RTL VHDL constructs. Verilog that is created by VHDL2Verilog is functionally equivalent to input VHDL, and because of one-to-one mapping of VHDL to Verilog, is easy to understand. Syntax and semantic checking of the VHDL input is also performed during translation and output Verilog is compatible with any Verilog-XL compatible simulator.

VHDL2Verilog is a valuable design reuse tool because it preserves the level of abstraction during translation. There is a one-to-one mapping of constructs in most cases. Because the abstraction level is preserved, Verilog can remain technology independent in cases where the input is behavioral or RTL.

VHDL2Verilog can:

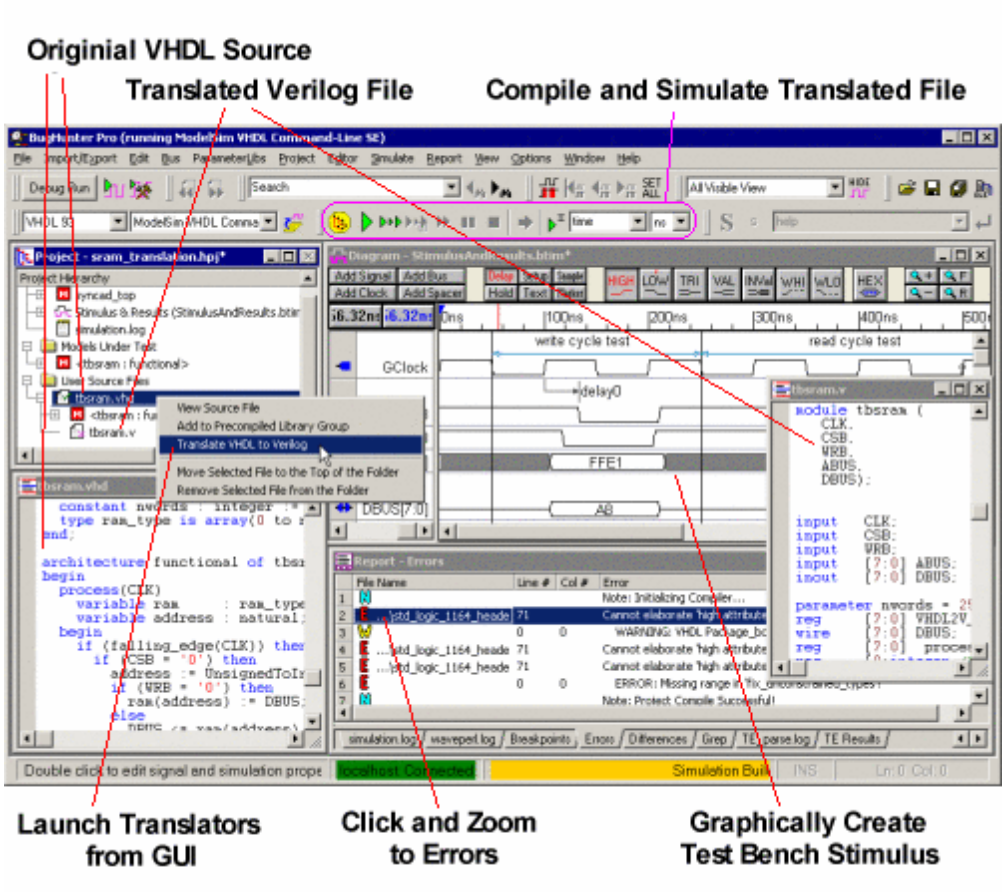
- be useful to designers working in a VHDL/Verilog environment,
- be integrated into Verilog-only based tools,
- provide library translation (VHDL library => Verilog library) capability, and
- automate the model generation procedure.

VHDL2Verilog can be obtained with an object-oriented Software Procedural Interface (SPI) to access the output HDL, and is currently available on Linux and Windows platform.

9.1 Graphical Interface for Translation

If you have purchased BugHunter Pro or VeriLogger Extreme along with the VHDL2Verilog translator, you can use BugHunter as a graphical interface to the command line translator. BugHunter makes it easy to run the translator, fix errors in both the generated and the original code, verify the translated code with a simulator, and create language-independent test bench code to help test the translated code and compare its functionality against the original code. If you are running VHDL2Verilog from the command line, use the options in Section 9.2: VHDL2Verilog Translation Options 154 to control the translator.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

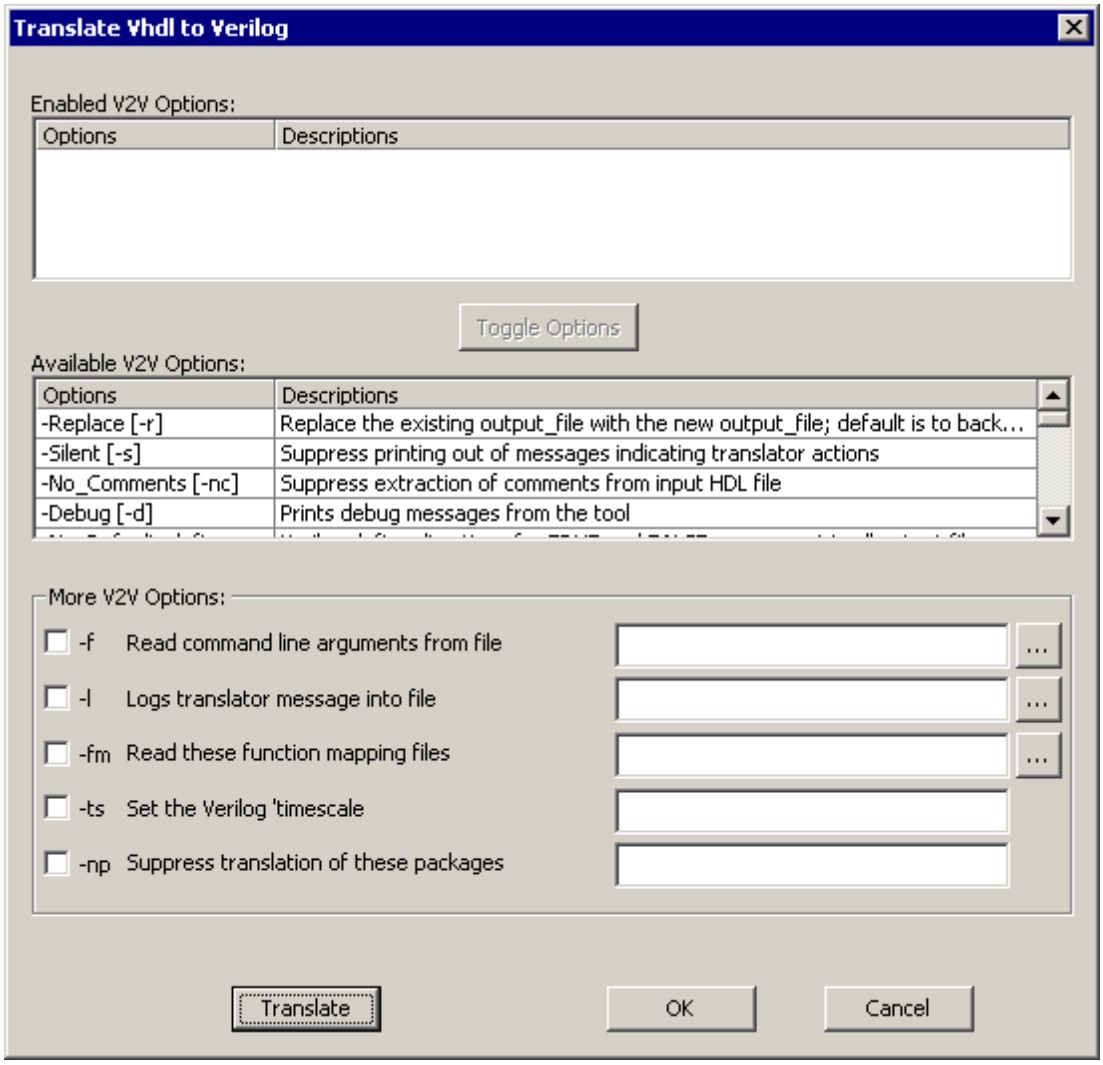


Using BugHunter Pro's Graphical Interface

BugHunter Pro stores the translation options and list of files using a Project file (*.hpj). Before starting a translation, create a project and add in the files to be translated.

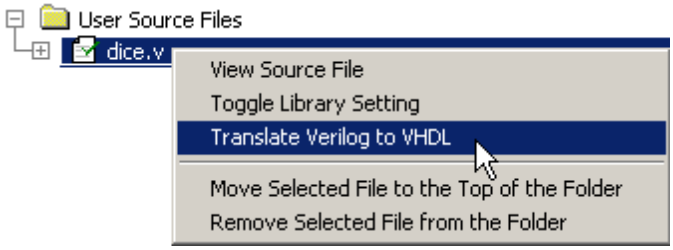
- Open a project or create a new one using the **Project > New Project** menu option as discussed in Step 3: Create a Project 119.
- Add source code files to the project by right clicking on the ***User Source Files*** folder in the Project Window and choosing either **Add** or **Copy Files to Source File Folder** menus to open a *file* dialog as discussed in Step 4: Add Source Files to the Project 14.
- Set the translation options by choosing **Project > Translate VHDL to Verilog** menu. This opens the translate options dialog. If you press the **Translate** button in this dialog, all the HDL source files in the project will be translated.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.



- VHDL2Verilog provides several options that allow you to tailor the operation of the tool. To enable an option, select it in the **Available V2V Options** list and then click the **Toggle Options** button in the middle to move it to the **Enabled V2V Options** list at the top of the screen.

- To translate a single source file in your project, right click on one of the source files and choose a **Translate** function from the context menu. The options set in the previous step will be used to translate the file. We generally recommend translating one file at a time.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- The translated file will appear underneath the original file. Double click on either file to view the source code it contains.



Fix errors in the original model code:

Once a new file is generated, there may be translation errors because the mapping between languages is not a perfect match. Errors found in the generation file will be listed in the simulation log tab of the Report window. Double clicking on an error will open the original code in an editor window so that you can quickly work through those errors.

When there is a decision that the translator could not resolve, the translator will often leave some placeholder code in the generated code. The intention of the placeholder code is to create a compile error if you try to simulate the translated code before fixing the problem and to also give you a hint as to what needs to be added at that particular point.

Below is an example where the translator could not find the definition for the **'high** attribute so it inserted some placeholder code and reported an error.

Original VHDL code

```
subtype natural is integer range 0 to integer'high;
variable address : natural;
```

Translated Verilog with Placeholder error "integer /* ignored attribute: 'high */"

```
reg [0:integer /* ignored attribute: 'high */]  process_1_address;
```

The solution here would be to select the desired bit size for your Verilog representation of the address signal and manually modify the generated code. For example:

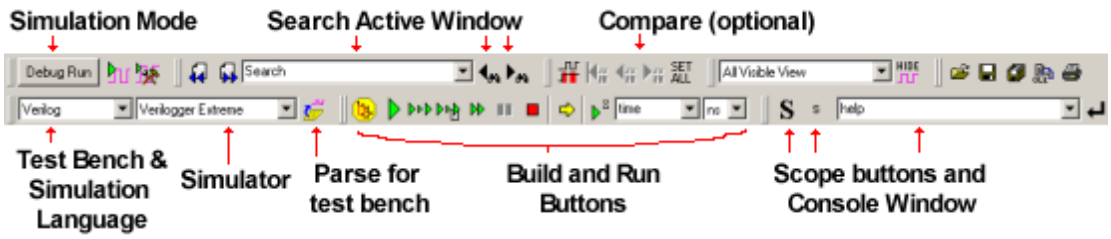
```
reg [0:15] process_1_address;
```

Verify the translation with a simulator

BugHunter can also act as a graphical debugger for your own simulators. First you will need to set up BugHunter to work with your simulators by using the **Options > Simulator / Compiler Settings** to open a dialog and fill out the simulator information. See Chapter 1: Getting Started with BugHunter 8 for information on setting up an external simulator.

It is frequently useful to create two compile configurations for your BugHunter project (one for compiling the original source code and one for the translated source code). You can set the **Compile Source Files Of Type** check boxes in the **General** tab of the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog so that one configuration only compiles Verilog files and the other configuration only compiles VHDL files (See Section 2.1 Project Simulation Properties 23).

Next, you can simulate using the Build and Run buttons. The compiler that runs will be determined by the settings in the Test Bench Language and Simulator dropdown boxes on the main button bar. See Chapter 2: Simulation and Debugging Functions 22 for more information.



Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Create language-independent test bench code

BugHunter Pro can also take simulation results from one language and create a testbench with the other language. See Chapter 3: Waveforms and Test Bench Generation 56 for more information on drawing and managing test benches.

9.2 VHDL2Verilog Translation Options

If you are using the command line version of the translator, you can control the translator by adding command line arguments after listing the file(s) to be translated:

```
vhdl2verilog input_file [output_file] [options] [-Help]
                        [-Usage] [-Version]
```

where option can be one or all of

[-File {file_name}] [-Replace] [-Silent] [-No_Comments] [-Debug]

[-No_Default_defines] [-No_Package_translation {package_file_names}]

[No_Component_Check] [-Include_Package_files] [-Function_Map {files}]

[-Ignore_Subprogram_Calls] [-Translate_Subprogram_Bodies]

[Preserve_Generate] [Support_Multi-dimensional array] [Ignore_Integer_Range]

[Support_Directives] [-Force_Lower_Case] [-Time_Scale {time}]

[-Log {logfile_name}] [-SYNTHesis] [-87] [-No_header] [-No_timescale]

Translation Option Summary

-File {file_name} [-f {file_name}]:

Read command line arguments from the specified file

-Replace [-r]:

Replace the existing output_file with the new output_file ; default is to backup the output_file to <output_file_name>.old

-Silent [-s]:

Suppress printing out of messages indicating translator actions

-No_Comments [-nc]:

Supress extraction of comments from input HDL file

-Debug [-d]:

Prints debug messages from the tool

-No_Default_defines [-nd]:

Verilog define directives for TRUE and FALSE are present in all output files; use of this switch suppresses printing of default defines

-No_Package_translation {package_names} [-np {package_names}]:

Packages with <package_name> or having <package_name> as prefix are not translated; this can be used to suppress translation of specific packages.

-No_Component_Check [-ncc]:

Translation will proceed even if some component definitions or entity declarations are missing; this can be used to force translation of individual components without all its components; the translation result might not compile because of the absence of its

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

component. This option is especially useful when translating files that reference encrypted IP components for which definitions are not available.

-Include_Package_files [-ip]:

Use of this switch will direct the translator to write the translation of packages into files '<package_name>_package.verilog' and '<package_name>_modules.verilog'; default is to include them in the output file

-Function_Map {files} [-fm {files}]:

Load one or more function map files that describe how to map functions and procedures to their Verilog counterparts. For details on creating and using function map files, see Chapter 9.4 Mapping Functions and Procedures 157.

-Ignore_Subprogram_Calls [-isc]:

Do not translate the headers of function and procedure calls.

-Translate_Subprogram_Bodies [-tsb]:

Translate the bodies of functions and procedures into a separate file (overrides the -isc switch). By default, subprogram bodies will not be translated. Translation is done on unconditional basis: output is not guaranteed to work.

-Preserve_Generate [-pg]:

Preserve generate statement. Generate Statements will not be elaborated if the concurrent body contains only concurrent assignments

-Support_Multi-dimensional_array [-sm]:

Bit-wise access of multi-dimensional array will be translated. Additional signals or subprograms may be created for translating multi-dimensional arrays

-Ignore_Integer_Range [-iir]:

Ignore the integer range and translate VHDL integers to 32 bit Verilog integers

-Support_Directives [-sdi]:

Support translation directives. This disables and enables translation of code between the following directives: translate_off/translate_on, synopsys translate_on/ synopsys_translate_off,pragma_translate_on/pragma translate_off, synthesis_translate_on/ synthesis translate_off, and ambit_translate_on/ambit translate_off.

-Force_Lower_Case [-flc]:

Changes all identifiers to lower case

-Time_Scale {timescale} [-ts {timescale}]:

Set the Verilog 'timescale

-Log {logfile_name} [-l {logfile_name}]:

Logs translator messages into file <logfile_name>; default log file is 'vhdl2v.log'

-SYNTHesis [-synth]:

Produces synthesizable code; presently restricted to suppressing initial statements and using '==' Verilog operators instead of '===' operators

-87 [-87]:

Disable support for VHDL-93; enable VHDL-87 support instead.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

-No_header [-nh]

Do not print SynaptiCAD header in the output file.

-No_timescale [-nt]

Do not print timescale directive in the output file. Default is OFF(timescale is printed in the output file).

-Save_Parenthesis [-sp]

Inserts parenthesis in expressions to prevent confusions about precedence of operators.

-Blocking [-bl]

Use blocking assignments in all combinational procedural blocks

-Force_If_Generate [-fig]

Force translation of 'if_generate' statement even when the 'if' condition evaluates to false. The result may not be equivalent to the input when this option is set. Manual editing of the translation result may be necessary."

9.3 Mapping VHDL packages to file locations

Translating files that reference VHDL packages

You must specify the location of packages being used by the input VHDL file. By default, VHDL2Verilog looks in the current working directory for the filename <package_name>.vhd, and if the file is not found there, in $SYNCAD_HOME/v2v/lib/<package_name>.vhd.

However, the user can create a file vhdl2v.map in the current directory, and specify the mapping of VHDL packages to the physical file location. The vhdl2.v file can be manually created or automatically created with the mapmaker utility.

Manually mapping packages to package files with vhdl2v.map file

vhdl2v.map is an ASCII file with format as shown below:

```
// This is a comment
// Package name  Name of file containing package
functions        $SYNCAD_HOME/v2v/lib/functions_header.vhd
numeric_std      $SYNCAD_HOME/v2v/lib/numeric_std_header.vhd
my_package       mine.vhd
bscmp            ibuf_pack.hdl
```

`//' or `#' as the first character(s) of a line denotes a comment. Everything following the comment will be ignored. A mapping line should contain two fields. The first field is the package name exactly as used in the VHDL file, and the second field is the complete path to the physical location of the VHDL file containing that particular package.

The delimiter between the two fields can be a space, tab or a combination of the above. Previously defined environment variables can be used to specify pathnames.

A default map file can be found in the $SYNCAD_HOME/v2v/lib directory. Usually, the user would copy this default map file to the current directory and modify it as necessary.

On NT the following syntax is valid as well (i.e using %% for variables and \ instead of / for hierarchical separators):

```
functions    %SYNCAD_HOME%\v2v\lib\functions_header.vhd
```

Using Mapmaker Tool to automatically generate a vhdl2v.map file

VHDLl2Verilog comes with an automated tool, mapmaker, to help you quickly create map files. At a

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

command prompt, run mapmaker with the list of your source files, and it will generate a **vhdl2v.map** file in the current directory which contains mappings for all of the packages in those source files, plus the default mappings. You can also manually add additional mappings to the map file created by mapmaker.

Syntax:

```
mapmaker.exe {-d pathname} <list_of_VHDL_files>
```

Arguments:

The '-d' option is used to specify the output directory for the 'vhdl2v.map' file.

The list of VHDL files is scanned for packages. If a package is found,an entry is made in the 'vhdl2v.map' file.

NOTE: VHDL-87 files need to be preceded by the '-87' switch (VHDL-93 is default).

NOTE: VHDL-93 files need to be preceded by the '-93' switch if '-87' switch was used previously on that line.

9.4 Mapping Functions and Procedures

Function Mapping and Translation

VHDL2Verilog allows users to direct how it should process subprograms present in VHDL input files using function map files (*.fm files). Function map files are loading using the following command line syntax:

-fm file1 file2 ...

If any function map file is not found in the current directory, VHDL2Verilog will look in the % SYNCAD_HOME%/v2v/lib directory.

Function map files can be used to suppress printing of type conversion function calls widely used in VHDL. Most of the type conversions are not needed in Verilog, and VHDL2Verilog can read in one or more user-supplied function map files, and utilize information therein to create optimized Verilog output.

In addition, a function map file can be used to specify a replacement string that will replace all occurrences of a function in the VHDL input. Each function can have its own string. It is assumed that the object specified by the replacement string exists.

Mapping Functions Existing in VHDL Packages

Typically, subprograms are encapsulated in VHDL packages. An example of such a package is the IEEE Standard STD_LOGIC_1164 package. Information about mapping of functions declared inside packages is supplied via the function mapping file. The function mapping file is an ASCII file with format as shown below:

```
// Comments and empty lines are ignored
// Each entry in the file should have 5 fields
//  1       2                3                  4           5
// Library Package          Function           Argument    Action
    IEEE   std_logic_1164    To_bit               1         ignore
    IEEE   std_logic_1164    To_StdULogicVector   1         -
    IEEE   standard          now                  $time     replace
```

The fields are:

1. Library :
    - SYNTAX: identifier

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- This field states the library.

2. Package :
   - SYNTAX: identifier
   - This field states the package name; if the file in which the package resides is not <package name>.vhd, the mapping of package name to file needs to be specified in the 'vhdl2v.map' file.
3. Function :
   - SYNTAX: identifier
   - This is the name of the function that needs to be ignored or replaced.
4. Argument :
   - SYNTAX: integer_number | string | "-"
   - The argument can be any character or character string. Based on the Action field entry (Field 5), the character string is interpreted as an integer (Action entry is "ignore" or "-") or a character string (Action entry is "replace").
   - If the argument is interpreted as an integer, this denotes the function parameter that needs to be printed in the output Verilog. The parameter to be printed is specified by giving the argument number. If this field contains '-', the argument defaults to '1'. It is an error if the function does not have the argument specified.
   - If the argument is interpreted as a string, this string will replace ALL occurrences of the function in the output Verilog.
5. Action :
   - SYNTAX: "ignore" | "replace" | "change" | "-"
   - VHDL2Verilog will ignore the function, and print only the specified argument in the output file if the entry is ``ignore" or ``-". If the entry is ``replace", the specified string will replace all occurrences of the function and drop all the arguments. If the entry is ``change", the specified string will replace all occurrences of the function and keep all the arguments.

Default Function Map Files

Function map files for popular packages are available in the software distribution in the %SYNCAD_HOME%/v2v/lib directory and loaded by default when the translator is run. These files are not loaded by default when a user-specified function map file is passed on the command line using the -fm option, but they can still be loaded by adding them to the command line arguments.

Mapping Functions in VHDL Input

Functions not declared in packages can be mapped by attaching VHDL2Verilog specific attributes in the architecture of the input VHDL source file. The two attributes and attribute specification that need to be defined in an architecture block declaration are as follows:

For printing a specified argument, use:

```
attribute vhdl2v_function_action : string;
attribute vhdl2v_function_argument : integer;
attribute vhdl2v_function_action of function_name : function is "ignore";
attribute vhdl2v_function_argument of function_name : function is 1;
```

In the above case, VHDL2Verilog will ignore the printing of the function name, and only print the 1st argument of the function call.

For replacing a specific function, use:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
attribute vhdl2v_function_action : string;
attribute vhdl2v_function_argument : string;
attribute vhdl2v_function_action of function_name : function is "replace";
attribute vhdl2v_function_argument of function_name : function is "whatever";
```

In the above case, string ``whatever'' will replace all occurrences of functions_name.

9.5 Translating Functions and Procedures

Functions (and procedure calls) can be translated (as opposed to being mapped) with the -tsb switch. Package bodies are not translated, so function declarations and bodies must be moved into an architecture for the tool to automatically translate them.

Subprograms that get called will be translated in the following manner:

```
...
FUNCTION foo (vec : std_logic_vector(7 DOWNTO 0)) return BOOLEAN; ...
```

If the above function is called in an architecture that is being translated, VHDL2Verilog will also create a file that contains the following Verilog code:

```
function foo;

input [ 7:0] vec;
begin
//
// *** INSERT THE TRANSLATED BODY HERE ***
//
end endfunction
```

If the body of the subprogram was available to the translator (e.g. in a PACKAGE BODY), the local signals, variables, constants, and local types will be translated as well.

9.6 D-FlipFlop Mapping

The translation of DFF-equivalent processes is restricted to a few templates.

NOTE: edges can be rising or falling; for example purposes, the rising edge has been chosen.

The main templates are:

1. An equivalent PROCESS in Verilog will be created if the first or last statement in the PROCESS sequential body is found to match the WAIT statements below. The process should have NO sensitivity signals.

```
process
begin
  - one of the following wait statements:
  wait until rising_edge(clk);
  wait until (clk'event AND clk'last_value = '0');
  wait until (clk'event AND clk'last_value = '0' AND clk = '1');
  wait until (clk'event AND clk = '1' );
  wait until (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0');
  wait until (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0' AND clk = '1');
  wait until (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk = '1');
   -- can be any legal VHDL construct in the sequential body
end process;
```

   For all these cases, output Verilog is:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
always @(posedge clk) begin
// Verilog statement end
```

2. If the process has two sensitivity signals, and one sensitivity signal corresponds to asynchronous reset, and one to clock, and there is ONLY one IF-ELS IF-END-IF statement in the PROCESS sequential body, an equivalent Verilog process is created as follows:

```
process (reset, clk)
begin
  if reset = '1' then q <= '0';
     -- one of the following elsif expressions:
       elsif rising_edge(clk) then
       elsif (clk'event AND clk'last_value = '0') then
       elsif (clk'event AND clk = '1' ) then
       elsif (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0' AND clk = '1')
   then
       elsif (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0') then
       elsif (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk = '1') then
           q <= d;
       end if;
end process;
```

Output Verilog is:

```
always @(posedge clk or posedge reset)
begin
   if (reset == 1'b 1)
        q <= 'b 0
   else
        q <= d;
   end
```

3. If the process has one sensitivity signal corresponding to clock and there is ONLY one IF-ELSIF-END-IF statement in the PROCESS sequential body, the PROCESS is mapped to an equivalent process in Verilog.

```
process (clk)
begin
   -- one of the following if expressions:
     if rising _edge(clk) then
     if (clk'event AND clk'last_value = '0') then
     if (clk'event AND clk'last_value = '0' AND clk = '1') then
     if (clk'event AND clk = '1' ) then
     if (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0') then
     if (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk'last_value = '0' AND clk = '1') then
     if (NOT clk'STABLE AND clk = '1') then
        q <= d;
     end if;
   end process;
```

Output Verilog is:

```
always @(posedge clk)
 begin
    q <= d;
end
```

NOTE: All the above templates are also supported for Verilog negedge expressions (the 'clk' value being '0' instead of '1')

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

9.7 Importing (parts of) Verilog files

Tool-specific attributes can be defined in the VHDL entity declaration to import preexisting Verilog files. Currently, the framework of attributes provides support for full Verilog module import.

To import Verilog files in VHDL2Verilog, the user can define the attribute

VHDL2V_MODULE in the entity declaration. The type mark of this attribute needs to be of type STRING. Next, the attribute needs to be specified in the entity declaration. The expression in the attribute specification should also be a string. The pre-defined format of the string is explained below. Optional parts of the string in attribute specification are in italics.

```
( <file_to_read_from> ) (<begin_line>, <end_line>)
```

Spaces are ignored. It is an error to define multiple VHDL2V_MODULE attribute specifications. If begin and end line numbers for the file are not specified, the whole file is imported. If begin and end line numbers are specified, the line(s) starting from the specified begin line number till the end line number are read in.

For example, consider the following attribute definition and specification:

```
LIBRARY ieee;
USE ieee.std_logic_1164. all;
ENTITY aha IS
PORT (SIGNAL s : OUT std_logic;
      SIGNAL co : OUT std_logic;
      SIGNAL a : IN std_logic;
      SIGNAL b : IN std_logic;
      SIGNAL c : IN std_logic);
attribute vhdl2v_module : string;
attribute vhdl2v_module of aha : entity is
      "(/home/users/foo/verilog/demo.v) (1,20) ";
END aha;
```

In the above example, because of the specification of attribute VHDL2V_MODULE, VHDL2Verilog will paste line 1 to 20 of file /home/users/foo/verilog/demo.v in the output file, instead of translating the given ENTITY and ARCHITECTURE description of aha to Verilog.

NOTE: No sematic, syntax or error checking is performed on the imported file. The same version that exists on disk is pasted in the output file.

9.8 Reserved Verilog Keywords

The following words are reserved in VHDL2Verilog and cannot be used in any of the input files. If one or more of the words below does occur, an error is flagged. The simplest method of working around use of a Verilog reserved keyword is to globally replace the word in the input VHDL source code and rerun the translation on the modified code.

```
always assign
buf bufif 0 bufif 1
casex casez cmos
deassign default defparam disable
edge else end endattribute endcase endmodule
endfunction endprimitive endspecify endtable endtask event
force forever fork function
highz0 highz1
initial inout input
join
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
large
macromodule medium module
negedge nmos notif0 notif1
output
parameter pmos posedge primitive pull0 pull1 pullup pulldown
rcmos reg release repeat rnmos rpmos rtran rtranif 0 rtranif 1
scalared small specify specparam strength strong0 strong1
supply0 supply1
table task tran tranif0 tranif1 tri tri0 tri1
triand trior trireg vectored
wand weak0 weak1 while wire wor
```

9.9 Frequently Asked questions VHDL2Verilog

What if I have a question that isn't answered on this page?

If you run into a problem that does not have a solution on this page please send the following information, if available, to sales@syncad.com:

- A detailed description of the problem, including under what circumstances the problem occu red, what version of the product you are using and on what platform you are using it.
- The log file: vhdl2v.log or v2v.log.
- The error message: cut and save the screen mesage to a file and attach it to your e-mail.
- The command line
- The input and output files

We will begin investigating the problem immediately, and respond to you as quickly as possible.

What does the -ssc switch do?

-ssc means Support Subprogram Call. It causes the translator to translate subprogram calls in the header only. You will see a verilog header in the <package_name>_package.verilog file, but no subprogram body. This is for the situations where some special functions are desired to be tranlsated manually.

I cannot find the std_logic_misc or std_logic_signed packages in your library. Do you provide it?

SynaptiCAD does not provide these packages. You can find them in many simulators, but some of the packages use v2v 's reserved words. The best way to work this out is to tailor the standard packages to your need. In most cases you only need a small part of the functions in the packages. You copy the standard package file to your own directory, delete the functions you do not need, and save it as your own file. Put this file name in the vhdl2v.map file instead of the standard package then do the translation. Even if the translator complains about the reserved words in the package, you can easily fix it because it is very small.

What does the -ssb switch do?

SSB stands for Support Subprogram Body. -ssb is an extension of -ssc. The translator translates the subprogram bodies as well as the headers. In this case, the whole package will be read in by the Translator even though only one or two functions in the package are used.

Does the tool append new information to <package_name>_package.verilog every time a new design file is converted, or is the existing package data in <package_name>_package.verilog overwritten with new data from the most recently converted file?

The new <package_name>_package.verilog will overwrite the old one, because each

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

<package>.verilog is exclusively for the <output>.verilog file. The package is embedded to the <output>.verilog by an 'include statement.

Does the tool support the user naming the output file for converted packages to something other than the default <package_name>_package.verilog?

The tool cannot change the package name, but you can. Just rename the package file (or even edit it as you like), and change the corresponding name in the 'include statement in the <output>.verilog.

What should I do if I receive a Construct not supported warning message?

This warning message means that in your code you have used constructs that SynaptiCAD's Translator does not support at present time. This is because VHDL and Verilog cover different levels of abstraction, and some constructs in one do not have matching constructs in the other. In other words, "translatable" VHDL/Verilog is only a subset of standard VHDL/Verilog. Not all the constructs can be automatically translated. The tool will leave a comment in the place of the unsupported constructs in the output file to remind user to hand translate them. The major unsupported constructs are

- generics without a default value
- signal assignments with multiple waveforms
- unconstraint types and their attributes
- multidimensional accesses
- access type
- concurrent procedure calls
- TEXTIO procedures and functions

For a detailed list of unsupported constructs in VHDL and Verilog, please refer to the manual bundled with the software package.

What do the WARNINGs mean? Can I ignore them?

The warning messages mean that the resultant translation may or may not be correct. The warning messages remind you to check those lines of the translation to make sure they are correct. If you are sure, just ignore the warnings. If not, run the translation through a simulator to see if it complains about the indicated lines.

I received an error message during translation that I used a reserved word in my code. What does it mean?

SynaptiCAD's translator has a list of reserved words, such as "input" "output" "mod", etc, that can not be used as identifiers. The solution is to globally search and replace the reserved words you used with other names. A list of reserved words can be found in the Table of Reserved Words and in the release notes.

What is function mapping?

The primary purpose of the function mapping file is to direct VHDL2Verilog on how it should process FUNCTIONs present in input VHDL.

It can be used to suppress printing of type conversion function calls widely used in VHDL. Most of the type conversions are not needed in Verilog, and VHDL2Verilog can read in a user-supplied function mapping file(s), and utilize information therein to create optimized Verilog output.

In addition, a function map file can be used to specify a replacement string that will replace all occurences of a function in the VHDL input. Each function can have its own string. It is assumed that the object specified by the replacement string exists.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

How do I use function mapping files to direct the translation of a function?

When you translate a VHDL file, you can ignore VHDL functions or replace VHDL functions with the ones you specified. A function mapping file will tell the translator what functions should be ignored, or what functions should be replace. You can modify the function mapping file according to your requirements. When you perform the translation, add an option -fm mapping_file_name to the end of the command line.

For detailed information of using function mapping file, please refer to User's Manual.

General Questions

What if some of my comments are missing or misplaced in the translated version of my code?

We realize that our translators do not always preserve comments perfectly. This is because the translation is not line-by-line, so it can be difficult to place the comment strings in the resultant code. For example, the concurrent assignments in VHDL may be translated to Verilog in different order, so the translator may not be smart enough to decide if the comment should go with the first statement or the second one. Besides different syntax of VHDL and Verilog statements make it difficult for the tool to associate comments properly with the line before or after the comment.

The aim of the translator is to translate code from one HDL to the functional equivalent of the other (same simulation and synthesis results). The current version has an option to suppress all comments, which will solve your problem if the misplaced comments are merely an annoyance.

In the latest release several enhancements have been made to keep comments in place. We will keep working on the issue and users will see the further improvement gradually.

9.10 Recommended Modeling Style VHDL

VHDL Supported and Unsupported Constructs

The following is a comprehensive list of VHDL constructs translated by VHDL2Verilog.

Entity Declaration

Supported:

- Design with a single entity with architecture
- Entity ports: IN , OUT , INOUT , BUFFER , LINKAGE
- Interface element types:
  - BOOLEAN
  - BIT
  - BIT_VECTOR
  - STD_ULOGIC
  - STD_LOGIC
  - STD_ULOGIC_VECTOR
  - STD_LOGIC_VECTOR
  - INTEGER

Not supported:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Interface element types:
    - CHARACTER
    - STRING
    - REAL
- Design with no architecture
- Entity statements

Architecture Declaration

Supported:

- Multiple architectures for single entity declaration
- (Simple) Configuration declaration

Not supported:

- Design with an architecture and no entity
- Configuration specification

Packages and Package Bodies

Supported:

- Signal, Variable, Constant declaration
- Type declaration
- Subtype declaration
- Enumerated type declaration
- Component declaration
- Subprogram declaration
- Subprogram body (requires additional manual translation)

NOTE: Packages are translated only when used in a design!

Data Types

Supported:

- Signals/Variables/Constants of BASE subtype:
    - integer
    - real
    - bit
    - bit_vector
    - std_{u}logic
    - std_{u}logic_vector
    - character
    - string
    - alias declarations
- Signal/Variable initialization
    - to bit

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

    - to vector
    - to hex
- Subtype declarations with range constraint

  Limited Support: 2D arrays of supported types
- 1D arrays of supported types equivalent to arrays of bits up to 2D
- NOTE: for the above two cases, array types have to be CONSTRAINED.
- Enumerated type declaration
    - Signal of enumerated type (state variable) translated to reg
- Enumerated types declared in a:
    - Package
    - Architecture
    - Block
    - Process
- Time types
- Record types
- Based literals (only base 2, 8, 10, 16)

Not supported:

- Unconstrained types
- Files

Generics

Supported:

- Generics of base type as described in Data Types with default expression
    - integer
    - real
    - bit
    - bit_vector
    - std_{u}logic
    - std_{u}logic_vector
    - TIME

Not supported:

- Generics without default expression

Expressions

Supported:

- Expressions using signal and variables of types described in Data Types.
- Expressions with all VHDL supported operators:
    - +, -, &
    - AND, OR, XOR, NAND, NOR, XNOR (93)

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

        - unary + and -
        - *
        - /
        - MOD
        - =, /=, <, >, <=, >=
        - SLL, SRL
        - ** (power) operator (Only when used in a GENERATE statement)
    - Qualified expressions
    - Type conversions
    - Function calls
    - Aggregate primaries in an expression

Not supported:

- * * (power) operator (Except in generates)
- Allocator primaries

Sequential Statements

Supported:

- Wait statement (only in a process sequential body)
- Signal assignment
    - with INERTIAL delay
    - with TRANSPORT delay
    - NULL assignment
- Variable assignment
- Assignment to an aggregate
- If statement
- Case statement
- Loop statement (FOR WHILE)
- Null statement
- ASSERT statement
- Procedure call statement

Not supported:

- REPORT statement
- NEXT statement
- EXIT statement
- RETURN statement

Concurrent Statements

Supported:

- Block statements

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Process statements
- Conditional signal assignments
- Selected signal assignments
- Component instantiation statements
- Generate statements

Not supported:

- Concurrent procedure calls
- Concurrent assertion statements
- Guarded signal assignments

Block statements

Supported:

- Declarative part:
    - Type declaration
    - Subtype declaration
    - Constant declaration
    - Signal declaration
    - File declaration
    - Component declaration
    - Use clause (package)
- Statement part
    - nested Blocks
    - Process
    - Concurrent assignment
    - Component instantiation
    - Generate

Not supported:

- Ports and port maps
- Generics and generic maps
- Guard expressions

Process Statement

Supported:

- Process variable declaration
- Process with sensitivity list
- Process without sensitivity list
- Process with a WAIT as the first or last sequential statement
- Process with an infinite wait at the end of a sequential body
- Process with a WAIT UNTIL at any place in the sequential body

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Edge-sensitive processes equivalent to Dffs
    - Dffs with/without reset
    - rising/falling_edge function
    - 'EVENT attribute
    - 'STABLE attribute

Concurrent Signal Assignments

Supported:

- Concurrent assignment with delay
- Concurrent assignment to an aggregate
- Concurrent assignment to a target with simple expressions in the range NOTE: in Verilog, the expressions have to be CONSTANT
- Conditional assignment
- Selected signal assignment

Not supported:

- Multiple waveform elements in a concurrent signal assignment

Component Instantiations

Supported:

- Generic Maps
    - Generic mapping by ordered list
    - Generic mapping by using formals and actuals
- Port Maps
    - Port mapping by ordered list
    - Port mapping by using formals and actuals
    - Port aspect of component declaration different from the entity
    - Scalar and vector OPENs
    - 2D arrays as ports
- Instantiation of components residing in the same file
- Instantiation of components residing in a package

Generate Statement

Supported:

- IF generate
- FOR loop generate
- Nested generates (FOR/IF)
- Identical labels in generate block and in block enclosing generate
- Component instantiations in generates
- Concurrent assignments in generates
- Processes in generates: regular, edge-sensitive (DFF-style)

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Not supported:

- Declarations local to generate (block declarative items)
- Generates with loop parameters dependent on generics

Predefined Language Environment

Supported:

- NOW function
- Time type
- 'RANGE, 'LENGTH, 'LEFT, 'RIGHT, 'LOW, 'HIGH, 'EVENT, 'STABLE, 'LAST EVENT attributes

Not supported:

- Other attributes
- TextIO

9.11 VHDL2Verliog Known Issues

Known issues with VHDL2Verilog

1. DR 550

- Description: Overloaded VHDL functions cannot be discerned during function mapping. The problem comes about due to the fact that the function mapping takes into account only the name of the function.

15. DR 583

- Description: In a design that uses packages, the comment header from the package file frequently gets printed in the main output file instead. No known workaround exists.

16. DR 621

- Description: Real Delay values are translated into exponential values.
- Workaround: Manually change the delay values to reals again. For example: # (1. 90000 0e+0 0) can be changed to #1. 9.

17. DR 720

- Description: In entities with generates parameterized by generics, the generates are elaborated only for the default value of the generic(s). Hence, if the entity is instantiated with a generic value other than the default, the translation will not be correct. NOTE: this problem applies ONLY to the entities with generates.
- Workaround: Replicate the problematic entity so that there is a separate entity declaration for each used value of the generic.

18. DR 724

- Description: If different default values for a generic are specified in the entity and component declarations, vhdl2v takes the one in the entity, whereas it should take the one in the component declaration.
- Workaround: Make sure that the entity declaration uses the proper default value of the generic.

19. DR 788

- Description: An aggregate constant is translated to a concatenation. Example:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
TYPE WSizeTableType IS
ARRAY(INTEGER RANGE 1 TO 13) OF INTEGER;
CONSTANT TcWSizeTable: WSizeTableType :=
(7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25,
27, 29, 31);
```

translates to:

```
parameter TcWSizeTable = { 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21,
      23, 25, 27, 29, 31};
```

- Workaround: No easy workaround known. One has to manually change the Verilog output according to the design intent.

20. DR 848

- Description: Based numbers and octal and hex bitstrings in OTHERS are not correctly translated. Example:

```
sig_array16 <= ( OTHERS => 16#c# );
```

is translated to:

```
{sig_array16[ 3] , sig_array16[ 2] ,
        sig_array16[ 1], sig_array16[ 0]} = {(3 - 0 + 1){}};
// the literal disappears
```

- Workaround: Use bit string literals in aggregates with OTHERS

21. DR 765

- Description: No support for GUARD expressions. The GUARD expression, if present in the block declaration, has special meaning in the case of VHDL guarded conditional signal assignments.
- Workaround: The conditional signal assignment is equivalent to a VHDL signal assignment if the GUARD expression evaluates to true. Consider:

```
ARCHITECTURE ... BEGIN
test : BLOCK (reset != '1') IS BEGIN
a <= GUARDED '1'; END BLOCK;
END ARCHITECTURE;
is the same as
ARCHITECTURE ... BEGIN
PROCESS(reset)
BEGIN
if (reset != '1') THEN a <= '1';
end if;
END PROCESS;
```

22. BZ 19: Issue with translation of state machines

- Description: In the the .vhd file there are multiple declarations in which state name ‘idle’ appears. For example

```
type firststate is (idle, notidle) etc
type anotherstate is (idle, notsoidle) etc.
```

The translator defines a parameter in Verilog for each. In some cases, the name for common parameters (idle) gets mixed up in the output Verilog file. When there are assigned in the output fileTranslator mixes up these definitions and picks up the last definition of idle.

- Workaround: Modify the input file and rename the type definition. In the example, the new declaration could be-

```
type firststate is (idle, notidle) etc
type anotherstate is (idle1, notsoidle) etc.
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Note than name ‘idle’ in anotherstate is changed to ‘idle 1’.

9.12 VHDL2Verilog Release Notes

VHDL2Verilog Release Notes: Software Version 6.0 May 2007

Changes in current version (6.0)

1. Added ‘pragma translate_on’ and ‘pragma translate_off’ to the list of synthesis directives, in addition to the existing one(BZ 10)
2. Added a new switch –no_header. This switch will not print a header in the output file.
3. Added a new switch –no_timescale. This switch prevents printing of the timescale directive to the output.
4. Fixed issues while translating integer generics (BZ32).
5. Made enhancements to the comment placement. The translstor now a does a better job of placing comments in the output file. Added newline characters to make output look better.
6. Enhanced existing documentation and added new documents. These include- quick start guide, a summary of known bugs and workarounds, a brief document on recommended modeling style.

Changes in Version (5.6):

1. more flip-flop templates are supported. New templates include flip-flop with 2 "reset" or 2 "set" controls, and complex gated clock templates.
2. Translation without packages is now supported. The previous version stopped if any of the packages used in the design is not available. The new version will continue the translation and give a warning about the missing package, as long as missing the content of the package does not prevent the tool from running.
3. A new option, "-Force_If_Generate" (-fig), is added. With the option turned on, the tool will translate the "IF_GENERATE" block even though the "IF_CONDITION" is false. The result may need manual adjustment before compile when this option is used.
4. A new option, "-BLocking" (-bl), is added. this option tells the tool to use blocking assignments in all combinational procedural blocks. It is consistent with one of the Verilog code rules that are used by core developers.
5. A number of Space (" "), instead of Tab ("\t"), is now used in the output files for indentation.
6. License utility is upgrade in this version. The license daemon and utility distributed with the new release is version 8.2.

7. A bug in translation of VHDL "range" is fixed. In some rare cases, the attribute in range expression got dropped.

Changes in Version 5.5:

1. Accurate translation of VHDL aggregates is fully supported. The tool can automatically determine proper range and element associations.
2. 2D array access functions generated by the tools are improved.
3. Translation of vector slicing is improved.
4. Parameterization of the translation result is improved. Constants(parameters) are kept and used as much as possible, rather than elaborated.
5. 2 more forms of Flip-Flop descriptions are recognized and translated. Both POSEDGE and NEGEDGE in one condition expression is supported.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

6. More complete translation log information is provided. File names and line numbers of warnings messages and errors are given in the messages.
7. Using the same enumerate elements in different enumerate type definitions is supported, although it is not recommended for translatable VHDL coding style.
8. Empty packages containing only comments will not be generated.
9. The option "-ssb" is renamed to "-tsb".
10. The option "-ssc" is set as default. A new option "-isc" is added to turn off the "- ssc" option.
11. The option "-sir" is set by default. A new option "-iir" is added to turn off the "- sir" option.
12. A new option., "-flc", is added. It will instruct the translator to generate output file in lower case.
13. A number of bug fixes, including:
    - Integer unnecessarily converting to bits
    - Not generating synthesizable code when 2D array is initialized at declaration
    - parameters from a package positioning improperly
    - problem when the size of an aggregate is zero
    - Verilog loop variable not declared sometimes because of the case sensitivity of Verilog

Changes in version 5.0:

1. The number of package files created by the tool is minimized. In old versions, the tool creates a package file for subprograms even though the subprograms are not translated automatically by the tool.
2. Package files that are created by the tool are no longer placed in the current working directory. They are now placed into the directory where the main output file is in. The user can specify the path for the directory with the output file name.
3. The VHDL attribute **'event** is now fully supported. In old versions, it can only be translated when it is used to describe a flip-flip in certain templates. More flip-flop templates and latch templates have been added to support the translation of VHDL event control. The tool now can recognize and translate more forms of VHDL flip-flip and latch descriptions into proper Verilog flip-flop and latch syntax.
4. The VHDL attribute **'last_value** is now supported. This attribute sometimes is used to describe a flip-flop, and is often used for event control in test bench descriptions.
5. Procedure mapping is now supported in addition to function mapping. Function mapping is widely used to eliminate unnecessary VHDL type-conversion functions, or to replace them with user defined Verilog functions. With procedure mapping, you can even map VHDL procedures and system functions such as **write**, **writeline**, and now to proper Verilog tasks or functions. This significantly increases the tool's support of test bench related translation.
6. Verilog reserved words that are used as identifiers in VHDL files are now translated to Verilog identifiers by default. The Verilog identifiers start and end with the underscore character ("_"). The tool issues a warning message each time such an identifier is encountered so that the user can check and assure the correctness of the translation. In old versions, the tool reports an error and just stops translating.
7. Specifying integers with a range in port declaration is now supported. In old versions, integers with range are supported only when they are used in block definition.
8. Translator directives are now supported. In this version, three pairs of directives are added:

   -- **translate_off** and **translate_on**,

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

-- **synopsys translate_off** and **synopsys translate_on**,

-- **synthesis translate_off** and **synthesis translate_on**.

The block between the directive pairs is treated as a comment.

9. A new option, **no_component_check** (ncc), is added. This option forces the translation to proceed even though some or all of the instantiated entities or components are not available, eliminating the necessity of translating the whole design at once. You can now can translate a hierarchical design one component at a time, or re-translate an individual file in the whole design without involving all the others.
10. Array aggregates are fully supported, both position association and name association. The old version just supported aggregates with only one element association.

Changes in version 4.4:

7. Bit wise access of multi-dimensional arrays is now supported. A new switch "**- sm**" is added for this feature.
8. Integer with range is now supported. A new switch "**-sir**" is added for this feature.
9. Integer constant with based initial values are translated to parameters with proper based initial values that allow concatenation.
10. VHDL operator "**ABS**" is now supported.
11. VHDL concurrent signal assignment with register target is translated to an always block with proper sensitivity signals or an initial block.
12. VHDL operator "******" is supported if it is used in constant declaration.
13. Fixed a bug in VHDL physical unit translation.
14. Fixed a bug in VHDL "**wait until**" statement translation.
15. Fixed a bug in VHDL aggregation translation.
16. Fixed a bug that caused segmentation errors.

Changes in version 4.3:

1. The VHDL2Verilog now supports VHDL alias statement. A Verilog `define will be added for each VHDL alias statement.
2. The VHDL2Verilog now supports VHDL attribute "range".
3. VHDL generate statements can be preserved by using an option "-pg". In this case, the generate block will not be elaborated.
4. The translator now supports vector slicing. A VHDL vector, one slice of which is on the left hand side of a concurrent signal assignment, and the other slice of which is on the left hand side of a sequential signal assignment, will be translated to Verilog correctly.
5. Fixed a few bugs that caused segmentation errors.
6. Improved translation of wait statements and functions.

Changes in 4.2000 :

7. SynaptiCAD's products now use FLEXlm License Manager.
8. The VHDL2Verilog and verilog2vhdl are now two features of one SynaptiCAD tool -- V2V translator. The directory structure of V2V translator is different from the old VHDL2Verilog or verilog2vhdl structures.
9. Y2K compliant.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

10. Improved support for enumerated type and multidimensional array types. The problem with the occasional wrong subscript has been fixed.
11. Fixed problem with recognizing physical units of timescale: ms, us, ps, etc.
12. Fixed problem with the bitwidth of function return values.
13. Improved translation of subprogram body.
14. The environment variables $VHDL2V _HOME and $V2V_HOME (for verilog2vhdl translator) are merged into a new environment variable $ASC_HOME.

Changes in version 2.8:

1. NT version of VHDL2Verilog now uses FLEXlm License Manager.
2. A function map file option was added : change. The functionality of the change option is basically similar to that of the replace option. The difference between the two options is that replace will remove all arguments of the subprogram that is being replaced, while change will leave all arguments in place (and just change the subprogram name).
3. Improved support for CHARACTER and STRING types.
4. When subprograms are ignored during function mapping, the translator verifies if it is ok to drop the parentheses of the arguments. Otherwise the parentheses will be left in place to ensure correct elaboration.
5. Support for RECORD types in VHDL. The records are elaborated before translation:

   <record _name> _<element _name>
6. Improved way bitwidth expressions are printed. (No longer any expressions like: 4 - 0 + 1).
7. Fixed problem with the order of `include statements. The order was reversed which could lead to compilation problems due to inter-dependencies.
8. When using -synth switch, GENERIC MAP constructs are mapped to a synthesizable parameter value assignment of form: module_identifier # (parameter_value_assignment) module_instance

Changes in version 2.7:

1. VHDL2Verilog now uses Elan License Manager.
2. -File <command _file> switch was added. The command file can contain input filenames, output filename, or switches (including -f switch).
3. -SYNTHesis switch was added. The purpose of the switch is to eliminate nonsynthesizeble constructs from the output of the translation. The present functionality is limited to suppressing initial statements, using logical (in)equality operators in place of case (in)equality operators, and suppressing pullup and pulldown instantiations in the output.
4. -87 switch was added. Allows reading VHDL'87 files. The default is VHDL'93.
5. A utility called 'mapmaker' was added to allow easy modifications of the vhdl2v.map file. The utility scans all specified VHDL files for package declarations and makes corresponding entries in vhdl2v.map file.

   Usage: mapmaker { -d pathname} <list_of_VHDL_files>

   The -d option specifies the directory where the vhdl2v.map file is saved. All files to be scanned for packages need to specified on the command line. E.g.: mapmaker * .vhd * .vhdl
6. Support for simple configurations was added, which enables to select one from a series of available architectures.
7. Subprograms with unconstrained types in the interface elements are reconfigured to constrained

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

types based on the type in the function/procedure call. This effectively creates a copy of the original subprogram for a specific combination of sizes of its parameters.

8. Two extra actions : operator and unary_operator were added to the function map file. They support direct mapping of specified functions to Verilog operators. The symbol of the target Verilog operator should be put in the Argument field (see Users' Manual).
9. Concurrent assignments with literals 'L' or 'H' on the right hand side are translated to pulldown or pullup instantiations.
10. Translation of enumerated types was improved. In this version, names of enumerated types declared locally are prefixed with the label of the owner of the block declaration. All enumerations in turn are translated into integer parameters. Names of the parameters are prefixed with the name of the corresponding enumerated type. Entities of enumerated types (signals or variables) are translated into reg's of the size to accommodate the largest enumeration of the corresponding type.
11. Support for use of constants and generics in generates was added.
12. Command line with which the tool was called is printed in the log file
13. $VHDL2V _HOME/bin or $VHDL2V _HOME/lib were made the default locations of all .map files
14. 'range, 'length, 'high, 'low, 'right, 'left attributes are supported and elaborated.
15. All assignments using aggregates with OTHERS on the right hand side are supported except cases where:

    the target of the assignment is an aggregate

    other association elements are present in the RHS expression, along with OTHERS

    only hex and octal based literals are not supported as actuals for RHS association elements
16. The VHDL ** (POWER) operator is elaborated if used in generates. In all other cases the ** operator is not translated, and a warning is printed.
17. Multiple input files are supported. The translation of all input files is written into one output file. It is required that a file name is specified on the command line for translation of multiple input files.
18. Subprogram calls are supported. Subprogram body templates are written out in a separate file <entity _name> _<architecture _name> . verilog which is included in the translation of the main design. Subprogram bodies have to be manually translated.
19. Simulation time is now printed for every VHDL ASSERT statement.
20. Instantiation of components with ports different from those of corresponding entities is supported. Component instantiation port maps are always printed as byname maps, even in cases when the original instantiation used map-by-order. The primary reason for such translation is to remove ambiguity in port mapping for components with ports different from respective entities. In cases when no entity is available for a component, port mapping style (by order or by name) of the VHDL instantiation is preserved in the translation.Previously, the translator always preserved the port mapping style of the input VHDL design which created syntax errors in the output for specific components (see above).
21. With -Include _Packages switch, translation of package components is written out into a file * _modules.verilog. This file is included in the main output file. Previously, translation of components was written into the main output file regardless of the -Include_Packages switch.
22. Support for translation of an entity without an architecture REMOVED. For this case, no output is produced.
23. VHDL GENERATE statements are supported

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter10: C++ and SystemC

BugHunter can launch an external C++ compiler to compile SystemC simulations and other C++ source code files. After a SystemC simulation is built using BugHunter, you can run the simulation in the BugHunter GUI to display simulation log results in the simulation.log report tab window. You can also open and view the VCD waveform files created by the simulation.

10.1 Setting up Visual Studio C++ for Windows

To compile SystemC simulations on Windows we require Visual C++ to be the C++ compiler. Microsoft offers a free version of Visual Studio Express C++ that you can use to compile a SystemC Simulation. This section covers how to setup Visual Studio. If you are running on Linux, then skip to the next section.

Step 1: Download and Install Visual Studio C++

- Download and install the free **Visual Studio Express C++** version located here (you can skip this step if you have previously installed a copy of Visual Studio C++ 2003, 2008, or 2010):

  http://www.microsoft.com/express/downloads/#2010-Visual-CPP

- Note: Make sure you are getting the **C++ version of Express** and not C# or Visual Basic.

Step 2: Compile the SystemC Library Using Visual C++ IDE

Compile the **systemc.lib** static library that will be used whenever you compile a SystemC simulation. This only needs to be done once before you first try to run a System C project from within BugHunter.

- Launch the Visual C++ IDE from the Start menu and open this Visual C++ solution file:
  `C:\SynaptiCAD\lib\systemc\msvc71\SystemC\SystemC.sln`
- When you open the solution you will probably be prompted to convert it to the version of Visual Studio that you have installed. This process may generate some warnings but it should not generate errors.
- In the Visual Studio IDE, select the **Debug > Build** menu option to build this solution.
- Verify that the debug systemc.lib file was created here:
  `c:\SynaptiCAD\lib\systemc\msvc71\SystemC\Debug`
- Next we will build the Release configuration (the previous steps built the Debug configuration). Set the configuration dropdown box to Release (currently it should read "Debug") and perform another build operation in Visual Studio.
- Verify that the release systemc.lib file was created here:
  `c:\SynaptiCAD\lib\systemc\msvc71\SystemC\Release`

10.2 Setting up gcc for Linux Machines

To use SystemC on Linux, you must have the gcc compiler installed.

Step 1: Install the gcc compiler

Most systems have a functioning gcc installed by default. If yours doesn't, you can usually install one by running one of the following commands:

- On RedHat, run "sudo yum install gcc-c++"

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- On Ubuntu, run "sudo apt-get install build-essential"

Step 2: Setup the PATH environment variable

By default, BugHunter will use the gcc compiler found via your PATH environment variable. This is usually what you want, and your system will usually come pre-configured this way.

Step 3: Compile the SystemC Library Using gcc

Compile the **systemc.lib** static library that will be used whenever you compile a SystemC simulation. This only needs to be done once before you first try to run a SystemC project from within BugHunter.

- Change directory to the lib/systemc subdirectory under the BugHunter distribution:
  ```
  cd synapticad-16.01y/lib/systemc
  ```
- Configure and build the SystemC library:
  ```
  ./configure --prefix=`pwd`/install
  make
  ```
- Install it. This step will place the compiled library in the directory **synapticad-16.01y/lib/systemc/install**, which is where the example projects shipped with BugHunter will expect to find it. It will not modify anything outside of the BugHunter distribution directory, and does not require root access.
  ```
  make install
  ```
- Verify that it installed the library **synapticad-16.01y/lib/systemc/install/lib-linux/libsystemc.a**, and the header files **synapticad-16.01y/lib/systemc/install/include/systemc.h**. Note: if you are building on a 64-bit system with a 64-bit compiler, the SystemC library will be built to the directory **lib-linux64** instead of **lib-linux**. If this is the case, you will need to modify the path in the "***Library Directories***" field in the *Project Simulation Properties* dialog to get the SystemC example projects to link correctly.

10.3 Building and Running SystemC simulations

To compile and run SystemC simulations with BugHunter, you must first compile the systemc.lib library file using your selected C++ compiler (currently we support gcc on Linux and Visual C++ on Windows). Section 10.1: Setting up Visual Studio C++ 177 has the steps for performing this operation on Windows.

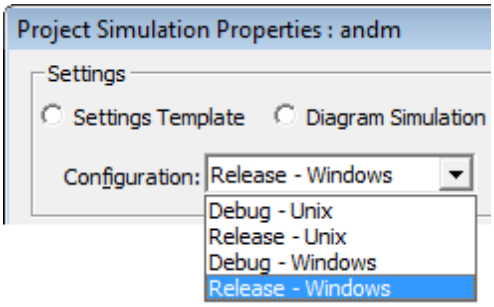
First run a SynaptiCAD SystemC Example Project

If you're creating your first SystemC simulation with BugHunter, we recommend you start by opening the SystemC example projects (located in **c:\SynaptiCAD\Examples\SystemC directo**ry) and compile and run these examples first. These examples also demonstrate how to properly set the paths to the SystemC include files and library files as needed to compile SystemC simulations. For example:

- Choose the **Project > Open Project** menu and open the **andm.hpj** file located in the directory:
  ```
  C:\SynaptiCAD\Examples\SystemC\andm
  ```
- Press the **Project Simulations Properties**  button to open the dialog of the same name.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- Pick either the debug or the release configuration appropriate for your OS (either Windows or Unix).



- Press the **Build** button to compile the simulation.



- Press the Run button to run the simulation.



- After the simulation is complete, choose the **File > Open Timing Diagram** and open the **andm.vcd.** You may need to do a full zoom to see the waveforms in the timing diagram window.

Creating your own SystemC Projects

After you've looked at the examples shipped with BugHunter, you're probably ready to create your own SystemC project.

- Create a new project by selecting the menu option **Project>New Project** to open the *New Project Wizard*. Leave the language type set to **Verilog** in the New Project Wizard (this setting only matters when creating test benches).
- After the project window appears, add your SystemC source code files to the ***User Source Files*** folder.
- Then select the menu option **Project > Project Simulation Properties** and click the **C++** tab in the dialog to set your compilation options. As a starting point, copy the ***Include Directories***, ***Library Directories***, ***Compile***, and ***Linker*** settings from one of the SystemC examples into your project.

Important Note: If you plan on creating several SystemC simulation, you'll probably want to copy these compilation settings to your **Settings Template** (radio button at the top of the ***Project Simulation Properties*** dialog) so that future C++ projects will automatically get the appropriate settings.

10.4 Learning SystemC

SynaptiCAD ships SystemC help and tutorials with the installation of the software. If you are new to SystemC, you can find this documentation in the SystemC directory:

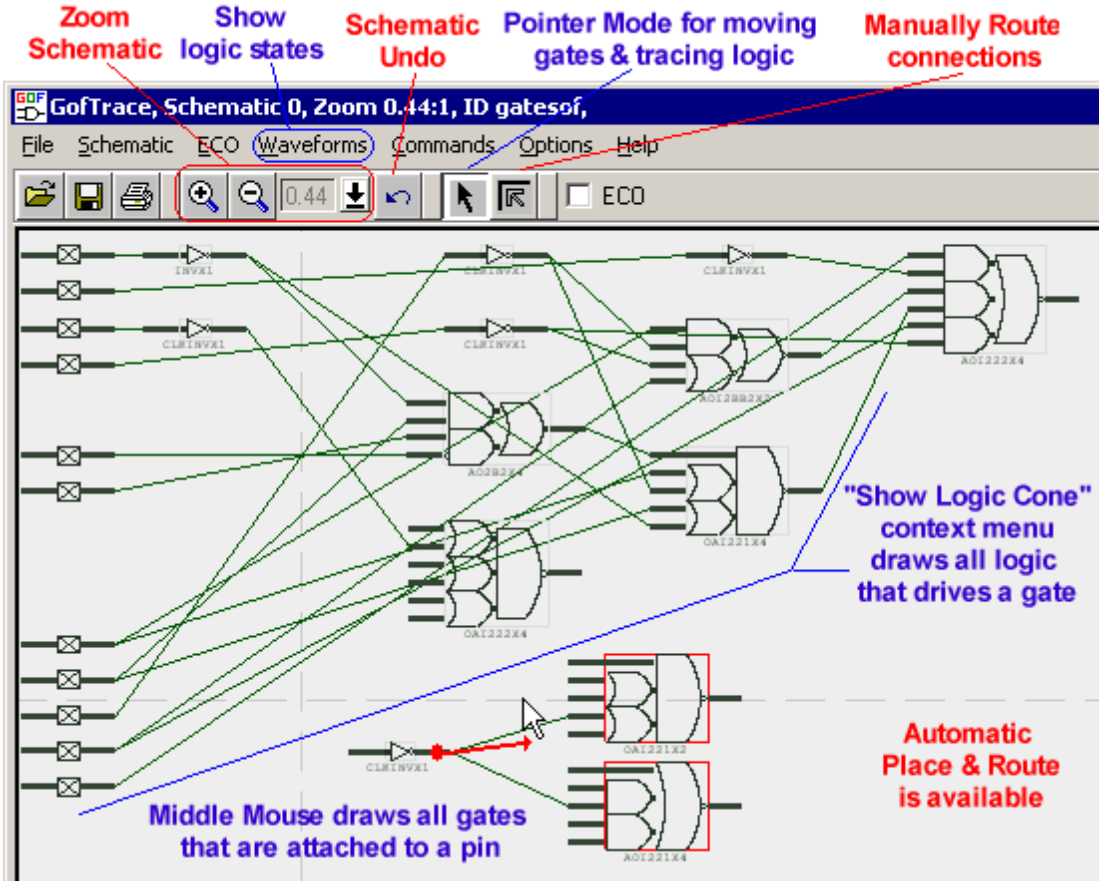
```
C:\SynaptiCAD\lib\systemc\docs
```

The SystemC 2.0 User's Guide covers primarily the SystemC 1.0 language features. We recommend that you use the combination of the SystemC 2.0 User's Guide and the Functional Specification for SystemC 2.0 as a User's Guide for the SystemC 2.0 language.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 11: Schematic Viewing of Gate Level Designs

While debugging a gate-level design, it is often useful to view the design as a schematic, especially when tracing cause-effect relationships between signals. BugHunter can launch Gates-on-the-Fly to display components and signals on a schematic window. Gates-on-the-Fly(GOF) is a third party tool that is usually used to graphically analyze and edit large Verilog netlists that have been generated from a synthesis or layout tool. A separate GOF license is required to fully enable this capability.



11.1 Gates-On-The-Fly Install and License

Gates-on-the-Fly can be down loaded from the http://www.nandigits.com/ site. The unlicensed version has some limitations that will make it difficult to perform real design and debugging with the tool, but it should be sufficient to demonstrate the functionality of the program.

Request a License:

- Contact support@nandigits.com to get a license from Nandigits.

11.2 Launching the Schematic window

The right click menus in the BugHunter Project tree allow you to display selected signals and component instances on a GOF schematic window. Once you have a partial schematic displayed, it is easy to quickly trace a gate's fan-in and fan-out so that you can determine how the gate is

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

connected in the design. Tracing the fanout can be done using the ***middle mouse*** button.

It's important to note that GOF can only show schematics for gate-level designs (e.g. post-synthesis), not RTL-level designs.

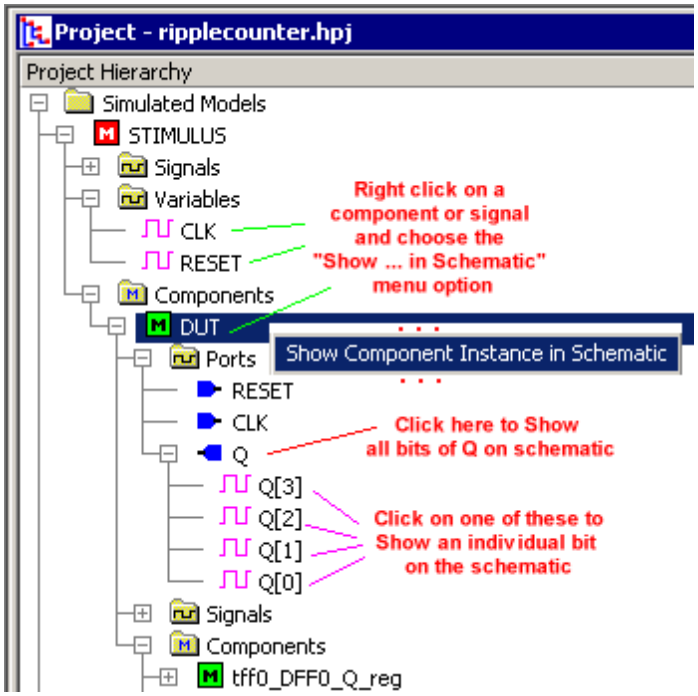
To perform the steps below for the first time, we recommend you open the example gate-level design project file **C:\SynaptiCAD\Examples\VeriLogger\GateLevelTimingSimulation \ripplecounter.hpj** using the **Project > Open Project** menu option.

Build the Design and use the Context Menu to Launch the Schematic:

- Press the **Build** button to compile the project files, and build the Simulated Models hierarchical tree (see Section 2.2: Build and Simulate 29).



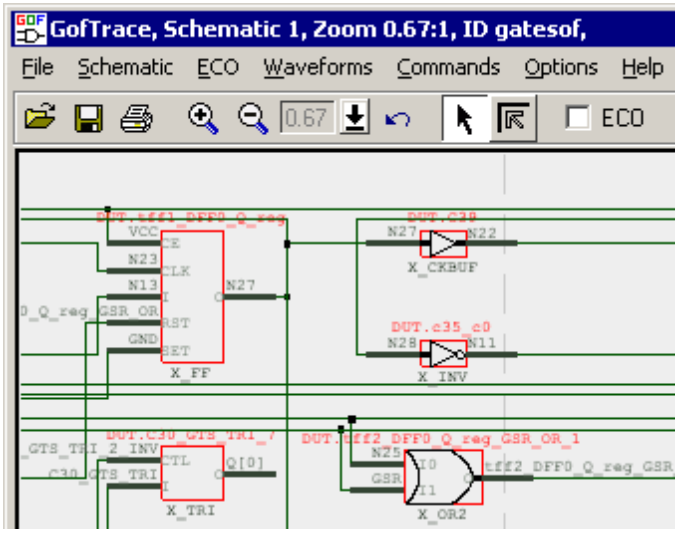
- Navigate through the Simulated Models tree in the BugHunter Project window until you find a component or signal that you want to view on a schematic.
- Right click on the node of the signal or component and choose **Show *object* in Schematic** menu. This will launch GOF and may take a little time because GOF will be parsing your entire design if this is the first schematic you have opened.



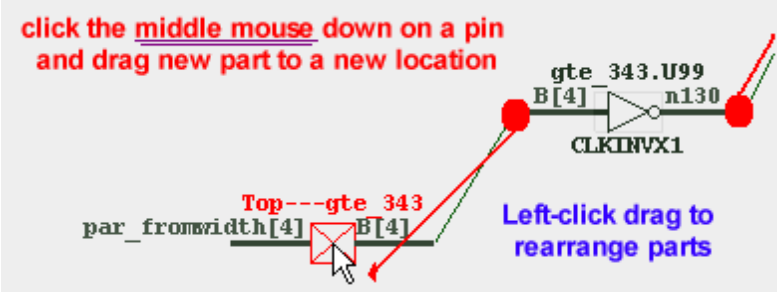
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Viewing the Schematic:

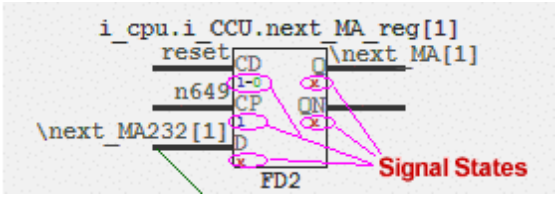
- GOF will launch a Viewer window and a schematic design with your design.
- Each time you choose the **Show *object* in Schematic** menu in BugHunter, a new schematic will be opened but the same GOF Viewer will be there so the design does not have to be re-parsed.



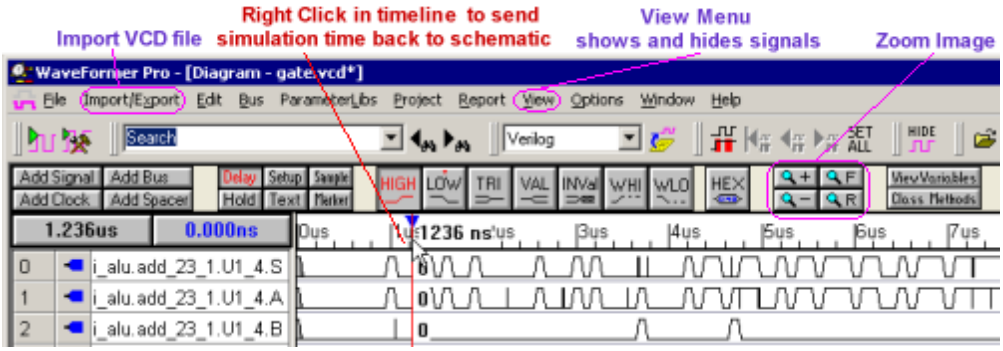
- To expand a schematic, press the ***middle mouse*** button down on a pin of a part and drag to display the objects that are attached to that pin.



- GOF schematic windows have many functions for adding to the schematic, auto place and routing, and printing of the design. These features are covered in the **GOF Help** in **Chapter 3: GofTrace - schematic viewer**.
- GOF can also display back-annotated waveform information from BugHunter timing diagrams on schematic windows to help trace back to what caused a bug in a simulation. See **Chapter 6: Waveform Viewer Support** in the **GOF Help** for more details on how to debug using a combination of GOF schematics and the waveform windows in BugHunter.



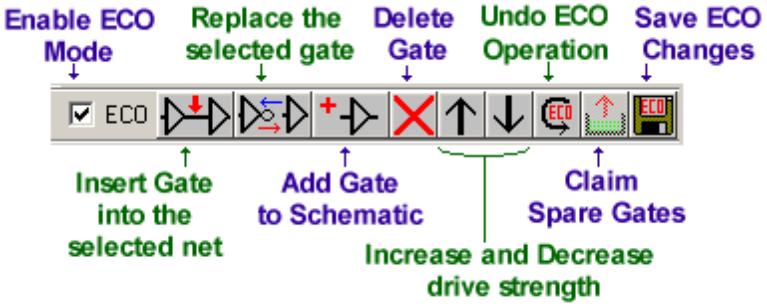
Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

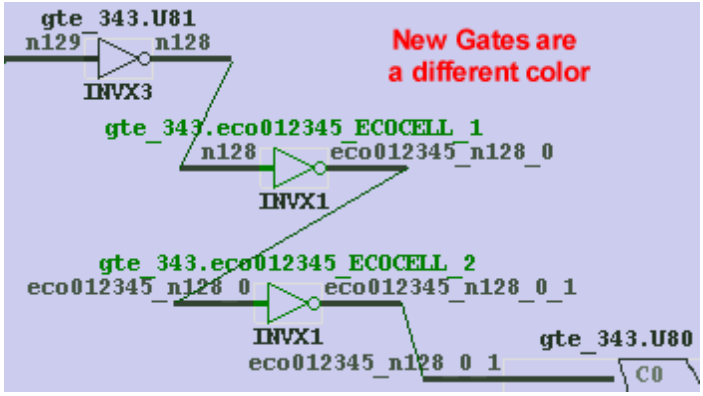


11.3 General GOF Information

GOF's main purpose is to view and edit large Verilog netlists that have been generated from a synthesis or layout tool. Netlists sometimes require changes to either meet timing closure specifications, fix functional logic bugs, or to repartition a design. GOF with BugHunter allows GOF to also be used earlier in the design cycle. This section is just a little background on why you might want to use GOF in analyzing your backend design.

Using GOF, you can easily find and view specific logic cones in your design on a schematic to visualize just the paths you need to see without unnecessary clutter. GOF also simplifies mapping from RTL level constructs to their gate-level equivalents, so that you can pinpoint the locations where changes need to be made. GOF's ECO mode supports both graphical and script-based editing features for tracking ECO changes. Metal-only ECO operations are also supported with an automatic spare gates flow.





Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Chapter 12: SimSwapper Simulator Command-Line Swapper

Simswapper is a command line tool for translating commands written in simulation regression shell scripts. It allows easy swapping between simulators from different EDA vendors. For example, if you have scripts to build and run a simulation using ModelSim, simswapper can translate the options in the scripts to launch a different simulator such as Cadence NCSim or SynaptiCAD SimX.

12.1 SimSwapper Quick Start

To use SimSwapper you will first set the path to include three items: (1) the path of the new simulator to use, (2) the path to SimSwapper, and (3) the path to the translation scripts. Next, you will run your simulation script for the old simulator just as you normally would. This will cause the translation scripts to run and SimSwapper to launch the new simulator with translated options.

The Path to SimSwapper:

The translation scripts will need the path to SimSwapper:

- On Windows, SimSwapper is by default installed in :
  `C:\SynaptiCAD\bin\win32`
- On UNIX, it's in:
  `/usr/local/synapticad-<version>/bin`

The Path to the Translation Scripts

The translation scripts are located under subdirectories of the SimSwapper directory (bin\swapper). To select an appropriate set of translation scripts you must set the translation script path to contain the "from" simulator and the "to" simulator:

Translate From:	To any of the following:
from_simx	to_simx32
from_mti	to_simx64
from_nc	to_mti
from_vcs	to_nc
	to_ncverilog
	to_irun
	to_vcs
	to_vcsi

Example of Setting the Path

To translate from mti to ncsim, set the system's PATH to contain the following paths:

1. The path to the new simulator: the ncsim executable (in this example it is already in the path so the code is not repeated).
2. The path to SimSwapper which is located in the SynaptiCAD bin directory.
3. The translation script path: **from_mti/to_ncsim**

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

On Windows, you could do this with:

set PATH=C:\SynaptiCAD**\bin\swapper\from_mti\to_ncsim**;C:\SynaptiCAD\bin\Win32;%PATH%

On UNIX:

PATH=/usr/local/synapticad-<version>**/bin/simswapper/from_mti/to_ncsim**:/usr/local/synapticad-<version>/bin:$PATH

export PATH

Now, when you run your mti simulation script, it will run SimSwapper and translate to ncsim.

12.2 Passing Command Line Options to SimSwapper

When using the translation scripts files, you will sometimes want to pass additional command-line options to SimSwapper itself. To pass extra command-line options to SimSwapper when using the translation scripts, you set them in the environment variable **SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS**.

Typically, the main SimSwapper options of interest to users are:

- **--config *filename*** for setting up argument substitutions
- **--create-ini *filename*** for getting a template file for argument substitutions
- **--debug** for debugging the translation of a script command line

Setting the SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS environment variable:

Each time a translation script is run, it passes the **SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS** environment variable, the source and destination simulators, and then any other arguments that are in your simulation script. Here is an example of setting the environment variable to pass in a configuration file to perform argument substitutions.

```
set SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS=--config your_simswapper.ini
```

12.3 SimSwapper Translation Modes

SimSwapper also allows you to mix options from several different simulators on a single command line. This functionality is primarily useful if you want to pass some arguments to the destination simulator in it's native format while letting SimSwapper translate the remaining arguments.

By default, SimSwapper will assume that the simulator command line options are in the format required by the source (from) simulator. You can change this behavior by adding one or more of the options **--simx_options**, **--mti_options**, and **--nc_options** to the simulator command line inside your simulation script. After SimSwaper encounters one of these options, it will expect any subsequent options to be in the format of the specified simulator. These particular options should not be used in the environment variable SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS as described in the previous section, because this would cause all of the options to be interpreted as destination (to) simulator options.

Example of using the Translation Modes:

Suppose SimSwapper is translating arguments from mti to ncsim, and you want to also pass the ncsim-native option "-cdslib" (which has no corresponding mti option):

- Original mti simulation script:

```
vlog +define+FOO -nologo test.v
```

- Modify the script line as below to pass the ncsim-native option:

```
vlog +define+FOO -nologo --nc_options -cdslib ..\cds.lib test.v
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- When the above line is run, SimSwapper will translated it to be:

```
ncvlog -define FOO -nocopyright -cdslib ..\cds.lib test.v
```

Your modified simulation script can now be used to launch either modelsim or ncsim, depending on whether the simswapper path is set for translating to ncsim or to modelsim. The -cdslib option will be skipped during translation when the target simulator is modelsim since there's no equivalent option for modelsim.

You can switch option parser modes several times in one command line if needed. For example:

vlog --mti_options +define+FOO --nc_options -cdslib ..\cds.lib --simx_options -l log.txt test.v

12.4 SimSwapper Configuration

Sometimes you need to replace arguments to command line options with other values when you are using different simulators. For example, you may want need to pass a different library file that has been compiled for the target simulator. To do this, you can either modify the default configuration file, or create a new configuration file and use the **--config *new_config_filename*** option in the **SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS** environment variable.

Either edit the Default Configuration File or Create a new one:

The Default Configuration File is located:

- On Windows in:

  C:\SynaptiCAD\bin\Win32\simswapper.ini

- On UNIX in:

  /usr/local/synapticad-<version>/bin/i686/simswapper.ini

To create a new configuration file:

- Run the following command to create a new configuration file:

```
simswapper --create-ini new_config_filename.ini
```

- Once you have modified this file with the desired substitutions, you can tell SimSwapper to use the modified file by passing the --config option by setting this environment variable:

```
set SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS=--config new_config_filename.ini
```

How to edit the configuration file:

The Configuration file is organized in sections by simulator option name. All the options are normally commented out. The first three lines in a section are comments that describe the option name, which simulator it works for, and a usage example.

```
;; Option:    pli
;; Valid for: mti
;;            -pli pli_filename
; [pli_filename]
; originalValue = translatedValue
```

To edit the configuration file:

- Find the section that matches the option that you need to specify a new value for.
- Remove the semicolon comment character from the last two lines of the section.
- Replace the **originalValue** and the **translatedValue** arguments with the values that you would like written out. You can add multiple **originalValue = translatedValue** lines (one per

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

line) in each section.

- Save the file and run your simulation script as normal.

Example of Editing the Configuration File:

In this example you would like SimSwapper to translate the following command from mti to ncsim:

```
vsim -pli "libfoo1_mti.so" top_module
```

By default, SimSwapper will generate a command such as:

```
ncsim -loadpli1 libfoo1_mti.so top_module
```

However, the pli command-line option will frequently require a different pli library that has been compiled for the target simulator. So, if you have a separate PLI library for ncsim, you can have SimSwapper replace the argument to "-pli". To do this, modify the **pli** section in the configuration file with the names of the arguments that you want swapped in. For example:

```
[pli_filename]
libfoo1_mti.so=libfoo1_nc.so
libfoo2_mti.so=libfoo2_nc.so
```

The argument name (pli_filename in this case) is not the same as the name of the option (-pli): the argument name is specified internally by SimSwapper.

12.5 SimSwapper Command Line Options

SimSwapper Command Line Options can be passed with either (1) the SYNCAD_SIMSWAPPER_ARGS environment variable and the translation scripts as described earlier in this Chapter, or (2) by running SimSwapper directly.

Options for either the environment variable or SimSwapper directly:

--help	Print a usage message
--debug	Print extra debugging messages
--config *filename*	Use the named configuration file, instead of the default simswapper.ini
--create-ini *filename*	Create an initialization file to use as a template
--version	Display SimSwapper version information
--log-file *filename*	Write details of the options translation to the named file
--dry_run	Don't run the destination simulator, just print out commands that would be executed.

Options for running SimSwapper directly:

When running SimSwapper directly you must specify the source and destination simulators using the **--source** and **--dest** options, so the program knows how to translate the options. These options should not be used with the translation scripts as described in Section 12.1 SimSwapper Quick Start section, because the translation scripts automatically setup these options based on the path settings.

- Put the source and destination options before any simulation options to be translated:

```
--source <source_tool> --dest <dest_suite> -- [args to translate ...]
```

Where *source_tool* can be chosen from:

mti-vlog -- ModelSim's vlog.exe compiler

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

mti-vsim -- ModelSim's vsim.exe elaborator and simulator

syncad-simx32 -- SynaptiCAD's simx32.exe compiler and elaborator

syncad-simxloader32 -- SynaptiCAD's simxloader32.exe simulator

syncad-simx64 -- SynaptiCAD's simx64.exe compiler and elaborator

syncad-simxloader64 -- SynaptiCAD's simxloader64.exe simulator

cadence-ncvlog -- Cadence ncvlog.exe compiler

cadence-ncelab -- Cadence ncelab.exe elaborator

cadence-ncsim -- Cadence ncsim.exe simulator

cadence-ncverilog -- Cadence ncverilog.exe simulator

cadence-irun -- Cadence irun.exe simulator

synopsys-vcs -- Synopsys vcs.exe compiler and elaborator

synopsys-vcsi -- Synopsys vcsi.exe compiler and elaborator

synopsys-simv -- Synopsys simv.exe simulator (generated by VCS/VCSI)

And *dest_suite* can be chosen from:

mti-modelsim -- ModelTech's ModelSim simulator

syncad-simx32 -- SynaptiCAD's 32-bit Verilogger Extreme simulator

syncad-simx64 -- SynaptiCAD's 64-bit Verilogger Extreme simulator

cadence-ncsim -- Cadence's Incisive simulator

cadence-ncverilog -- Cadence's NC-Verilog simulator

cadence-irun -- Cadence's irun simulator

synopsys-vcs -- Synopsys' VCS simulator

synopsys-vcsi -- Synopsys' VCSi simulator

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Appendix A: BugHunter System Tasks

This Appendix describes PLI based BugHunter System Tasks. If you are using a Verilog simulator, you can call these system tasks in your source code by prefixing the function with a $ symbol, for example: $btim_dumpfile("myfile.btim"); . If you are running from Bug Hunter's graphical environment, you can execute these system tasks from the console window 40 on the simulation button bar. See your simulator's documentation for how to execute user-written system task using this method, a few simulators do not support this capability. If you are running your simulator in command line mode, you can link in the BugHunter dll for your specific simulator and get access to theses system tasks (the graphical environment does this automatically when it launches the simulator).

	VeriLogger vlogcmd	VerilogXL	ModelSim	NC	ActiveHdl (Verilog)
init_syncad 190	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
btim_dumpfile 190	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
btim_closedumpfile 190	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
btim_AddDumpSignal 190	Yes ***1**	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
db_getcurrenttime 191	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
db_printinteractivescope 191	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
db_finish 192	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
db_addtimebreak 192	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
db_removetimebreak 192	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
db_enabletimebreak 192	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
db_disabletimebreak 193	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
db_getbasictype 193	Yes	Yes	-	Yes ***2**	-
db_getvalue 193	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
db_printinternaltimeprecision 193	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
db_setinteractivescope 194	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-

***1** - You must specify the full path to the signal name.

***2** - Currently supported for NC Verilog but not NC VHDL.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Command Line Simulator Support 194

init_syncad

Initializes the necessary global variables, etc necessary to run the other SynaptiCAD BugHunter simulator tasks. None of the other SynaptiCAD tasks can be executed before this task is called. The BugHunter PLI automatically calls this task.

Syntax:

```
$init_syncad( )
```

btim_dumpfile

Creates a timing diagram (btim, binary timing diagram) with the specified file name that can be used to dump signal data. Use btim_AddDumpSignal 190 to specify which signals to dump.

Syntax:

```
$btim_dumpfile( filename )
```

Arguments:

```
char* filename
```

where filename is the name of the btim file to receive the signal data

Related Functions:

btim_AddDumpSignal 190, btim_closedumpfile 190

btim_closedumpfile

If there was a dump file created by calling btim_dumpfile 190, then this command will write the btim to disk and close it.

Syntax:

```
$btim_closedumpfile( )
```

Related Functions:

btim_dumpfile 190

btim_AddDumpSignal

Adds signals to the timing diagram that were specified by calling btim_dumpfile 190. This will dump the specified signals to the timing diagram during simulation. Once a dump signal has been added using this command, it can not be removed (Note that command **btim_DeleteDumpSignal** is associated with the **btim_AddCorbaDumpSignal** and not this command).

Syntax:

```
$btim_AddDumpSignal(levels?, [signal | scope]+)
```

Output:

Displays an error in the log window if the signals/scopes do not exist.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Arguments:

`integer levels;`

Optional. Specifies number of levels to traverse down for scope parameters. Defaults to 1. To dump all levels below the scopes, set to 0.

`char* signal_or_scope;`

If signal name, dumps the signal. If scope, dumps signals in that scope (and potentially sub-scopes, depending on levels passed).

Description

Adds signals to the timing diagram that was specified by calling **btim_dumpfile**. If btim_dumpfile was not previously called, the signals will be dumped to a file called dump.btim. The specified signals will be dumped to the timing diagram during simulation. Examples:

To dump all signals in scope top.mymodule (levels defaults to 1):

$btim_AddDumpSignal(top.mymodule);

To dump all signals in top.mymodule and all signals in modules directly or indirectly instantiated in top.mymodule, we set levels to 0:

$btim_AddDumpSignal(0,top.mymodule);

To dump all signals in scope top.mymodule and signals top.A and top.B:

$btim_AddDumpSignal(top.mymodule, top.A, top.B);

To dump all signals with names that match a pattern, place double quotes around the signal name pattern and use regular expressions for scope and signal name, using \\. as scope delimiter. For instance, to dump all signals whose name starts with sig and that belong to a submodule of top module whose name starts with mymodule:

$btim_AddDumpSignal("top\\.mymodule.*\\.sig.*");

Related Functions:

`btim_dumpfile` 190

db_getcurrenttime

Outputs the current simulation time as a floating-point number and time unit.

Syntax:

`$db_getcurrenttime()`

Outputs a string in the following format:

`"Current simulation time: <time> <s,ms,us,ns,ps,fs>"`

Related Functions:

`db_printinternaltimeprecision` 193

db_printinteractivescope

Outputs the current internal time precision (resolution) of the simulator. This is the unit that db_addtimebreak() 192 expects the time argument to be in.

Syntax:

`$db_printinternaltimeprecision()`

Outputs a string in the following format:

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
"Internal time precision: <1,10,100> <s,ms,us,ns,ps,fs>"
```

Related Functions:

db_getcurrenttime 191

db_finish

Finishes the current simulation.

Syntax:

```
$db_finish()
```

db_addtimebreak

Adds a break point at the absolute time specified. The time should be specified in the internal simulator time precision that can be retrieved by calling db_printinternaltimeprecision 193.

Syntax:

```
$db_addtimebreak( id, time, unit )
```

Outputs an error if the time specified is less than or equal to the current time.

Arguments:

```
int id ;      // Breakpoint ID
time int64;   // absolute time
char* unit;   // time unit (TUnit string)
```

Related Functions:

db_printinternaltimeprecision 193, db_removetimebreak 192, db_enabletimebreak 192, db_disabletimebreak 193

db_removetimebreak

Removes the time break point that was added previously with db_addtimebreak 192 using given id of the break point.

Syntax:

```
$btim_removetimebreak( id )
```

Outputs an error if it cannot find the time break point.

Arguments:

```
int id;    //Breakpoint ID
```

Related Functions:

db_addtimebreak 192, db_enabletimebreak 192, db_disabletimebreak 193

db_enabletimebreak

Enables the time break point that was added previously with the given id.

Syntax:

```
$db_enabletimebreak( id )
```

Outputs an error if the time break point was never added.

Arguments:

```
int id;    // Breakpoint ID
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Related Functions:

db_addtimebreak 192, db_removetimebreak 192, db_disabletimebreak 193

db_disabletimebreak

Disables the time break point that was added previously with the given id.

Syntax:

```
$db_disabletimebreak( id )
```

Output an error if the time break point was never added.

Arguments:

```
int id;    // Breakpoint ID
```

Related Functions:

db_addtimebreak 192, db_removetimebreak 192, db_enabletimebreak 192

db_getbasictype

Prints the basic type of the given object.

Syntax:

```
$db_getbasictype( objectname )
```

Outputs an error if the object cannot be found or if the type cannot be retrieved. Otherwise, if successful, it prints a string with the following format, where the basic type is either **variable**, **net**, **port**, **reg**, or **other**.

```
"FullObjectName : basictype"
```

Arguments:

```
char* objectname;    // path and name of the object
```

db_getvalue

Outputs the value of a specified signal. This command will output a TState or TExState depending on the type. The signal name can be relative to the current interactive scope (retrieved by calling db_printcurrentscope 191), or an absolute path from the top of the hierarchy. It will first attempt to find the signal name relative to the current interactive scope. "simple" will be output in parenthesis if the state represents a TState. "exstate" will be output in parenthesis if the state represents a TExState.

Syntax:

```
$getvalue( signalname )
```

Outputs an error if the signal cannot be found or if the value cannot be retrieved. Otherwise, if successful, it outputs a string in the following format:

```
"FullSignalName = value <simple|exstate>"
```

Arguments:

```
handle signalname;    // signal name with path
```

db_printinternaltimeprecision

Outputs the current interactive scope to the command line.

Syntax:

```
$db_printinteractivescope( )
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Outputs a string in the following format:

```
Current scope: interactive scope
```

Related Functions:

db_setinteractivescope 194

db_setinteractivescope

Sets the interactive scope to the specified scope name. The scope name can be relative to the current interactive scope or a full scope path.

Syntax:

```
$db_setinteractivescope( scopename )
```

Output depends on the simulator.

Arguments:

```
const char* scopename;    // scope name
```

Related Functions:

db_printinteractivescope 191

Enabling BTIM dump commands in command-line simulator

You can use SynaptiCAD's btim commands by launching your cmd line simulator with the appropriate options (the BugHunter/VeriLogger GUI is not required). This is particularly useful for directly dumping BTIM waveform files instead of dumping VCD files, as the simulation will run much faster and the resulting files are much smaller.

Below are the appropriate syncad PLI libraries for each simulator and the command line options to load the library for that simulator. The PLI libraries are located in the Synapticad\bin directory.

VHDL

- **ActiveVHDL:** vsim -callbacks -pli syncadactivevhdl
- **ModelSim SE** (PE and XE not supported): vsim.exe -c -foreign "initForeign syncadmodelsimvhdl"
- **Cadence NC VHDL:** ncsim.exe -LOADCFC syncadncvhdl:register_syncad_tasks

Verilog

- **ActiveVerilog:** vlog.exe -pli syncadactiveverilog
- **ModelSim Verilog:** vsim.exe -c -pli syncadmodelsimverilog
- **Cadence NC Verilog**: ncverilog.exe +access +rwc +loadvpi=syncadncverilog:register_syncad_tasks
- **VeriLogger Extreme (simx):** simx.exe +access +rwc +loadvpi=syncadncverilog:register_syncad_tasks
- **VeriLogger (vlogcmd):** vlogcmd.exe +loadpli1=syncadvlogcmd.dll:register_default_tasks,register_syncad_tasks
- **VCS:** Btim PLI not supported

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Appendix B: Verilog2VHDL Translation Reference

Verilog2VHDL translates Verilog to VHDL using a combination of IEEE and tool-specific packages. The tool provides support for comprehensive modeling styles and maintains hierarchy during the translation. In this chapter, various supported constructs are discussed.

The rest of the chapter is organized as follows: For every construct supported by Verilog2VHDL, the general Verilog and VHDL semantics are given, followed by an example illustrating the construct in both languages. Special notes are given when required. The user is advised to refer to the VHDL LRM and Verilog LRM for detailed explanations.

Objects and Types

Verilog has the following types defined:

Register

Net

Integer, real and time variables

In VHDL, three classes of objects (as outlined below) are defined, each of which can be a scalar, composite, access or file type:

Signal

Variable

Constant

Verilog2VHDL translates registers, integer, real and wire variables (henceforth referred to as Verilog objects) declared in Verilog to VHDL objects of a specific class based on the following criteria**:**

1. If a Verilog object is declared inside a task or function, the corresponding VHDL object class is VARIABLE.
2. If a Verilog object is declared as a parameter, the VHDL object class is CONSTANT.
3. All others Verilog object declarations get the VHDL object class SIGNAL**.**

Verilog and VHDL are based on the same 4-level logic system (0,1 ,X,Z). Verilog2VHDL uses the IEEE standard 9-level std_ulogic type to translate the logic-levels. The logic levels in Verilog translate to the VHDL std_logic_1 164 package 9-level system in the following way:

Logic Level Mapping

Verilog	VHDL
0	0
1	1
X	X
Z	Z
	U,H,L

The basic Verilog data type wire is equivalent to the VHDL resolved type std_logic. Similarly, a vector in Verilog is equivalent to the VHDL resolved type std_logic_vector.

Module

The primary design unit in Verilog is the **module**. The equivalent representation in VHDL is an entity and architecture declaration. The standard Verilog and VHDL syntax for design unit declaration and an

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

example illustrating the concept are shown below:

Example:

Verilog

```
module Verilog2VHDL_example(
   Verilog2VHDL_a,
   Verilog2VHDL_b,
   Verilog2VHDL_c);


input Verilog2VHDL_a;
input Verilog2VHDL_b;
output Verilog2VHDL_c;

endmodule
```

VHDL

```
entity Verilog2VHDL_example is
 port(Verilog2VHDL_a : in std_logic;
 Verilog2VHDL_b : in std_logic;
 Verilog2VHDL_c : out std_logic);
end entity;

architecture VeriArch of Verilog2VHDL_example is
begin


end VeriArch;
```

Parameter Declaration

Constants can be declared in Verilog using the parameter declaration. The corresponding VHDL declaration is a generic in the entity declaration.

Example

Verilog

```
parameter a = 10;
parameter b = 5;
parameter c = 1.5;
```

VHDL

```
generic(CONSTANT a : integer := 10;
CONSTANT b : integer := 5;
CONSTANT c : real := 1.5 );
```

Register and Net Declaration

There are two main types of data types in Verilog: Registers and Nets. Registers are a data type to model data storage. They can hold their value until the next assignment. Nets, on the contrary, do not store any value (except trireg), and instead take the value of the driving gate or assignment. They are primarily used to represent connections between structural entities. VHDL models both registers and nets using the type **signal**. Signals in VHDL are used both for electrical connections and storing values.

Example

Verilog

```
wire a;
wire [3:0] b;
reg c;
```

VHDL

```
signal a : std_logic;
signal b : std_logic_vector( 3 downto 0);
signal c : std_logic register;
```

Special Note: Register declarations and other Verilog declarations inside user defined tasks and functions are modeled as VHDL **variables**.

Memory Declaration

Verilog HDL models memories as arrays of register variables. They are typically used to model Read only memories (ROM) or Random access memories (RAM). Translation of memory types to VHDL is straight forward. A special type is created for this purpose in output VHDL.

Example

Verilog

```
reg [255:0] a[7:0];
```

VHDL

```
type memory_0 is array(7 downto 0) of
          std_logic_vector(255 downto 0);
signal a : memory_0 register;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Integer Declaration

One of the types allowed in Verilog is the Integer type. Integer types in Verilog are translated to a resolved subtype of the pre-defined integer type in VHDL.

Example

Verilog

```
integer a;
integer b[3:0]
```

VHDL

```
use Verilog.v2v_types.all;

signal a : v2v_integer register;
signal b : integer_array(3 downto 0);
```

Special Note: The resolved subtype **v2v_integer**, and type **integer_array** are declared in the **v2v_types** package available in the types.vhd file.

Real Declaration

Types allowed in Verilog include the **real** type. Real types in Verilog are translated to the pre-defined **real** type in VHDL.

Verilog

```
real a;
```

VHDL

```
use Verilog.v2v_types.all;
signal a : real;
```

Module Instantiation

Both Verilog and VHDL are hierarchical description languages, and allow modules to be embedded inside other modules. This process is also known as module instantiation. Higher level modules instantiate modules, and communicate with them through the ports on the instantiated module. The functionality of module instantiation is equivalent in both languages.

Example

Verilog

```
wire a, b;
reg c;

df df_instance1(a,b,c);

df df_instance(.in1(a),
               .in2(b),
               .in3(c) );
```

VHDL

```
architecture arch_name of
  signal a,b,c : std_logic;
begin
  df_instance1 df port map(a,b,c);

  df_instance2 df port map(in1 => a,
                           in2 => b,
                           out => c);
```

Gate Instantiation

Verilog is a rich language for modeling at low levels of abstraction. It has built-in primitives like n-input nand gates and buffers. VHDL, on the other hand, is more suited for modeling at higher levels. Though it is possible to create entities corresponding to Verilog gates, Verilog2VHDL translates a gate instantiation for almost all gates into equivalent VHDL concurrent signal assignments.

Example

Verilog

```
`timescale 1ns/1ns;
wire a,b,c;
wire d,e,f;
wire g,h,i;

nand(a,b,c);
nor #3 (d,b,c,e,f);
```

VHDL

```

signal a,b,c : std_logic;
signal d,e,f : std_logic;
signal g,h,i : std_logic;

a <= b nand c;
d <= (((b nor c) nor e) nor f) after 3 ns;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
not #2(g,b);
not (h,i,c);
```

```
g <= b after 2 ns;
h <= c;
i <= c;
```

Always Statement

Example

Verilog

```
reg b;
reg a;
always @(negedge clock)
begin
  if (a == 1)
    b = 1;
  else
    b = 0;
end
```

VHDL

```
USE Verilog.timing.all;
signal a,b : std_logic;
process
begin
  wait until negedge(clock);
  if (a = '1')
    b = '1';
  else
    b = '0'
  else if;
end process;
```

Special Note: `negedge' is a library function provided in the **timing** package (file timing.vhd).

Initial Statement

The initial statement is similar to the always statement, except that it executes only once during the entire simulation run. It is functionally equivalent to a VHDL process with an infinite wait statement at the end of the sequential body.

Register initialization in initial statements without event control are handled as a special case. If the register initialization is the first statement in the initial block without event control (precedes ALL wait statements), the statement is mapped to a signal initialization statement in VHDL. The following example shows this special case for register `a'.

Example

Verilog

```
reg a;

initial
begin
  a = 0;l
  #10 b = 0;
  c = 1;
  d = 1;
end
```

VHDL

```
signal a : std_logic register := 0;

process
begin
  wait for 10 ns;
  b <= '0';
  c <= '1';
  d <= '1';
  wait;
end process;
```

Conditional if-else-if Statement

Both languages support the conditional `if statement' and the translation is mostly straightforward, with a few exceptions. In Verilog, the result of an `if expression' can be (0,1,X,Z). In VHDL, the `if expression' has to decode to the boolean type in VHDL (FALSE, TRUE). All Verilog expressions do not map directly to VHDL. A typical example is the following `if expression' (this type of expression will be referred to a `nonboolean' expression in ensuing discussion) :

```
if (a)
```

There is no direct equivalent in VHDL, because the above `if expression' tests if `a' is `1', in the case `a' is a register data type, or if `a' has a value other than `0', if `a' is an integer type. To preserve logical equality during translation, Verilog2VHDL translates a nonboolean `if expression' in Verilog to a boolean expression. A negation test is applied to the scalar or vector instead, to preserve the logic.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

An example illustrates the translation below. In the example, the first `if expression' is not a boolean expression by itself. Hence, Verilog2VHDL maps the `if expression' in Verilog to VHDL by first applying the std_logic_1 164 package translation function `To_Bit' to the register variable and then testing for a non-zero value. The translation function `To_Bit' is required to discard cases involving unknowns.

Example

Verilog

```
always @(a)
begin
  if (a)
    b = 1;
  else
    b = 0;
end
```

VHDL

```
process
begin
  wait on a;
  if To_bit(a) /= '0' then
    b <= '1';
else
    b <= '0';
end if;
end process;
```

Special Note: The library function `To_bit' is available in the **Std_logic_1164** package.

Conditional 'case' Statement

The case statement uses the same reasoning in both languages; both are multi-way decision statements which test for a matching expression and branch accordingly. There are, however, some limitations in VHDL, which does not have direct equivalent statements for `casex' and `casez'. The translation of ` casex' and `casez' statements is detailed in the next section.

Example

Verilog

```
always @(select)
begin
  case (select)
    3'b000 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b001 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b010 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b011 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b100 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b101 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b110 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
    3'b111 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
  endcase
end
```

VHDL

```
process
begin
wait on select;
  case select is
    when "000" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "001" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "010" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "011" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "100" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "101" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "110" => dec_out <= "00000001";
    when "111" => dec_out <= "00000001";
   end case;
end process;
```

Conditional 'casex' and 'casez ' Statement

`casex' and `casez' statements are special purpose case routines provided in the Verilog language for `dontcare' comparison. VHDL has no direct equivalent, but Verilog2VHDL writes out the equivalent VHDL for a `casex' or `casez' statement. Each of these statements is translated to an equivalent VHDL `if' statement and the sequential statements are updated accordingly.

Example

Verilog

```
always @(select)
begin
casex (select)
  3'b0?0 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
  3'b?01 : dec_out = 8'b00000010;
```

VHDL

```
process
begin
  wait on selct;
  if casex(select,"0Z0") then
    dec_out <= "000000001";
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
  default : dec_out = 8'bz;
endcase
end
```

```
  elsif casex(select,"Z01")
    dec_out <= "00000010";
  else
    dec_out <= "ZZZZZZZZ";
  end if;
end process;
```

```
always @(select)
begin
casez (select)
  0 : dec_out = 8'b00000001;
  1 : dec_out = 8'b00000010;
  default: dec_out = 8'bz;
endcase
end
```

```
process
begin
  wait on select
  if casez(select,0) then
    dec_out <= "00000010";
  elsif casez(select,1) then
    dec_out <= "00000010";
  else
    dec_out <= "ZZZZZZZZ";
  end if;
end process;
```

Special Note: `casex' and `casez' are library functions available in the **utils** package (file utils.vhd).

Looping Statements

Looping, or iteration schemes found in Verilog can be easily translated to VHDL. Verilog2VHDL supports `for', `repeat', `while' and `forever' statements.

Example

Verilog

```
for (i = 0; i < 4; i = i + 1)
  b = b + 2;
```

VHDL

```
i := 0;
while (i < 4) loop
  b := b + 1;
  i := i + 1;
end loop;
```

```
while (i < 5)
  b = b + 2;
```

```
while (i<5) loop
  b := b + 2;
end loop;
```

```
repeat (5)
loop
  b = b + 2;
```

```
for V2V_repeat in 5 downto 1
  b := b + 2;
end loop;
```

```
forever
  b = b + 2;
```

```
loop
  b := b + 2;
end loop;
```

Special Note: The Verilog `for' statement is equivalent to the VHDL `for' statement only when the Verilog `for' has static bounds, and the loop variable (`i' in the example above) is incremented by one (i = i + 1) or decremented by one (i = i - 1). The loop variable `i' is not available as a signal in VHDL, and hence cannot be accessed when used as the target for assignments, other than incrementing (decrementing) by one. For this reason, the Verilog `for' is mapped to the VHDL `WHILE' loop. In doing so, we also gain access to the loop variable `i'.

Continuous Assignments

A continuous assignment in Verilog is a statement that executes every time the right hand side of the an assignment changes. This is wholly equivalent to the concurrent signal assignment in VHDL with inertial delays.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Example

Verilog	VHDL
`timescale 1ns/1ns assign #10 a = b & c;	a <= b and c after 10 ns;

Procedural Assignments

Procedural assignments are used to assign values to register, integers, real or time variables. These types of assignments are normally present in always/initial statements, tasks and functions. Procedural assignments can have delay, event or repeat control. All cases are translated correctly to functionally equivalent VHDL.The subtle differences when translating a Verilog procedural assignment to a VHDL assignment are shown below.

Example

Verilog	VHDL

timescale 1ns/1ps;
reg a,b;
always @(clk)
begin
  a = #10 1;
 	
  a = @(posedge clk) b;
 	
  a = repeat (5) @(posedge clk) b;
 	
  #5 b <= 0;
 	
  #5 b = 1;
 	
end
	signal a,b : std_logic;
	shared variable V2V_a : std_logic;
	process
	begin
	  wait on clk;
	  a <= '1' after 10 ns;
	  wait for 10 ns;
	
	  V2V_a := b;
	  wait until posedge(clk);
	  a <= V2V_a;
	
	  V2V_a := b;
	  for V2V_repeat in 5 downto 1
	  wait until posedge(clk);
	  end loop;
	  a <= V2V_a;
	
	  wait for 5 ns;
	  b < = transport '0';
	
	  wait for 5 ns;
	  b <= '1';
	  wait for 0 ns;
	
	end process;

Special Note: Explanation follows about the `wait for 0 ns' statements in the VHDL code corresponding to a Verilog blocking assignment without timing control. In Verilog, events due to blocking assignments always occur. Statements following the blocking assignments occur only after the blocking assignment has taken effect. In VHDL, however, simulation time advances only after a wait statement, and assignments take effect when simulation time advances. For this reason, it is necessary to insert a `wait for 0 ns' after a sequential signal assignment in VHDL for cases where no delay in specified.

Non-blocking Procedural Assignment

The non-blocking Verilog procedural is a way to model transport delays in signal assignments; i.e it does not matter what order you make the assignments in a procedural dataflow. VHDL assignments are inherently non-blocking, and hence it is easy to translate Verilog non-blocking assignments.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Example

Verilog

```
`timescale 1ns/1ps;
always @(posedge clk)
begin
  a <= #10 1;


  #5 b <= 0;
end
```

VHDL

```
process
begin
  wait until posedge(clk);
  a <= transport '1' after 10 ns;

  wait for 5 ns;
  b <= transport '0';
end process;
```

Special Note: `posedge' function is available in the timing package.

Compiler Directives

Verilog supports numerous compiler directives. In this version of Verilog2VHDL, only the `timescale and `define compiler directives are supported. `define compiler directives are translated as system - wide generic declarations i.e. all modules following the `define statement have a generic interface list corresponding to the `define statement. The time unit specified with the `timescale directive is used as the time unit for VHDL.

Example

Verilog

```
`define TRUE 1
`define FALSE 0
`define foo "some people"
`define all_zs 8'bz
```

VHDL

```
entity verilog2vhdl is port
  (constant TRUE : integer := 1;
   constant FALSE : integer := 0;
   constant foo : string(1 to 10) := "some people";
   constant all_zs : std_logic_vector(8"ZZZZZZZZ");
```

```
`timescale 10ns/1ns;
reg a,b;

always @(posedge clk)
begin
  a = #10 1;
  #5 b = 0;
end
```

```
process
begin
  wait until posedge(clk);
  a <= '1' after 100 ns;
  wait for 50 ns;
  b <= '0';
end process
```

User-Defined Tasks and Functions

User-defined tasks and functions are used extensively in behavioral Verilog. They encapsulate blocks of sequential statements and are invoked from within the module. Additionally, arguments can be passed and exchanged through these calls. Though VHDL has equivalent procedures known as `Subprograms', they differ from Verilog tasks and functions in the following ways:

1. To execute a signal assignment in a VHDL subprogram, it is necessary for the signal to be available in the list of interface elements of the subprogram. This is not a requirement in Verilog. Hence, Verilog2VHDL adds signals that are driven from within a Verilog task or function as interface elements to the corresponding VHDL subprogram.
2. In VHDL, it is not possible to read a signal inside a subprogram if it is an interface element of the subprogram of mode `OUT'. For this reason, an intermediate temporary signal is created in the VHDL architecture.

The above points are further illustrated by the example below.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Example

Verilog

```
`timescale 1ns/1ns;
module dummy(a,b,c)
  input a;
  input b;
  output c;

  reg temp;

  always @(a)
    update_output;

task update_output;
  temp = a or b;
  c = temp
endtask;

endmodule
```

VHDL

```
entity ...end entity;
architecture VeriArch of dummy is
procedure update_output(
  signal temp : out std_logic;
  signal V2V_c : out std_logic register) is
begin
  temp <= a or b;
  wait for 0 ns;
  V2V_c = V2V_TEMP_temp;
  -- note the temporary signal
end procedure;

signal temp : std_logic;
signal V2V_c : std_logic;
signal V2V_TEMP_temp : std_logic;
signal guard : Boolean := true;
begin
  process
  begin
    wait on a;
    update_output(temp,c)
  end process;
end

c <= guarded V2V_c;
V2V_TEMP_temp <= guarded temp;
-- Note the concurrent assignments

end VeriArch;
```

`System Tasks and Functions

There are no direct VHDL equivalents to Verilog system tasks or functions, so the translation is done by automatically creating equivalent procedures in the VHDL output file. Of all Verilog system tasks and functions, Verilog2VHDL supports those associated with formatted output, and $time and $fopen functions.

System Functions

Verilog	VHDL
$time	NOW / <timeunit>
$fopen("filename.ext")	FILE F 1: text open WRITE _MODE is "filename.ext"

$time function is translated into NOW function normalized by 1 ns (default) or by the timeunit specified with a `timescale directive.

Translation of $fopen("filename.ext") function results in a declaration of a file with the logical name "filename.ext". If $fopen function appears on the RHS of an assignment or as an argument to a task or a function, it is substituted by the channel descriptor number normally returned by a $fopen function call in Verilog (see assignment to file1 in the example below). As in Verilog, filechannel 1 is reserved for STDOUT ("/dev/tty" in VHDL). STDOUT channel is added automatically to the translation of a Verilog file with output system task calls.

System Tasks

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Verilog	VHDL
$display $fdisplay $strobe $fstrobe	V2V_display
$write $fwrite	V2V_write

The number of parameters of V2V_display is adjusted automatically to translate $(f)display or $(f) strobe call with the greatest number of parameters. Similarly, the number of parameters of V2V_write is adjusted automatically to translate the $(f)write call with the greatest number of parameters.

Example

Verilog

```
integer file1;
integer filechan;

file = $fopen("latch.list);
filechan = file1 | 1;
$fdisplay(filechan, , $time,
  "Change in qQuit=%b with data=%b",
  qOut, data);
```

VHDL

```
signal filel : integer;
signal filechan : integer;
signal std_io : integer := 1;
file v2v_file_f2 : text open WRITE_MODE
                   is "latch.list";
file v2v_file_f1 : text open WRITE_MODE
                   is "dev/tty";

PROCEDURE writeline(filechannel : IN intege
                    VARIABLE l  : INOUT lin
                    line_feed   : IN charac
   VARIABLE unsigned_filechannel : unsigned
BEGIN
  unsigned_filechannel := TO_UNSIGNED(filec
  IF unsigned_filechannel(1) = '1' THEN
    write(V2V_FILE_F1, l.all & line_feed);
  END IF;
  IF unsigned_filechannel(2) = '1' THEN
    write(V2V_FILE_F2, l.all & line_feed);
  END IF;
  Deallocate(l);
END;

PROCEDURE V2V_display (filechannel : IN int
                message1 : IN string := ""
                message2 : IN string := ""
                message3 : IN string := ""
                message4 : IN string := ""
                message5 : IN string := ""
                message6 : IN string := ""
        VARIABLE l : LINE;
BEGIN
        WRITE(l, message1, LEFT, 0);
        WRITE(l, message2, LEFT, 0);
        WRITE(l, message3, LEFT, 0);
        WRITE(l, message4, LEFT, 0);
        WRITE(l, message5, LEFT, 0);
        WRITE(l, message6, LEFT, 0);
        writeline(filechannel, l);
END;

 filechan <= v2v_to_integer(file1 OR 1);
 WAIT FOR 0 NS;
 V2V_display(filechan,
             image(To_bitvector(filechan)),
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
image(now / 1 NS),
"Change in qQuit=",
image(To_bit(qOut)),
" with data=",
image(To_bit(data)));
```

Verilog2VHDL Error Handling

Verilog2VHDL handles errors in the following way:

1. If a syntax error in encountered in the Verilog input file, the tool exits immediately after printing out the error message.
2. If an unsupported construct is encountered in the Verilog Input, a warning message is issued, and Verilog2VHDL continues processing.
3. If the unsupported construct is of the type `event', Verilog2VHDL exits after issuing appropriate error message.

Reserved words in Verilog2VHDL

It is important to note that VHDL is case-insensitive; and therefore `test' and `TEST' are the same. **The user is advised not to use identifiers differing only in case in the Verilog file as this may result in incorrect VHDL.**

Verilog2VHDL has a list of reserved words which are not allowed as identifiers in input Verilog code. When they appear in the input Verilog code, Verilog2VHDL creates legal VHDL names by modifying each reserved identifier to a VHDL extended identifier with the same name. For eg., VHDL reserved identifier `shared' would be modified to `\shared\'; all occurrences of `shared' will be changed to ` \shared\'. Reserved identifiers follow below:

```
abs             file          of            signaland
access          function      on            sla
after           generate      open          sll
alias           generic       others        sra
all             guarded       out           srl
architecture    impure        package       subtype
array           in            port          then
assert          inertial      postponed     to
attribute       inout         procedure     transport
block           is            process       TRUE
body            label         pure          type
buffer          library       range         unaffected
bus             linkage       record        units
component       literal       register      until
configuration   loop          reject        use
constant        map           rem           variable
disconnect      mod           report        wait
downto          nand          return        when
elsif           new           rol           with
entity          next          ror           xnor
exit            nor           select        xor
FALSE           not           severity
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Appendix C: VHDL2Verilog Translation Reference

VHDL2Verilog translates input VHDL to Verilog. This release supports a subset of VHDL (see Appendix A for comprehensive listing).

The rest of the chapter is organized as follows: For every construct supported by VHDL2Verilog, the general translation rules are given, followed by an example illustrating the construct in both languages. Special notes are given when required. The user is advised to refer to the VHDL LRM and Verilog LRM for detailed explanations.

Entities and Architectures

The basic design unit in VHDL is the ENTITY and ARCHITECTURE pair. An entity and architecture pair is translated to a Verilog MODULE description. An entity can have multiple architectures. Multiple architectures per entity are translated to multiple modules. VHDL2Verilog creates module names based on the following criteria:

- Module name is the same as the entity name in input VHDL file.
- Module name is the concatenation of the entity and architecture name in input VHDL file. For e.g., if an entity aha has two architectures, structural and behavioral, the Verilog modules are aha_structural and aha_behavioral.

Example

VHDL

```
library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all

entity test is
port(a : in std_logic;
     b : out std_logic)
end entity;

architecture behave of test is
begin
end behave;
```

Verilog

```
module test(a,b);
  input a;
  output b;

endmodule
```

Special Note: Verilog files can be imported for VHDL Entity and Architecture pairs by using tool-specific attribute VHDL2V_MODULE in the entity declaration. See Importing (parts of) Verilog files for detailed explanation.

Packages and Package Bodies

Most VHDL designs reference one or more PACKAGEs through USE statements. These packages can contain pre-defined constants, types, components, or subprograms (functions or procedures). VHDL2Verilog will translate the packages if they are used, and includes this translation either in the output file, or in one or more separate files.

Example

VHDL

```
package my_package is
  constant width : integer := 16;
end my_package;

use ieee.my_package.all;
entity test is
  port(a : in std_logic;
       b : out std_logic);
```

Verilog

```
module test(a,b);
  parameter width = 16;
  input a;
  output b;
endmodule
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
end entity;

architecture behave of test is
begin
end behave;
```

The translated package can also be included in a separate file using the -Include Package files switch. In that case VHDL2Verilog will produce a file called:

```
<package>_package.v
```

If there are components in the package, and the corresponding entity - architecture pairs of the components have been read in as well, another file will be produced called:

```
<package>_modules.v
```

Both files are included in the Verilog code with an `include statement.

NOTE: Subprograms in the package get translated only when they are used in the design and when Function mapping and translation has been activated.

Data Types

VHDL has three classes of data objects: SIGNAL, VARIABLE and CONSTANT. Verilog does not make any such distinction in its two data types: NETS and REGISTERS. Verilog NETS are used for driving signals, and REGISTERS are an abstraction of the hardware register. VHDL2Verilog translates VHDL objects to Verilog NETS or REGISTERS based on the following rules:

1. If the signal is an input, it is translated to an implicitly declared WIRE.
2. Signals corresponding to output ports get translated to Verilog REGISTERS.
3. If a signal is used as the target in a VHDL concurrent assignment or an actual designator in the port mapping of a component instantiation, the Verilog translation of VHDL signal is a WIRE. Note that in this particular case, outputs get declared as WIRES.

Example

VHDL

```
library ieee;
use ieee.std.logic_1164.all;

entity test is
port(a : in std_logic;
     b : out std_logic;
     c : out std_logic)
end entity;

architecture behave of test is
begin
  b <= '1';
end behave;
```

Verilog

```
module test(a,b,c);
  input a;
  output b;
  output c;

  wire b;
  reg c;
  assign b = 1;
endmodule;
```

Generics

VHDL GENERICs are used to construct parameterized components. Verilog offers similar capabilities in the form of parameter declarations. VHDL generics are translated to Verilog parameters.

Example

VHDL

```
library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
```

Verilog

```
module test(a,b,c);
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
entity test is                                        parameter gen_a = 20;
  generic(gen_a : in natural := 20;                   parameter datapath = 11;
          datapath : in integer := 11);
port(a : in std_logic;                                input a;
     b : out std_logic_vector(datapath downto 0);     output [datapath:0[ b;
     c : out std_logic);                              output c;
end entity
                                                      wire [datapath:0] b;
architecture behave of test is                        reg c;
begin
end behave;                                         endmodule;
```

Sequential Statements

VHDL sequential statements occur in VHDL PROCESS or SUBPROGRAM bodies. These statements execute in the order they appear. VHDL2Verilog translates sequential statements outlined in the following sections.

Wait Statements (Sequential Statement)

The WAIT statement is used to suspend the execution of a process or subprogram body. The VHDL LRM defines three types of WAIT statements:

4. Wait with sensitivity clause
5. Wait with condition clause 3. Wait with timeout clause

The current version of VHDL2Verilog supports WAITs with timeout clauses. WAITs with sensitivity clauses are supported only if appearing as the first (or last) item of the sequential body.

Example

VHDL

```
process_l : process
  constant tpd  : std_logic := '1';
  constant tpd1 : std_logic := '0';
begin
  wait on a, enable;
  if (enable = '0') then
    q <= '0';
  elsif a'event and a'last_value = 0 then
    q <= d;
    q <= '1' after 2ns;
    q <= '0';
  end if;
end process process_1;
```

Verilog

```
always @(posedge a or negedge enable)
  parameter tpd  = 'b1;
  parameter tpd1 = 'b0;

if (enable == 'b0)
  q <= 'b0;
else
  begin
  q <= d;
  q <= #2 'b1;
  q <= 'b0;
  end
end
```

Signal Assignments (Sequential Statement)

SIGNAL ASSIGNMENTs are used to modify the output waveform of the target. Verilog signal assignments (known as PROCEDURAL ASSIGNMENTS) can be of two types:

1. BLOCKING procedural assignment: A blocking procedural assignment MUST be executed before the execution of the statements that follow.
2. NON-BLOCKING procedural assignment: Verilog non-blocking procedural assignments allow scheduling of assignments without blocking the procedural flow. Typically, they are used when multiple assignments need to be made in the same simulation cycle.

All VHDL signal assignments are translated to Verilog NON-BLOCKING procedural assignments.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Example

VHDL

```
architecture diffeq of diffeq is
begin

p0 : process
begin
  Xoutport <= 0;
  Youtport <= 0;
  Uoutport <= 0;
  wait;
end process p0;

p1 : process(Aport,DXport,Xinport,
             Yinport,Uinport)
  variable x_var, y_var, u_var : std_logi
begin
  Xoutport <= x_var after 2 ns;
  Youtport <= transport y_var; //will occ
  Xoutport <= u_var after 5ns;
  -- above will cancel prev assignment
end process P1;
```

Verilog

```
module diffeq;


initial
begin : p0
  Xoutport <= 0;
  Youtport <= 0;
  Uoutport <= 0;
end


always @(Aport or DXport or Xinport or
         Yinport or Uinport)
begin : p1
  reg x_var, y_var, u_var;

  Xoutport <= #2 x_var;
  Youtport <= y_var; //fully non-blocking
  Xoutport <= #5 u_var;
  // above will not cancel prev assignment
end
```

NOTE: Verilog non-blocking assignments differ from VHDL signal assignments in one important respect. Verilog non-blocking assignments ALWAYS occur. However, VHDL signal assignments with INERTIAL delay generate projected events which can be cancelled by future events. Verilog non-blocking assignments execute without cancelling a previous non-blocking assignment to the same register. Therefore, delays in Verilog non-blocking assignments are handled as TRANSPORT delays. If the delay type in VHDL signal assignments were specified to be TRANSPORT, then it would be equivalent to Verilog non-blocking assignment.

Variable Assignments (Sequential Statement)

VARIABLE ASSIGNMENTS are used to replace the current value of the variable with the new value specified on the right hand side of the assignment without any delay. They are mapped to Verilog non-blocking register assignments.

Example

VHDL

```
process_2 : process(dummy)
  variable q_1 : std_logic_vector(3 downto 0);
  variable q_2 : std_logic_vector(3 downto 0);
begin
  if (dummy = '1') then
    q_1 := "0001"
  end if;
end process process_2;
```

Verilog

```
always @(dummy)
begin : process_2
  reg [3:0] q_1;
  reg [3:0] q_2;
  if (dummy == 'b1)
    q_1 = 'b0001;
end
```

If Statements (Sequential Statements)

The IF statement chooses to execute one (or none) of many sequence of statements based on the value of corresponding condition. The semantics of the Verilog IF statement are the same, barring the VHDL requirement that an IF (ELSIF) expression be boolean. VHDL IFs are mapped to Verilog IFs.

Example

VHDL **Verilog**

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
process_1 : process
begin
  wait on a,enable;
  if (enable = '0') then
    q <= '0'
  elsif a = '0' then
    q <= d;
    q <= '1' after 2 ns;
    q <= 0;
  end if;
end process process_1;
```

```
always @(a or enable)
begin : process_1;
if (enable == 'b0)
  q <= 'b0;
else if (a == 'b0)
  begin
  q <= d;
  q <= #2 'b1;
  q <= 'b0;
  end
end
```

Case Statements (Sequential Statements)

CASE statements in VHDL have the same semantics as CASE statements in Verilog and are mapped to the same.

Example

VHDL

```
process
begin
  wait on sel_output;
  V2V_d_en <= '0';
  case sel_output is
    when(B"000")=> x <= B"00000001" after 2 ns;
    when(B"001")=> x <= B"00000010";
    when(B"010")=> x <= B"00000011";
    when(B"011")=> x <= B"00000100";
    when(B"100")=> x <= B"00000101";
    when(B"101")=> x <= B"00000110";
    when(B"110")=> x <= B"00000111";
    when(B"111")=> x <= B"00001000";
    when others => x <= "ZZZZZZZZ";
  end case;
end process;
```

Verilog

```
always @(sel_output)
begin

  V2V_d_en <= 'b0;
case (sel_output)
  'b000 : x <= #2 'b00000001;
  'b001 : x <= 'b00000010;
  'b010 : x <= 'b00000011;
  'b011 : x <= 'b00000100;
  'b100 : x <= 'b00000101;
  'b101 : x <= 'b00000110;
  'b110 : x <= 'b00000111;
  'b111 : x <= 'b00001000;
  default : x <= 'bzzzzzzzz;
endcase
end
```

Loop Statements (Sequential Statements)

VHDL defines LOOP statements, that are a collection of sequential statements. The execution is specified by the iteration scheme (e.g FOR, WHILE) used. Loop statements without iteration schemes are equivalent to Verilog FOREVER statements, iteration scheme FOR is translated to Verilog FOR loop and VHDL WHILE iteration scheme is translated to Verilog WHILE loop.

Example

VHDL

```
process
begin
  wait until a'event;
  i1 <= 0;
  wait for 0 ns;

  while i1 < reg_dummy + 1 loop
  v2v_b(3 downto 0) <= a(3 downto 0);
  i1 <= i1 + 1;
  wait for 0 ns;
  end loop;

for cnt in 4 downto 1 loop
  v2v_b(i = "00000001") <= a(i);
```

Verilog

```
always @(a)
begin
  i1 <= 0;
  #0

while (i1 < reg_dummy + 1)
begin
  v2v_b[3:0] <= a[3:0];
  i1 <= i1 + 1;
  #0;
end

for (cnt = 4; cnt >= 1; cnt = cnt - 1)
  v2v_b[i - 'b00000001] <= a[i];
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
end loop;

len <= '8'                                  len <= 'b8
wait for 0 ns;                              #0

loop                                        forever
  v2v_b(i - "00000001") <= a;                 v2v_b[i - 'b00000001] <= a;
end loop;

end process;                                end
```

NULL Statements (Sequential Statements)

A NULL statement performs no action and is equivalent to the Verilog ``;" statement.

Example

VHDL	Verilog
`null;`	`;`

Assert Statements (Sequential Statements)

The Assert statement shows a pre-defined message when the assertion fails. The severity is made part of the message. Furthermore, in the Verilog translation the time when the assertion was activated is shown.

Example

VHDL

```
variable status : boolean;

assert status = false
report "Some message"
severity note;
```

Verilog

```
reg status

if (!(status==`false))
  begin
  $write("note: ");
  $display("Some message");
  $display("Time: ",$time);
end
```

Procedure Call Statements (Sequential Statements)

A VHDL Procedure call is translated into a Verilog task enable when the -Support Subprogram Calls switch has been selected.

Example

VHDL

```
architecture cpu of cpu
use work.mypackage.all; --defines ProcCall

begin
  p0 : process(s)
  begin
    ProcCall(s,s_out);
  end process;

end;
```

Verilog

```
module cpu;
always @(s)
begin : p0
  ProcCall(s,s_out);
end

//include file with called functions/tasks
`include "cpu_cpu.v"

endmodule
```

Concurrent Statements

VHDL concurrent statements occur in VHDL Architectures. These statements execute in concurrently, as there name suggests. VHDL2Verilog translates concurrent statements outlined in the following sections.

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Block Statements (Concurrent Statement)

In VHDL it is possible to group statements together in a BLOCK. Declarations made in the Block have a local scope. In verilog there is no concepts of Blocks. VHDL2Verilog translates blocks by moving all its contents into the enclosing scope. Local declarations are renamed (the label of the block is prepended) and are also moved into the enclosing scope.

Example

VHDL

```
architecture foo of aha is
begin

b0: block
  constant a : boolean = true;
begin
  s <= a and b and c;
end block;

b1: block
  constant a : boolean = false;
begin
  co <= (a and b) or (a and c) or (b and
end block

end foo;
```

Verilog

```
module aha;

  parameter B0_a = `true;
  parameter B1_a = `false;

  // begin BLOCK B0
  assign s =  B0_a & b & c;
  // end BLOCK B0

  // begin BLOCK B1
  assign co = B1_a & b | B1_a & c | b & c;
  // end BLOCK B1

endmodule
```

Process Statements (Concurrent Statement)

VHDL and Verilog have constructs that allow blocks of sequential statements to execute concurrently. In VHDL, these statements are PROCESS statements. PROCESS statements in VHDL are mapped to Verilog ALWAYS statements. If the VHDL process will execute only once during the simulation run (possible if the process sequential body has an infinite WAIT as its last item), then the process is mapped to the Verilog INITIAL statement.

VHDL2Verilog follows specific rules for mapping signal edges (RISING EDGE, FALLING EDGE) to Verilog. These rules apply only to processes with the following characteristics:

Process should have

1. Sensitivity signals or wait statement, and
2. Single IF (optional ELSIF) statement, and
3. IF (optional ELSIF) expression equivalent to Verilog POSEDGE or NEGEDGE. The IEEE Std_logic_1 164 package functions RISING_EDGE and FALLING_EDGE are identified by VHDL2Verilog as POSEDGE and NEGEDGE respectively.

In this case, the edge controls are moved to the ALWAYS sensitivity list, and the IF (ELSIF) expressions are modified to be equivalent to the VHDL description. Process PROCESS_DFF in the example below illustrates this concept.

Example

VHDL

```
architecture diffeq of diffeq is
begin

p0 : process
begin
  Xoutport <= 0;
  Youtport <= 0;
```

Verilog

```
module diffeq;


initial
begin : p0
  Xoutport <= 0;
  Youtport <= 0;
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
  Uoutport <= 0;
  wait;
end process p0;

p1 : process(Aport,DXport,Xinport,
             Yinport,Uinport)
  variable x_var, y_var, u_var : std_logic;
begin
  Xoutport <= x_var after 2 ns;
  Youtport <= transport y_var; //will occur
  Xoutport <= u_var after 5ns;
  -- above will cancel previous assignment
end process P1;
```

```
  Uoutport <= 0;
end

always @(Aport or DXport or
         Yinport or Uinport)
begin : p1
  reg x_var, y_var, u_var;

  Xoutport <= #2 x_var;
  Youtport <= y_var; //fully non-blocking
  Xoutport <= #5 u_var;
  //above will not cancel prev assignment
end
```

Concurrent Signal Assignments (Concurrent Statement)

Concurrent Signal Assignments are used to drive signals continuously throughout the simulation run. Verilog CONTINUOUS ASSIGNMENTS provide the same capability. All VHDL concurrent signal assignments are translated to Verilog continuous assignments.

Example

VHDL

```
architecture VeriArch of aha is
  signal s : std_logic;
  signal co : std_logic;
begin
  s <= a and b and c after 2 ns;
  co <= (a and s) or (a and c);
end VeriArch;
```

Verilog

```
********** DAN FIX THIS ********************
module aha(a,b,c,s,co);

  wire V2V_s;
  wire V2V_co;

assign #2 V2V_s = a & b & c;
assign V2V_co = a & V2v_s | a & c | b &c;

assign a  = V2v_s;
assign co = V2V_co;

endmodule
```

Component Instantiations (Current Statement)

Both VHDL and Verilog are hierarchical languages and provide module instantiation capabilities. Additionally, values of generics can be changed during the process of module instantiation. Generic maps in VHDL component instantiations are translated to Verilog DEFPARAM statements.

Example

VHDL

```
component inbuf
    generic (len : integer := 2)
    port(pad : in std_logic_vector(len downto 1);
         y : out std_logic_vector(len downto 1));
end component;

for all : inbuf use entity work.inbuf;
begin

  comp_1 :inbuf
  generic map(len=>2);
  port map (pad(1)=>a(1),
            y(1) => z(1),
            pad(2)=>a(2),
```

Verilog

```
************ DLN FIX THIS
module inbuf(pad,y);
parameter len = 2;
input [len:1] pad;
output [len:0] y;

assign y = pad;
endmodule

defparam comp_1.len = 2;
inbuf comp_1
        (
        .pad({a[2],a[1]}),
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

```
           y(2)>=>z(2) );                          .y({z[2],z[1]})
                                                   );
comp_2: inbuf
  generic map(len->2)                          inbuf comp_2
  port map( pad=>a, y=>z);                            (.pad(a), .y(z));

comp_3: inbuf                                  inbuf comp_3(a,z);
  generic map(len=>2)
  port map(a,z);

end rtl;
```

Generate Statements (Concurrent Statement)

VHDL GENERATE statements are useful when regular structures need to be modeled. In Verilog however, there is no comparable construct. VHDL2Verilog therefore elaborates the generate statement, and then translates the result into Verilog.

Example

VHDL

```
Bit2: block
  constant ks :
     integer := BitW + BitW;
  constant kc : integer := BitW - 1;
  constant i : integer := 2;
  signal in1ANDin2 :std_ulogic_vector
                    (0 to BitW-2);
begin
NextRow:for j in 0 TO BitW-2 generate
  in1ANDin2(j) <= ARR_MUL1in1(i) and
                   ARR_MUL1in2(j);

  NextRow1: IF j < (BitW-2) generate
    xx : fullxxx port map
         (in1ANDin2(j),
          carry(kc-BitW+1+j),
          carry(kc+j));
  end generate NextRow1;

  NextRow2: IF j = (BitW-2) generate
  pxx : partialfullxxx port map
          (in1ANDin2(j),
           carry(kc-BitW+1+j),
           carry(kc+j));
  end generate NextRow2;

end generate;
end block Bit2;
```

Verilog

```
// begin BLOCK Bit2
parameter Bit2_ks = BitW + BitW;
parameter Bit2_kc = BitW - 1;
parameter Bit2_i = 2;

wire [0:BitW - 2] Bit2_in1ANDin2;

assign Bit2_in1ANDin2[0] =
     ARR_MUL1in1[Bit2_i] & ARR_MUL1in2[0];
assign Bit2_in1ANDin2[1] =
     ARR_MUL1in1[Bit2_i] & ARR_MUL1in2[1];
assign Bit2_in1ANDin2[2] =
     ARR_MUL1in1[Bit2_i] & ARR_MUL1in2[2];

fullxxx xx_Bit2_NextRow1_0 (
                          Bit2_in1ANDin2[0],
                          carry[Bit2_kc - BitW+1+0],
                          carry[Bit2_kc + 0]);

fullxxx xx_Bit2_NextRow1_1 (
                          Bit2_in1ANDin2[1],
                          carry[Bit2_kc - BitW+1+1],
                          carry[Bit2_kc + 1]);

partialfullxxx pxx_Bit2_NextRow2_2 (
                          Bit2_in1ANDin2[2],
                          carry[Bit2_kc - BitW+1+2],
                          carry[Bit2_kc + 2]);
// end BLOCK Bit2
```

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

Index

- $ -

$display 89
$dumpall 89
$dumpfile 89
$dumpoff 89
$dumpon 89
$dumpvars 89
$monitor 89

- __ -

__syncad 90

- ` -

`pragma protect directives 110

- + -

+access 94
+afile 94
+append_log 94, 98
+define+macroname 90
+define+macroname[=macrovalue] 90
+defparam+parameter_path=value 97
+diagnostic 94
+epulse_neg 95
+epulse_noneg 95
+epulse_ondetect 95
+epulse_onevent 95
+error 94
+failure 94
+linedebug 94
+loadpli1 97
+loadpli1=<arg> 98
+loadvpi 50, 97
+loadvpi=<arg> 98
+maxdelays 95
+mindelays 95
+mti_compat 98, 100
+no_notifier 95
+nocopyright 98
+nospecify 95
+nostdout 94, 98
+notchkmsg 95
+note 94
+notimingcheck 95
+pathpulse 95
+protect 97, 110
+pulse_e 95
+pulse_int_e 95
+pulse_int_r 95
+pulse_path_e 95
+pulse_path_r 95
+pulse_r 95
+scd_dbgsymbols 94
+scd_msg_enable+msg_level 94
+tcl+<file> 98
+tcl+filename 90
+transport_path_delays 95
+typdelays 95
+version 97, 98
+warning 94

- A -

Add 14
  files to project 14
AES 110
Auto Parse Project on Load 23
Auto-Grab Top Level Signals 23

- B -

Back-annotated Simulation 109
base64 110
Batch file 89
Bit-Slicing Simulated Waveforms 63
Blowfish 110
Break at Time Zero 23
breakpoints 34, 40
btim_AddDumpSignal 190
btim_closedumpfile 190
btim_dumpfile 190
Build Button 29
Building a project 18

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- C -

C++ 177
Cadence batch file 89
Capture and Show Waveforms of Watched Signals 23
CAST 110
Clear Log File Before Compile 23
Color Highlighting 82
command line simulator 87
  Commonly used options 90
  Debug and Logging Options 94
  Miscellaneous Options 97
  options 107
  Override Parameter Values 97
  PLI & VPI Options 97
  preparing Verilog source files for 89
  SDF Timing Options 95
  Simulation Build Options 92
  simulation control commands 107
  Specify block Options 95
Compile Library 29
Compile Selected File menu 29
Compile Source Files of Type 23
Compiler
  options 8, 23
Compiling 29
Component Libraries 46
Configurations for simulation 23
console window 40
  controlling simulation from 40
Controlling Simulation 40
--create (-c) 101

- D -

db_addtimebreak 192
db_disabletimebreak 193
db_enabletimebreak 192
db_finish 192
db_getbasictype 193
db_getcurrenttime 191
db_getvalue 193
db_printinteractivescope 191
db_printinternaltimeprecision 193
db_removetimebreak 192
db_setinteractivescope 194
debug 22
  breakpoints 40
  console window 40
--delete (-d) 101
DES 110
Destination Library 29
Diagram Configuration 23
Disable Periodic Waveform Update 23, 118
Drivers 39
--dump [library_name] 101

- E -

Editor Window
  creating files 69
  external editors 83
  File Location Buttons 71
  Find in Files 80
  Find in multiple files 71
  Find Signal Declaration from Diagram 71
  font 82
  Goto Current Executed Statement 71
  Introduction 69
  Jump to Line number 80
  Key Commands 80
  line numbers 82
  opening files 69
  Project Navigation 73
  saving files 69
  Search Active Editor Box 71
  Syntax Highlighting with Color 82
  tab width 82
  XEmacs 83
Editor/Report Preferences dialog
  Color Highlighting 82
  Color Printing checkbox 82
  Editor Background Color button 82
  Editor/Report Font button 82
  Insert Spaces button 82
  Keep Tabs button 82
  Show Line Numbers checkbox 82
  XEmacs integration 83
Encrypted Models 110

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

- F -

-f 101
-f <filename> 98
Faster Simulation 118
Faster Simulation Times
  Disable Periodic Waveform Update 23
File Location Buttons 71
Filter Constants and Parameters 23
Filter Empty Processes 23
Find Breakpoints 71
Find Errors 71
Find in Files 80
Find in multiple files 71
Find in Project menu usage 39
Find Signal Declaration from Diagram 71
Find with Search Box 71
Font for Editor 82
FPGA Libraries 46

- G -

gcc C++ compiler 177
Generate Test Bench on Build Project 23
Goto Current Executed Statement 71
Goto to line number 80
-gparameter_path=value 97

- H -

-h 98
--help (-h) 101

- I -

init_syncad 190
Inspect Values dialog 36

- L -

-l <filename> 98
Libraries 46
Line numbers 82
--list (-l) 101
Log File name 23

- M -

Make Arrays Watchable 23
Make Constants and Parameters Watchable 23
--map (-m) 101
-map_file 101
Mentor batch file 89
ModelSim batch file 89

- N -

NCSim batch file 89

- O -

-o filename 92
On-Event and On-Detect Pulse Filtering 95
Override Subproject Properties during Simulation 23

- P -

Pause button 29
PLI 1 97
PLI 2.0 50
pragma protect directives 110
predefined macros 90
Private Keys 110
Project Configurations 23
Project Simulation Properties dialog
  Detailed Overview 23
  Getting Started 10
Project Window
  Editor Links 73
projects 18
  adding files 14
  building 18
  VeriLogger 13
Protected Envelopes 110
Public Keys 110

- R -

-R
  --scd_msg_enable <msg_level>=0|1 98
-r <snapshot> 98

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

race condition detection 100
RSA 110
Run Button 29

- S -

-s 90, 98
--scd_cleanup_objs 92
--scd_immediate_sensitivity 100
--scd_invert_queue 98, 100
--scd_jobs=n 92
--scd_mtilike_queue 98, 100
--scd_ncsimliketchkmsg 95, 98
--scd_no_prefix 98
--scd_nosim 92
--scd_randomize_queue 98, 100
--scd_source_info_at_declaration 98
--scd_source_info_at_reference 98
--scd_top [unitname] 92
--scd_usemake 92
Scope
  Copy To Buffer 40
  Setting 40, 73
SDF (Standard Delay File) 109
Search Active Editor Box 71
Set as a Top Level Instance menu 18
Set Destination Library for Compiled File menu 29
Show All Drivers menu 39
Show Drivers window 39
signals 32
  Watch 32
Simulate 22, 40
Simulation
  back-annotated 109
  command-line simulator 87, 89
  faster trick 118
  speeding up 87
Simulation Running 29
Simulation Started 29
Simulator
  32 bit operation 8
  64 bit operation 8
  options 23
  path 8
Simulator / Compiler Settings dialog 8
Simulator Settings button 23
Simx 8, 87
simx32 8
simx64 8
Simxlib 101
simxloader 98
Simxsim 87
Snapshot
  overview 87
Standard Delay File (SDF) 109
Status Bar 29
Step 1 - Configuring BugHunter for your Simulator 8
Step 2 - Setup the Project Simulation Properties 10
Step 3 - Create a Project 13
Step 4 Add Source Files to the Project 14
Step 5 Draw a Test Bench 16
Step 6 Build the Project and Set the top-level module 18
Step 7 Simulate and Debug 19
Step 8 Save the Project 21
Stimulus & Results diagram 16
Stop button 29
Synopsys batch file 89
Syntax Highlighting in Editor 82
SystemC
  Linux 177
  Windows 177

- T -

Tab Width for Editor 82
Template Configurations 23
Top-level module 18
Translation
  Setup for translation 119
  Verilog to VHDL 122
  VHDL to Verilog 154

- U -

--unmap (-u) 101
uuencode 110

- V -

-v <LibraryFilename> 90
VCS batch file 89
Verilog 2005 110
VeriLogger 8
  compilation 116

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.

VeriLogger 8
technology 116
VeriLogger Extreme Command Line tools Simx and Simxsim 87
Visual Studio C++ compiler 177
Vlogcmd
+define 107
+incdir 107
+libext 107
+loadpli1 107
+maxdelays 107
+mindelays 107
+noshow_var_change 107
+synopsys (vlogcmd only) 107
+typdelays 107
specific commands 107
Vlogcmd (old VeriLogger Pro) interpreted simulator 103
VPI 50, 97

- W -

Watch signals 32
Watched Signal Bit Slice 63
--work <worklib> 90

- X -

XEmacs 83

- Y -

-y <LibraryDirectory> 90

Copyright © 2014, SynaptiCAD Sales, Inc.